GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

ARCHÆOLOGICAL SURVEY OF INDIA

CENTRAL
ARCHÆOLOGICAL
LIBRARY

ACCESSION NO. 12055

CALL No. 954.023/Che.

D.G.A. 79

Acc. 12055

Vol. I

D 4366

THE DIRECTOR GENERAL OF ARCHAEOLOGY
Library Regr. No
INDIA.

12055
A.N.

THE

HISTORY

OF

ULUGH-BEG

AND

MIRZA

025

LOGICAL
LIBRARY, NEW DELHI.
Acc. No. 12055
Date 22-11-1961
Call No. 954.023/Ch

Just Publish'd,

THE History of *Genghizcan* the Great, first Emperor of the antient *Mogals* and *Tartars*; in four Books: Containing his [illegible] Hi-
tory of his Successors [illegible] Manners, Customs and Laws of the antient *Mogals* and *Tartars*; and the Geography of [illegible] Countries of *Mogulistan*, *Tartary*, [illegible] *Tigurthan*, and the Empire [illegible] Collected from several Oriental Authors, [illegible] *European* Travellers; whole Names, with [illegible] Abridgment of their Lives, are added to the [illegible] By the late M. *Petit de la Croix*, Senior [illegible] and Interpreter [illegible] *Arabick* Languages. [illegible] fully translated into *English*.

THE French editor's PREFACE.

OF ALL the oriental pieces which the late M. Petis de la Croix the son has translated, there is not one which more deserves to see the light, than this we now present the public, for which the learned world hath express'd so much impatience. The remarks he hath left behind him, to instruct the reader in several obscure passages, will serve for the ground-work of this [illegible] in which we shall often make use of [illegible] words.

M. PETIS DE LA CROIX having found a manuscript of the history of Genghiz Can, the most illustrious of the successors of Timur Bec, extracted from the best authors by his late father, and considering it might give much insight into the history of Timur Bec, the relations of his author [illegible] nearly ally'd to him, and the connection between the two histories, thought it fit to publish [illegible] the [illegible] of the [illegible] transactions of the thirteenth century, of which Timur Bec is one of the principal instruments, of the two following. The conformity of the subject, and the

greatness of the events, will render the reading of this history very agreeable to those particularly, who are acquainted with that of Genghiz-Can. Here they will find, among the most remarkable particulars, an exact description of the roads of the empire of the Moguls, and vast light into the geography of the greatest part of Asia, with a continuation of the history of the Mogul and Tartar emperors. And tho from the death of Genghiz-Can *, to the birth of Timur-Bec †, there is an interval of one hundred and ten years, during which some twenty-one emperors reign'd, who descended from Zagatai-Can the son of Genghiz-Can, of whose history the Europeans are ignorant; [illegible] supply'd, and the reader conducted [illegible] time of Timur-Bec, for M. de la Croix the [illegible] has added to the history of Genghiz-Can a [illegible] of these emperors, with an abridgment of the principal points of their history.

I. Who the author is, of whom we publish the translation.

The author of the history, of which we now publish a translation, is a writer universally applauded by the Orientals, and even by those who have written on the same subject; which is indeed uncommon. They agree that he is the most valuable of those who have written the history of Timur-Bec. Condemir, among the rest, prefers him before all the writers of the history of the Moguls and Tartars; as well for the delicacy of the Persian language, as for the

* An [illegible], name'd Tachlomir, has written upon this subject; but M. de la Croix assures us that this work has [illegible] yet appear'd in Europe.

† This list is extracted out of the chronological [illegible] call'd Lubaric, and from those of Condemir and [illegible] Efendi.

force of his expressions, and the beauty of his style.

Hajji Cali, a modern Turk, in his Oriental library, says that his name is Moulla Sherefeddin Ali Yezdi, native of Yezd, a city of Persia: that he died in the year of the Hegira 859; that he call'd his book, *Zafer Namé Emir Timur Gourkan*, that is to say, The history of the conquests of prince Timur, son-in-law of the Can: that this book was publish'd at Chiraz, the antient capital of Persia, by order of Ibrahim Sultan, fourth Chan of Timur line: that [illegible] year of Christ [illegible] [illegible] death of Timur [illegible] happened in the year of Christ 1405. He adds, that this book has been since translated into the Turkish language by Hafiz Mehemed Bin Ahmed Alagemi. He also says, that our author had before compos'd a first volume, under the title of *Mezzakkeret Zafer Namé*, that is, Preliminaries of the history of conquests; which book of preliminaries properly concerns the history of the Ottoman, or Mogul [illegible] and families, who followed Zengis-Can, in the course of his conquests, as his successors, for that reason have ever since been [illegible] [illegible]. These books being distributed into a great number of Tomes, and gaining his

An. Dom. 1456.

[illegible] among the Moguls and Turcs, in the [illegible] [illegible] Arabian.

[illegible] of [illegible] the [illegible] Can, furnishing [illegible] Can or [illegible] [illegible] a precis [illegible] of which is [illegible] [illegible] French [illegible]

[illegible] of the Moguls, form'd the empire which [illegible] the name of *Zagatai Can*, of which Tamerlane was both the fear and [illegible]

If this history had been deliver'd down [illegible] it won'd have serv'd very well to compose [illegible] tory of *Genghiz Can* and *Timur-Bec*, but [illegible] life of the Mogul emperors, which [illegible] the [illegible] may supply [illegible]

II. True origin of Timur-Bec.

A [illegible] Timur-Bec, gave rou[illegible] his rather a prejudice [illegible] every one has entertain'd till this time, [illegible] Timur-Bec was a *sort* of an adventurer, and [illegible] [illegible] nances, and [illegible] [illegible] consequence, who, [illegible] his fortune by robbing on the [illegible] way. They have disguis'd his name, [illegible] which then'd give us a hint and [illegible] [illegible] of this prince; to which purpose [illegible] [illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] Dec. [illegible] Turkish [illegible] Tartars [illegible] Sultan [illegible] has been misrepresented by the historians of those nations, who, in despite of truth, and against the dignity of history, have [illegible] upon this subject. We [illegible] against the [illegible] upon inventing. Wherefore forbear the fable, we will keep to the name of Timur Bec, and drop the [illegible]

III. The method observ'd in this translation.

[illegible] diligent in detailing a [illegible] [illegible] of reading [illegible]

plain'd several passages of it to Mr. Colbert. This minister conceiv'd so great an idea of it, and judg'd of its worth so well, by the account which Mr. de la Croix gave him, that he ordered him to translate it into French. He accordingly began it, but was interrupted by the voyage and negotiations, which the king ordered him to perform, and in which he was employed for several years. Therefore not being able to finish his translation before the time [illegible] he presented it to the [illegible] This minister, whose penetration [illegible] are known to all the world, found the [illegible] of this history so delightful, that he judged [illegible] grateful. His [illegible] discover'd a conformity between the [illegible] of the Greeks, by [illegible] of the [illegible] characters, [illegible] signs and [illegible] knowledge and [illegible]

* His [illegible] which were shewn in all, were in the [illegible] which the king just [illegible] made together [illegible] of [illegible] the poets dependent on [illegible] [illegible] to [illegible] and to reading [illegible] mind of power; as they have done since. These [illegible] of course [illegible] in the order of the [illegible]

* The reader is left to judge what [illegible] had for paying this compliment to LEWIS XIV. [illegible] might perhaps those who did not believe in MAHOMET, [illegible] ever professed any of the [illegible] from himself in some points of [illegible] that Lewis said bloody persecutions against [illegible] who believed in JESUS CHRIST. [illegible] instrumental in feeling the storm upon his head.

M. de la Croix made a literal version of his author, which he plac'd over against the Persian text. But however prejudic'd he was in favor of a language, which was in a manner natural to him, (as he us'd to say) and which he extremely lov'd; yet he forsaw the French reader could never digest the figurative and frequent poetic expressions of the Persian style, with which this work is every where intermix'd. The truth of the history, and the most beautiful thoughts, we find wrap'd up in strange metaphors, which our manners and the genius of the language cannot bear. This [illegible] the author's writing [illegible] ...ed, us'd to the boldest hyperboles [illegible] metaphors: besides that he wrote for people of the same taste and humor, and his subject was susceptible of all the most rich and beautiful ornaments of the Persian language and poetry, we may say, that he hath display'd in this work all the eloquency which the Orientals affect in their expressions. But all this is so foreign to our genius, that tho' M. de la Croix paraphrase [illegible] rather to explication of that [illegible] [illegible] even more with [illegible] yet he would not [illegible] the reader [illegible] with those [illegible] of Latin [illegible].

[illegible] therefore thought it best to make his version fearly French, that is, rather to give the sense and thoughts of his author, than his words and expressions, always retrenching what is not [illegible] to the taste of our nation; and in [illegible] with the [illegible] of several [illegible].

[illegible] to place the name of God at the [illegible] of all their works, to give praise to God, and after-

afterwards to pick Mahomet", whom they usually call the seal of the prophets, believing none other will come after him. M. de la Croix would not translate this form, with which the author begins his discourse, or his introduction to the history; and he has also suppressed the elogium which he makes on Cara-Tartar, Persian poetry, after having first done it in prose; and another elogium on Mahomet, to whom he gives very pompous titles. There is too much of figures, and of a very [illegible] In fine, in this part of the work, which is properly of preface of the historian, M. de la Croix [illegible] what appeared too allegorical [illegible] of the [illegible] upon the principal subject.

There are the reasons which [illegible] the translator to follow in his version [illegible] these reasons are all taken out of the own papers. It is but to be the [illegible] who are fondest of the literal translation [illegible] would have done other wise, [illegible] they had had a like piece to translate.

IV. The Mogul epocha.

In the same papers we find some [illegible] the epocha of the Mogul [illegible] the life of Timur-Bec, we have [illegible] here, according to the [illegible] M. [illegible] Cruix [illegible]

[illegible] gilions, &c.

[illegible] going to begin the history of his life, [illegible] conqueror of the universe

Tous Moguls [illegible] twelve [illegible] of which years they give the [illegible] beginning [illegible] count [illegible] easily [illegible]

Moslemy years.	Christian years.	Mahometan years.
The Mouse	1369	771
The Ox	1370	[illegible]
The Leopard	[illegible]	[illegible]
The Hare	[illegible]	774
The Horse	1374	776
The Sheep	1375	777
The Monkey	1376	778
The Hen	1377	779
The Dog	1378	780
The Hog	1379	781
[illegible]	1380	[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible] Epocha. M. de la Croix refers those who are

are desirous to look farther into this matter, to Mr. John Greaves's learned Englishman's upon that most noted epochas handed down by the Ottoman-Beg, printed at London in 1650 [illegible]

V. Confirmation of some facts in the history of Timur-Bec by a Christian writer.

After Mr. Petis de la Croix had finished his translation of this history of Timur-Bec, he had the sight of a Spanish book printed at Seville one hundred and thirty years before, which bears authentic testimony to some facts related by the Persian historian. This book is the relation of a [illegible] and embassy of Ruy Gonzales de Clavijo, who was sent ambassador extraordinary to Timur-Bec by Henry III. king of Castile [illegible] Persian historian makes [illegible] of [illegible] same Tartar emperor, which preceded [illegible] in the first were two ambassadors, one [illegible] Gomez de Sotomayor, [illegible] other [illegible] Paleologus, [illegible] gentlemen of the [illegible] Theydid a very handsome [illegible] from Timur-Bec; and were at the [illegible] the Ottoman emperor [illegible] ambassadors [illegible] king of Castile [illegible] princes, which [illegible] one of whom was daughter [illegible]

John an Hungarian prince, and niece to the king of Hungary, nam'd Dona Angelina de Guerra; and the other was a Greek nam'd Dona Maria. These ladies were educated at the court of Castile, and met with a fortune suitable to their quality. Dona Angelina married Diego Gonzalez de Contreras, regider of Segovia; and Dona Maria espous'd Payo Gomez de Sotomayor, one of the ambassadors. The tomb of the former is yet to be seen in the principal chapel of St. John of Segovia; the other interred in a monastery three leagues from [illegible]

[illegible] himself of his commission, the [illegible] of Castile sent a second embassy to Timur-[illegible] the chief of which was this Ruy Gonzalez de Clavijo, a gentleman of his bed-chamber, author of the Spanish book, we have mention'd, and from whom all these facts are taken. He departed from Madrid, accompanied [illegible] and the Tartarian ambassador [illegible] journey from Madrid and Paris, as [illegible] and he gives the particulars of his [illegible] and [illegible] describes the magnificence [illegible]

feasts and banquets, which Timur-Bec gave on the marriage of his children, and to which those ambassadors were invited: which is entirely conformable to what the Persian historian says upon that matter. The single point, in which the Persian relation varies from the Persian history, is, on the honour of the audience of leave. [illegible] that ambassador affirms, that he never was [illegible] because Timur-Bec died in that [illegible] about this time: which according to our [illegible] the ambassadors of Spain and Egypt [illegible] their audience of leave, and were [illegible] a great many rich presents; and after [illegible] Timur-Bec set out himself for Samarcand [illegible]

[illegible] Ispahan, on the road to China [illegible] the ambassador of a great [illegible] interested visitor, we [illegible] with [illegible] perhaps have [illegible] from the time his [illegible] and supposes it to be his [illegible] this contradiction [illegible] by [illegible] distance of time.

VI. The study and negotiations of M. Petis de la Croix, in the king's service.

[illegible] the former part of [illegible] the latter [illegible] of the [illegible] negotiations, wherein he was employed by [illegible] king. We will begin with his voyage to the [illegible] had been secretary [illegible] from the year 1670 [illegible] M. Colbert, minister and secretary [illegible] had a design to send into the Levant a [illegible]

man, to gain a perfect knowledge of the language, manners, history, sciences, arts, and religion of the Orientals, recommended his own son to him; who, besides his other accomplishments in the eastern languages, knew much of those dialects which were necessary for a person who would [illegible] advantage, as the mathematics, geography, astronomy, music, drawing, &c. [illegible] accordingly, and sent him, by the king's order, into Syria, Persia and Turky. To this end he left Paris in the year 1670; [illegible] not above [illegible] years old, [illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] ways to regard to, he embarked at Thoulon; and after a dangerous voyage [illegible] at Alexandretta, he went from thence [illegible] Aleppo, where he staid several years. He was introduced at Ispahan, the capital and [illegible] of the kings of Persia; and after [illegible] We may [illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] great noise [illegible]

and the Chevalier, [illegible] Frenchmen to the Port [illegible]

A year and [illegible] stay in the Levant, Mr. Colbert consented to his return home; [illegible] arrived at Paris at the end of [illegible] that minister [illegible] account of his whole voyage, and [illegible] and London from [illegible] which there are [illegible] in the royal library, where his majesty [illegible] in 1681.

M. de la Croix, after his return, [illegible] himself more than ever to the [illegible]

In 1681 he [illegible] and the king of Morocco. [illegible] from the Moors, with the [illegible] his majesty to [illegible] of Morocco. He pronounced the [illegible] speech in Arabic before that prince in elegant and pure [illegible] politeness with himself, tho' in this language he spoke better. That prince had several conversations with him in the night, on the [illegible] of the king and kingdom of France, and [illegible] satisfactory, [illegible]

The two [illegible] the Chevalier de Tourville, [illegible] generals [illegible] of the [illegible] republic of [illegible] with which ge[illegible]

made [illegible] He [illegible] there in the negotiation for peace in 1681, and translated the treaty [illegible] language, which he read in [illegible] The [illegible] the title of, Padichah, which signifies emperor, to be inserted in the registers of Algiers, instead of Ocli, which signifies a petty prince, the title they had given to the French king till that time. One of the conditions of the treaty was, that the republic of Algiers should send a solemn embassy to beg his majesty's pardon. [illegible] accompany it [illegible] name [illegible] [illegible] in the name [illegible] in chief beg pardon. It has been printed in many parts of Europe, and been the subject of a medal which was struck upon it, with this motto, *Afric. supplex.*

In 1685 he accompany'd another envoy of Algiers, [illegible] Boudarba, into France, and pro[illegible] to the king, [illegible] presented his majesty with a [illegible] Barbary [illegible] Dey [illegible] and [illegible] years [illegible] in the [illegible] [illegible] Tabes. This [illegible] was granted [illegible] in Croix translated the [illegible] [illegible] as the [illegible] [illegible] a relation [illegible] [illegible] the [illegible] [illegible] Tripoli [illegible] where the [illegible] and [illegible] lands [illegible] Tripoli and [illegible] The Tripolitans had long a parcel and [illegible]

tain'd it. [illegible] negotiated it, he translated it, and established the articles in the [illegible] of Ryswick. By this treaty we obtain'd a remission of [illegible] hundred thousand livres. On this occasion, [illegible] many others, he gave [illegible] his honesty. He was offer'd a considerable [illegible] money, to put in the treaty [illegible] of crowns of France [illegible] never have been known, [illegible] the difference of [illegible] thousand livres. The marshal [illegible] an account of it to the king [illegible] the marquis de Seignelai did of a secret [illegible] Mr. de la Croix alone [illegible]

pol, to join their [illegible] first signal, if his majesty would [illegible] that city to be taken.

[illegible] 1687, he negotiated a treaty [illegible] for marriage [illegible]

[illegible] he managed, by the ministers [illegible] others of the ministers and secretaries of state, the affairs of the ambassadors and envoys to Morocco, Constantinople, Algiers, Tunis and Tripoli, who were then sent into France, and [illegible] 1680 to his death, except in [illegible] his majesty's [illegible]

It is remarkable, that [illegible] before M. de la Croix, translated the [illegible] swers out of French into Arabic [illegible] Persian, in a style esteemed in the [illegible] Africa, and suitable to the dignity of [illegible]

rarch. This he thought exceeding difficult, and always said he never could have acquir'd it without very great study.

[illegible] chancellor having obtain'd for him [illegible] the Arabic professorship in the royal college, and at the same time the revival of the antient post of interpreter to the king in Arabic, Turkish, and Persian, which [illegible] supply'd; he did not leave France any more, but entirely apply'd himself to the translation of oriental authors. He has [illegible] many volumes translated, the most considerable of which we shall mention in a list [illegible] performances, [illegible] greatest applause, is the [illegible]ry of the king's medals, which he had orders to translate from French into Persian, and which was presented in 1708 to the king of Persia, by the sieur Michel, envoy extraordinary from the king to that monarch, who shew'd the [illegible] for the translation which so long a [illegible]

[illegible] Turkish [illegible] of the [illegible] learn on occasion of [illegible] to his majesty. [illegible] his utmost endeavours the Armenian, in which he perfect[illegible] but with prejudice to his health; [illegible] all [illegible] the [illegible] knowledge of this [illegible] part.

The list of his most valuable books is as follows.

1. The oriental library of [illegible] Galli, Cadi of Constantinople, composed in Arabic in two volumes in folio, with two tables, one of the matters, and the other of the authors, which likewise make two volumes.

2. The history of all the [illegible] monarchys, by Hussein Efendi Hearee, [illegible] Turk.

3. The history of the conquest of Syria by the Arabians in the seventh century: the author [illegible] Waledi [illegible] the seventh to the fourteenth century.

5. The history of Morocco, [illegible] in Arabic, from the seventh to the [illegible] century.

[illegible] history of Tunis, from the eleventh to the fifteenth century.

[illegible] A description of the city of Aleppo, translated from the Arabic.

[illegible] A treatise of the religion of the Drules, translated from the Arabic, in two tomes.[1]

[illegible] The geography of Edrisi, in Arabic.

---

[1] This piece alone [illegible] given under the name of the oriental library, to which there is no connection as to the disposal of the words and matter. This is a true body of all the arts and sciences in use among the Orientals.

10. The

10. The geography of Bin Kabya an Arabian.
11. The voyage of Mir Sidy Aly, admiral of the Ottoman fleet in the East-Indian seas, under the great Solyman; and his return by land to Constantinople; in Turkish and Tartarian.
12. An history of the animals of Demiri, in Arabic.
13. A description of the city of Constantinople, in Turkish.
14. The history of Algiers, in Turkish and French.
15. The history of Tripoli in Barbary, in Turkish.
[illegible] with the vulgar pro-
[illegible]
17. A French and Arabic dictionary.
18. A French and Turkish dictionary.
19. A French and Persian dictionary.
20. A French and Armenian dictionary; and another Armenian and French.
21. An history of Armenia, translated from Armenian into French.

[illegible] design to present the public with a [illegible] of the voyages of the late M. [illegible] de la Croix, the translator of this history, to which will be [illegible] an account of those of M. Petis de la Croix his father, who has been six years in the Levant by the king's order, and first secretary and interpreter to his majesty. [illegible] have added to this work several other [illegible] and [illegible] to have [illegible] the principal and most important [illegible]

THE

Author's Preface.

IN THE name of God, whose bounty and [illegible] grants victory to those [illegible] most fit to accomplish his eternal [illegible] [illegible] of glory; and it seems that a [illegible] raised by his hand is immediately and easily overcomes all the difficulty which seems so obstinate.

SUCH was the fortune of the great and invincible Timur, whose history we undertake. The reader will not be surprised at the heroic [illegible] which [illegible] in the [illegible] dignity of [illegible] power of Tartary, [illegible] all Asia as far from the frontiers of Chinese [illegible] that is, the [illegible] of [illegible] [illegible] and Spain [illegible] with the [illegible] was [illegible] [illegible] gious observer of the [illegible] was to [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] himself, without having recourse to [illegible] and he succeeded in all his enterprises

wherein he had no other end than the glory of God, the increase of religion, and the good of the people. He was exceeding liberal and courteous to every one, excepting those who refusing to obey him, whom he punish'd with the utmost rigor. He was a great lover of justice; and none under his government ever experienced violence and tyranny unpunish'd. He cherish'd learning and learned men: and 'twas his constant endeavour to render the arts flourishing [illegible] his empire. He [illegible] the [illegible] so many occasions, that [illegible]

[illegible] of his [illegible]

[illegible] of his ancestors, who were all kings or princes: and this history contains a series of incontestable proofs of it. He was fearless and courageous, equally capable of forming a great design with wisdom, and of executing it with vigor. He was very [illegible] to his dominions; exceeding charitable to [illegible] and built a great number [illegible] convents of devotees and [illegible] may [illegible] that [illegible] prince [illegible] which God was pleased to [illegible]

[illegible] and virtuous [illegible] the [illegible] the [illegible] with [illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[

[illegible] ciary of [illegible] capital of [illegible]'s dominions, on Tuesday night the first of Chaban of the year of the Hegira 73[illegible], which answers to that of the Moslem in the Mogul calendar, under the reign of the Sultan Cazan, king of Transoxiana and Turkestan.

An. Dom. 1336.

This prince's birth had been predicted to Cachoun Belader, one of his ancestors, in a dream, wherein eight hairs seemed to shoot out of him, and the eighth one of them appeared, that it enlightened the [illegible] world; which Toumene Can, Cachoun's father, interpreted, that a prince of his race should be born to the eighth generation who should [illegible] the [illegible] of his [illegible] people.

Timur's horoscope, which [illegible] at the moment of his nativity, predicted to the [illegible] and fortune, with all manner of prosperity [illegible] life.

[illegible] from his childhood [illegible] his actions to the accomplishment of the predictions of his horoscope; for as he arrived to the age of reason, [illegible] might be seen in all his actions, which [illegible] of sovereignty; he would talk of [illegible] thrones and crowns; his favorite diversions presented the military art, in which he [illegible] of the youth who [illegible] and princes subjects of his [illegible] and giving to others the [illegible] diers; he made figures of [illegible] an army of an enemy, and then attack'd and [illegible]

[illegible] Asia of Transoxiana, long 99, 30. lat. [illegible]

his troops, among whom he observ'd a military [illegible]

[illegible] advanc'd in age, and capable of applying himself to the exercises of the body, he began to shun those pleasures which most young persons fall into, as dancing and the like, which rather effeminate than ennoble the mind, [illegible] to the science of arms. His chief diversions were riding, racing, fencing, [illegible] he was likewise often at the chase, [illegible] he took, [illegible] great and

[illegible] actions, that is, from his tenth year till the twenty-fifth or thereabouts; for at that age ambition having got possession of his heart, he began to despise dangers, to gain victorys, and acquire the name of a great conqueror and intrepid hero. In the midst of [illegible] he had an admirable constitution [illegible] and made [illegible] never [illegible] of [illegible] their slaves; [illegible] was conquerd, or he was obliged to [illegible] Timur was so great an [illegible] during [illegible] his life, [illegible] not in the least [illegible] on, and [illegible] power [illegible] which [illegible] of his authority, [illegible]

[illegible] signifies [illegible]

* This seems to be a mistake, for by the [illegible] following work, it appears he was Timur's youngest son.

give the least matter of complaint to any of his subjects. Thus prince never addicted himself to plays and pastimes, with which he was constantly surrounded. His only employment was to take care of the affairs of state, and to render justice to his people; and he was obliged to recreate himself [illegible] the employed his time in contemplation, and reading useful books; for that he [illegible] his most delightful [illegible] from the manner of [illegible] the pomps of a court. [illegible] a detail of all the virtues of the [illegible] and of his son the incomparable [illegible] of this work, which I have [illegible] as all which [illegible] the [illegible] knowledge everyone [illegible] it will [illegible] [illegible] by [illegible] The Court and [illegible] [illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] dangers to which [illegible] see Pleasure [illegible] monarchy, which [illegible] the eyes of the [illegible] the [illegible] his [illegible] sometimes [illegible] him [illegible] seeking his fortune as a private soldier [illegible] at other times commanding a single [illegible] armies, kings; sometimes he is obliged to quit his conquests, and [illegible] abandon'd by everyone; [illegible] emperors of [illegible] the world became [illegible] to his laws. And after these noble actions we see him quit terrestrial crowns for immortality, which was his principal aim, and the glorious end to which all these enterprises tended, leaving his empire in a happy and pro[illegible]

[illegible] reason which may [illegible] [illegible] his [illegible] this, [illegible]

as in compiling it. Tiberius had always Thra-
sar and Pediane secretaries to attend him,
who were famous the most learned men of his
empire, whom he order'd to write down all his
actions and discourses, with every circumstance
which might any ways relate either to religion,
the public, or himself; and all this without
the least addition, either to embellish the style,
or to set off the glory of any of his soldiers or
generals, by lessening that of the enemy. And
thus this history, as well as that of Alexander,
has been compiled.

Besides, several officers and gentlemen
of the court had conceiv'd some particular hatred
[illegible] of which themselves were ex-
[illegible] in
'em; this prince order'd [illegible]
the collected, and had the patience to read them
in order himself, after which he caus'd them
to be compared and examin'd in the following man-
ner. A person read over one of these papers,
and when he was come to some remarkable
passage, the witnesses verify'd the circumstances
of it, relating exactly as they had seen them.
Then the emperor himself examin'd the truth
of the fact, and having compared what the
witnesses delivered with the contents of the memoirs,
he distinguished the secretaries, the manner in
which they should insert the facts in the body of
his work, and then order'd it to be carried
back hither again, to see if nothing should be
added or taken from it.

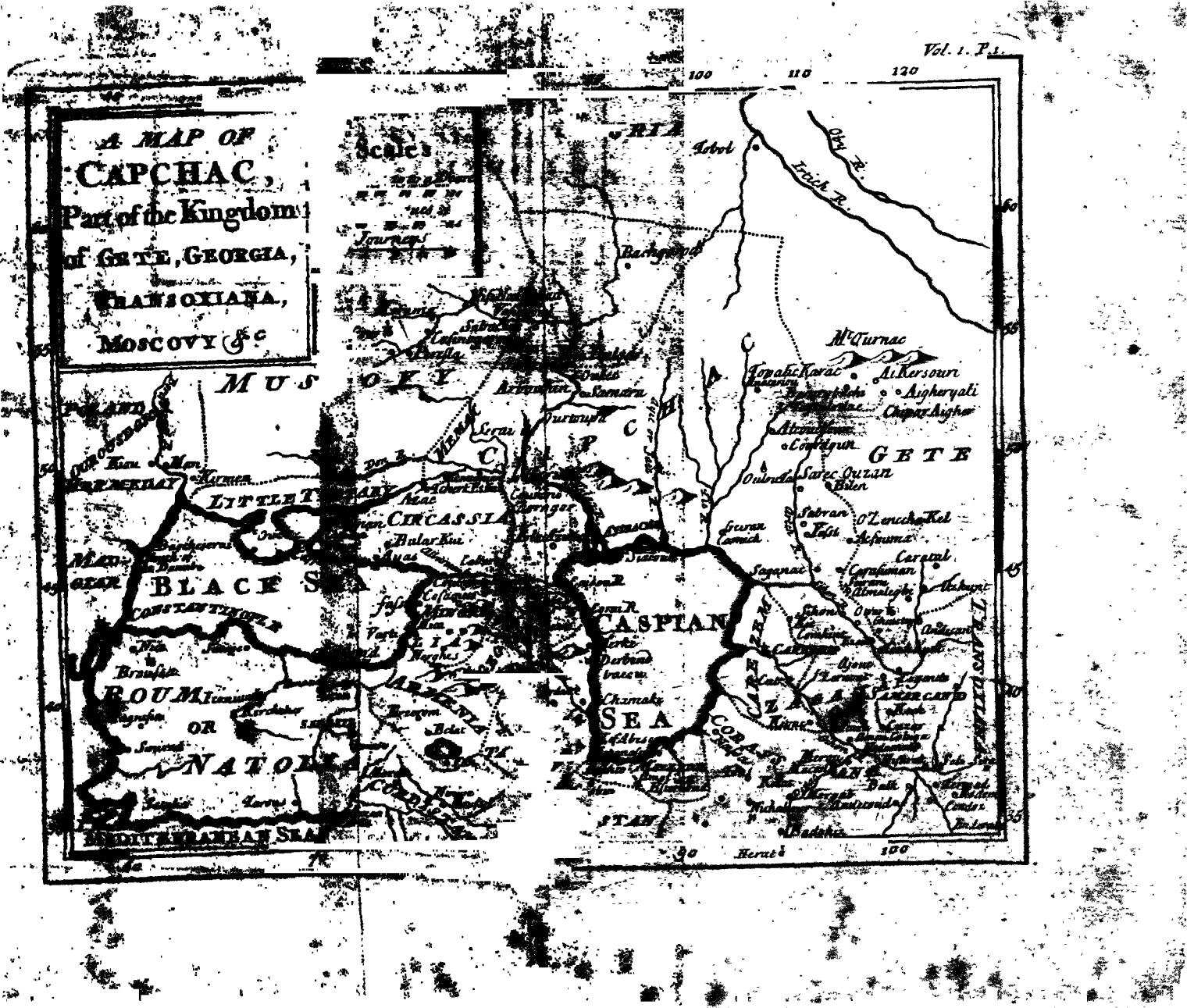
The reader will find by what I have said
that this history has been written with all
possible fidelity; and that the honour of its
position ought to be ascribed to Tiberius, in
whose time he took the trouble of collecting and
paring all the parts of it. The author not

gave the finishing stroke, adorning it with all the elegance and beautys of the Persian language, to bring it to its utmost perfection.

What is further remarkable in this work, is the exactness with which the chronology, and the day and hour of the event, are observ'd; all the encampments and roads are also remark'd, with the distance of one place from another.

Lastly, as the events are all link'd together, and naturally follow each other, we thought it advisable to relate several facts, which preceded the time that [illegible] performed [illegible] the [illegible] work, because we suppos'd necessary to a perfect knowledg of his history.

THE


Vol. 1. P. 1.
A MAP OF
CAPCHAC,
Part of the Kingdom
of GETE, GEORGIA,
TRANSOXIANA,
MOSCOVY &c
Scales
Journeys
MUS
OKY
POLAND
LITTLE TARTARY
CIRCASSIA
BLACK S
CONSTANTINOPLE
ROUMI
OR
NATOLIA
MEDITERRANEAN SEA
CASPIAN
SEA
GETE
Mt Turnac
Tomaki Karac
Al Kersouri
Aigheryati
Chiptar Aigher
Sarec Ouzan
Biten
Astrakan
Tartary
Ob R.
Irtich R.
Astrakan
Bukharia
Herat

THE HISTORY OF TIMUR-BEC.

BOOK I.

Several events which preceded Timur-Bec's ascending the throne of Zagatai.

CHAP. I.

Of Sultan Ezzin, grand Can of Zagatai; his death and death. Mir Cazagan, a Turkish Emir, takes upon him the government of the empire, and establishes a grand Can. The war of Mir Cazagan against Melek Hussein, prince of Herat.

IN the year of the Hegira 737, Soltan Cazan [1], the son of Hour-Aglan, who sprang from Genghiz Can, ascended the throne of the Cans of Zagatai, (*that is, of the country that was given to Zagatai Can, the son of Genghiz*

Chap. I. An. Dom. 1332. Meg. Ih Han.

[1] Mir is a contraction of Emir, which among the Eastern nations signifys a chief prince or commander.

[2] He was the 21st of the successors of Zagatai Can.

Book I. *ghiz Can, as his share*[1].) But this Prince being naturally inclin'd to tyranny, carry'd his violence and injustice to so great a pitch, that the people were reduc'd to despair.

His tyranny had so far intimidated every one, that when he sent his orders to the Princes his dependents to come to any place, and particularly to the assemblies of the states, which he held, they had so little thoughts of returning with their lives, that they commonly made their wills before they went.

This general discontent was at length the cause that Mir Cazagan, who was one of the most considerable princes of his time, and of the tribe of Tabji, revolted and join'd some other princes of the country to make war on the grand Can; they rais'd troops in Samarai, and brought a great army into the field.

The Can had no sooner receiv'd advice of their march, than he prepar'd to resist them; and when he had got thro' a narrow passage nam'd Colnga, or the iron gate, the two armys met, and fought in a plain of the village call'd Derry Zenghi, in the year of the Hegira 746.

An. Dom. 1345. Mog. The Dog.

The battel was unfortunate to the confederate princes: for Mir Cazagan their leader was wounded by an arrow in his right eye, by Cazan himself; and he not only lost that eye, but was a long time wholly blind.

---

[1] The country given to Zagatai Can, was Transoxiana, the country of the Yugbet, the great city of Calchigar near Tebet, the kingdom of Bodakchan, and the city of Balc, which in the opinion of learned men, was the antient Bactria.

[2] A town situate on the river Gihon, that is, the Oxus.

After

After this expedition Cazan return'd to Carschi [4], at which place it was so very cold this winter, that the greatest part of the cattel and horses of the army perish'd. Mir Cazagan, when he heard of it, lost no time, but got together his best troops, and march'd to attack him even in Carschi; and was no sooner arriv'd in the plain belonging to this city, than Cazan began the fight: the grand Can was unfortunately conquer'd, and dy'd in the field of battel, in the year of the Hegira 747 [5], after he had reign'd in Transoxiana and Turkestan fourteen solar years [6]. Chap. I. An. Dom. 1346. Mog. The Hog.

After his death, Mir Cazagan, the chief of the confederates, dispos'd of the kingdom, and set upon the throne a prince of the race of Octai Caan, son of Genghiz Can, call'd Dachmendge Aglen [7]; but soon after he put him to death, and at last advanced to the dignity of grand Can, Beyan Couli Aglen, the son of Sorgadou son of Dava

[4] A city of Transoxiana, long. 99. lat. 39. whose antient name was Nesef, and also Nacscheb. The name of Carschi was given it because of the palace which Kepek built there, Carschi in the Mogul language signifying palace. In this place was a well, wherein one might see a moon, which the country people believed to be perform'd by magic; tho it was only a porringer of quick-silver, which the cunning Ibnel Macassa had plac'd at the bottom of the well.

[5] We must not confound this Cazan Can, who descended from Zagatai, with the great Gazan Can, the son of Abaca, who sprang from Hulacou Can, second son of Tuli, son of Genghiz Can; which Gazan was King of Persia, and died An. Dom. 1303. Heg. 703.

[6] The Persians count by solar years as well as lunar.

[7] Hezarfen, a modern Turkish author, calls him Daneschmendge Can, the son of Isour Aglen.

Book I. Can[a], who was also of the race of Genghiz Can.

This new Can render'd himself so much the more agreeable to all the people, by his justice and liberality, during the six years he reign'd, in that they had not yet forgot the tyranny of Sultan Cazan, and had great expectations from the conduct of Mir Cazagan, who had taken upon him the government of the kingdom; which he acquitted with so much prudence and equity, in remedying the public disorders, that his name deserves to be immortaliz'd in history.

The most remarkable things which happen'd in his time, are, that having brought his army into the field at [b] Arhenk-Serai, he came even unto the gates of [c] Herat. For the better to understand the reason of this expedition, it is requisite one shou'd know, that from the death of the emperor Abousaid [d], there had not sat upon the throne of the empire of Persia any absolute prince of the race of Genghiz Can; and that the princes of the Turks, Moguls and Tartars, had no longer the sovereign authority in Corassana; besides that in the country of Zagatai, at that time, Sultan Cazan, thro the excess of his tyranny, had drawn upon him the aversion of the people, as before mention'd.

Battle of Herat.

During this time Malek Hussein, firnam'd Moazeddin, the son of Malek Cayaseddin then

---

[a] Dava Can was the ninth successor of Zagatai, and was the son of Berrac Can, who died An. Dom. 1265.

[b] A city of the province of Tocarestan, upon the river Gihon, long. 102. lat. 37.

[c] Capital city of Corassana, long. 94. lat. 34.

[d] Abousaid Can was the eighth successor of Halacou Can, second son of Tuli the son of Genghiz Can, who reign'd in Persia, and died An. Dom. 1335.

prince

prince of Herat, whose genealogy we have given at length in our *book of preliminaries*, daily so far increas'd his authority, that he oblig'd Cheik Hassan Youry, and the prince Massoud, sirnam'd Vedgidin, king of the Serbedals[3], to march from the fortress of Sebzuar with forces to attack him. He prepar'd to give him a warm reception, insomuch that on the thirteenth of the month Sefer, in the year 743, the two armys met in the territory of Zave[4], where they had a furious battel, in which the army of Malek Hussein was defeated, and a great number of his soldiers kill'd. But this prince got upon [illegible] and made a sign for the standard to be display'd, and the drum to be beat: at which order only three hundred horse got together near his person. He renew'd their courage by his speeches, and persuaded 'em to attack the enemys, who were busy'd in plundering. They obey'd him, and Massoud, who descry'd 'em, fell presently upon 'em; Cheik Hassan follow'd him, but he was kill'd by an arrow shot into his side by one of his own men, of which he dy'd upon the spot. He was an old captain, in whom the young prince Massoud very much confided, and had order'd him to retire, lest by chance he shou'd be kill'd in the fight; which misfortune accordingly happen'd. Massoud fled, and so the army of Malek became victorious, after having been conquer'd; they put all the Serbedals to the sword, and made a total plunder of their camp. This victory render'd Malek Hussein so proud, that

Chap. 1.

[3] The Serbedals were petty kings of Sebzuar in Corassana, who had revolted at the death of Sultan Abousaid, and had form'd a small kingdom.

[4] A Town in Corassana between Herat and Sebzuar.

Book I. tho he knew his ancestors had never enjoy'd any thing in Herat but by the particular favor and protection of the kings and princes of the race of Genghiz Can, yet he acted the part of a sovereign, and affected those distinctions which belong to kings, such as having the kettle-drums beat five times a day, and setting up the imperial standard upon his tent. Nay, he further shew'd his rashness; for he many times brought his troops into the field, and made inroads as far as the frontiers of Andecoud and Cheburgan [5].

These outrages oblig'd even his relations, who were very much discontented with him, to complain to the prince Mir Cazagan, who by his good conduct, moderation, and virtue, restored the empire of Cagatai to its former splendor. The princes of Erlat and Aperdi, with whom Malek Hussein had made war, [illegible] not to join their complaints with the others; they in a lively manner represented to Cazagan the pride of this prince. "What! said they, "is the race of Genghiz Can extinguish'd? "is there no further notice taken of the royal "majesty? This upstart of Gour [6] does not "know himself, and believes there is no one "above him."

Mir Cazagan gave attention to these complaints, and enquir'd into the truth of 'em; he then spake to 'em in these terms: "Shall a "private man set himself up for king, and throw "off the allegiance due to emperors? We will "dispute with the sword the pride of this au-

[5] Citys of Corassana near Balc, long. 100 ½. lat. 36 ½.

[6] A little kingdom, N. of Sistan, S. of Raver, E. of Herat, and W. of Bamian. Its capital is Zouf, long. 99. lat. 33.

"dacious

"dacious person; and after having ruin'd his towns and fortresses, we will make a river as big as the Gihon, with the blood of his scoundrel soldiers."

For this purpose he sent orders into all the provinces for the troops to cross over the river Gihon, and march to the appointed rendezvous; after which he went to join the grand Can Beyan Couli and the princes of the empire[1]; at the head of whom he march'd towards Herat.

This news coming to the ears of Malek Hussein, he sent an Emir with three hundred horse to meet him, with be it, ordering him to advance as far as he cou'd for that purpose, but to return immediately if he found the army of Zagatai had pass'd the river Gihon. This Emir had no sooner cross'd over the river Morgab, than he found that the Tartar army had pass'd the Gihon; for which reason he soon return'd to give notice of it to Malek, and thus address'd himself to him: "Cazagan "the general of the Turks[2], is upon his arrival; "he hath brought his army from Tartary into "Persia; the vast number of arms and the instru"ments of war he has with him, have rais'd the "dust up to heaven; and the people say, when "they see the glittering of his soldiers armour, "that he has used all his power to furnish the "empire of Tartary with iron." On this ad-

[1] The names of the chief princes of the empire of Zagatai are, Emir Beyan Selduz, Mehemed Coja Aperdi, Sarimich, Oladgia Iron Aperdi, Abdalla son of Taisou, and the kings of Bedakchan.

[2] The names of the Turks, Tartars, Moguls and Zagatalans, are here used promiscuously.

Book I. vice: Malek having summon'd his council, which consisted of the princes, the generals of the army, and the principal lords of his kingdom, made this speech: "There hath march'd "from the country of the Tartars into Persia "so numerous an army, that even the sun is "obscur'd by the dust they have rais'd; it is "compos'd of men who in an assault are as "firm as rocks, and when they see their ene-"mys give way, they resemble the torrents "which swiftly fall from the tops of mountains; "These undaunted persons put not on their "helmets, before they have resolv'd to sacrifice "their lives to the honor of a victory."

Hereupon each person deliver'd his sentiments: and because the Tartar army was not only more numerous than that of Herat, which consisted of only four thousand horse, with about fifteen thousand foot, but also more accustom'd to war, and more dextrous at fighting a pitch'd battel; Malek Hussein thought it not advisable that his army shou'd remain in the city, nor under covert of the citadel, nor in the streets and gardens of the suburbs, lest they should discover fear. The more to surprize their enemies, it was resolv'd to bring 'em into the field, to meet the Tartars, and first engage with 'em, if possible; and that in the mean time they shou'd build a wall to the east of the city, which shou'd be fortify'd with large ditches from Paymore to Kedestan. Immediately every one prepar'd himself to execute these resolutions, and the arms and all things necessary for the battel were remov'd out of the city.

The army got ready; and Malek Hussein fail'd not to harangue his soldiers, and exalte them to fight like brave men, when they shou'd be call'd to it. He told them it was not the great

great number of soldiers which render'd ar- Chap. I.
mys victorious, but courage and conduct; and if they were possest of those two qualitys, they might assure themselves that their enemys would soon find the world it-self too little for their security.

In the mean time Mir Cazagan passed the narrow passage of Pachnan, and came down to Kedestan with his army, which consisted of valiant soldiers; and the next morning he took horse with the Can, and the princes Oladgia Itou, Setilmich, and others: they went near the [illegible] upon a rising ground, and [illegible] the army of Malek Hussein. After that Mir Cazagan said, "This novice understands not the rules of military art; and the place which he hath chosen to encamp in, will soon be the cause of the defeat of his army, for two reasons: one is, that in the battel his men will be oblig'd to ascend to meet us, while we shall descend: and the other is, that when the sun shall appear, they will have the rays in their eyes, and will not be able to see those who come against 'em." Mir Cazagan, and the other lords, came down from the eminence, almost assur'd of the victory. The next day they rang'd their army in form of a half-moon; and after the prince had harangu'd his soldiers, they march'd towards the city, and at length arriv'd in the field of battel which Malek Hussein had pitch'd on. Then Mir Cazagan ascended another eminence, from whence he openly saw the two armys, and immediately order'd his soldiers to advance towards the enemy.

The Tartars instantly fell upon the army of Malek Hussein; but the attack was sustained vigo-

Book I. vigorously, and the fight was bloody: they cry'd out, *Sela!* in both the armys; that is, let no quarter be given. Every one shew'd his valor and strength, and the field was soon cover'd with blood, bucklers, helmets, and lances, mix'd with the dead, who every moment fell from their horses. At length the army of Malek Hussein, after a long and vain defence, was put to flight: and as that prince had drawn together a large quantity of water behind his camp, to hinder his men from running away, a great many perish'd in the river; and the rest were pursu'd by the Tartars, who made a horrible slaughter of 'em.

Malek Hussein retreated with great difficulty into the city of Herat, attended only by his guards, who made themselves masters of the by-streets and gardens which join'd the city; while Mir Cazagan, flush'd with the victory he had obtain'd, return'd to his camp with the Tartar princes.

From this time the army of Herat did not once sally out of the city; and the next day Mir Cazagan approach'd it, and began to besiege it in form: his brave soldiers had skirmishes every day with the besieg'd; and even in the night they assaulted it on all sides by the light of fires.

The siege lasted forty days; the place was briskly attack'd, and vigorously defended: but at length Malek Hussein, weary with delaying, and considering the city as his prison, assembled the princes and lords of his council, to consult about obtaining a peace. He told 'em he did it to serve 'em; and for that reason he wou'd go the following year to cast himself with confidence at the feet of the grand Can and Mir Cazagan, to ask pardon of them for what he had done.

All

All the lords approv'd his proposal: he then sent presents of horses sumptuously harness'd, curious stuffs, and rich carpets, with a great quantity of silver-money; and promised, that when Mir Cazagan shou'd return to the place of his residence, he wou'd not fail to go there in person to pay him his respects, and make all the submission he shou'd require. His promise was accompany'd, according to custom, with a solemn oath. Chap. I.

Mir Cazagan, who was an equitable prince, and of a sweet and merciful temper, granted whatever Malek Hussein desir'd, in consideration of the troubles and hardships the people suffer'd from that war; for he doubted not but the country wou'd be entirely ruin'd if they continu'd the siege.

He then consented to the peace, on the conditions Malek himself had offer'd; for which reason he took the road of Transoxiana, with the grand Can, at the head of his army, in the year of the Hegira 752.

From this time the affairs of Malek Hussein were daily upon the decline, and the esteem conceiv'd of his person began to diminish: this caus'd the captains of his army, who, for the most part, were of the country of Gour, to become so proud and insolent, that they conspir'd together to depose him, and to settle Malek Baker, his brother, in his place. An. Dom. 1351. Mog. The Hare.

Malek Hussein had advice of it, but he was not in a condition to prevent it: all he cou'd do, was to be upon his guard. The captains of Gour had resolv'd to seize him as he took horse: and one day as he came out of a pleasure-house, he discover'd, when he was about to get on horseback, that these men had some design against him, and were in a readiness to fall

Book I. fall on him: for which reason, as he perceiv'd a company of jockeys, who came from the city of Badghiz, and were then employ'd in selling horses which they had brought with 'em; Malek Hussein cry'd out to the Gouris, "Children, do you see those fine horses of Badghiz? "I give 'em you if you can take 'em." The greedy Gouris rush'd on 'em, and while they were busy'd at the pillage, Hussein fled away full speed into the fortress of Eskidge, which his ancestors had built in the meadow of the town of Herat, between the south and west, and which was full of treasure and ammunition of all sorts.

An. Dom. 1352. Mog. The Crocodile.

In the year of the Hegira 733, Malek Hussein, according to promise, went from Eskidge to Transoxiana, to pay his homage and respects to Mir Cazagan and the Can: Mir Cazagan order'd him a magnificent entry, and not only gave him a favorable reception, but was also serviceable to him in regaining Herat, which the Gouris had put into the hands of his Brother, Malek Baker; the property of which he resign'd to him.

Notwithstanding the caresses of Mir Cazagan, the princes of the empire form'd designs against Malek Hussein; for which reason they besought Mir Cazagan to order him to be seiz'd; but they could not obtain their desires, whatever instances they made: for which reason they resolv'd on the assassination of Malek Hussein, on condition, that after his death, none among 'em shou'd demand vengeance for his blood.

Mir Cazagan no sooner heard of this design, than he call'd Malek Hussein, to tell him what these princes had contriv'd against him; and he advis'd him to depart that very evening for

for Herat, since he cou'd not answer for the consequences of his stay. Chap. I.

Malek, having return'd his thanks to the prince for such great favors, took his leave of him: he departed as soon as night approach'd, and made such haste, that he arriv'd at Herat before any one knew of it, which he enter'd with his troops without resistance. He got possession of the throne in the citadel; and at the same time sent guards to seize on Malek Baker, and to put him in prison.

During these transactions, Mirza Abdalla, son of Mir Cazagan, departed from Samarcand with a great army for the conquest of Caranver[1], of which he made himself master.

In the mean while Mir Cazagan, who commonly had his winter-quarters in the camp of Saliserai, pass'd the spring at Caranver, because that country was agreeable, and very full of flowers at that season; and in the summer and autumn he dwelt in the city of Mounec, situate in a country proper for hunting, which was an exercise this prince delighted in.

One day he took horse to follow this diversion, and parted unarm'd from Saliserai, attended by fifteen persons only, not fearing any surprize: he cross'd the Gihon, with a design to hunt in the country of Arhenk; and while he was at the chase, he was surpriz'd by Cotinc Timur, his son-in-law, the son of Bouroudai, of the tribe of Ournat, who had resolv'd to revenge himself of this prince for an affront he

[1] A kingdom situate on the shore of the Caspian sea, near the mouth of the Gihon, whose capital was Gorcanga, otherwise call'd Jorjana.

had

Book I. had receiv'd from him. He fell upon him with a company of robbers, who immediately wounded him with an arrow; and at length these villains assassinated this great prince, so famous for his virtue and justice. Some officers of Mir Cazagan pursu'd the assassins with so much speed, that they over-took Cothic Timur near Condoz*: they shew'd the affection they bore their master; for they bath'd their swords in the assassins blood. After this revenge, they carry'd the body of Mir Cazagan to Saliferai, where they bury'd him in the year of the Hegira 759.

Mir Cazagan assassinated.

An. Dom. 1357. Mog. The Dog.

CHAP. II.

Of the government of the Mirza Abdalla, the son of Cazagan; and of the difference which happen'd between the princes of Zagatai.

AFTER the unfortunate death of Mir Cazagan, his son, the Mirza Abdalla, succeeded him; for which reason he departed from Samarcand, and came to Saliferai, where all the princes unanimously paid him that homage which declar'd a perfect obedience.

As soon as he had the sovereign authority in his hands, he confirm'd Beyan Couli upon the throne of the Cans, with the same authority as before. But having, during the life of Mir Cazagan, his father, dwelt some time at

* A city of Tocarestan near Kulm, long. 101 ½, lat. 37.

Samar-

Samarcand, he was so taken with the pleasures of that country, that he could not keep from it: for which reason he would make it the capital of his kingdom, and the place of his residence; and accordingly he return'd to Samarcand with the grand Can, Beyan Couli. Chap. 2.

The Emir Courtou, the other princes, and the lords of his father's court, merely from their affection to him, represented, that it was false policy thus to abandon Saliferai, the antient and ordinary residence of the Cans; but all their advices had no effect upon the mind of Abdalla: the poet says, *He who won't hear the counsel of his friends, will one day bite his fingers in token of repentance.*

The same year this young prince became in love with the empress, wife of the grand Can; and his passion carry'd him so far, that he got the Can assassinated in the city of Samarcand: he afterwards plac'd upon the throne Timur Chah Aglen, son of Bisun Timur Can: then he order'd the body of Beyan Couli to be carry'd to Bocara, where he was bury'd near the venerable doctor Cheik Seifeddin Barrely, to the great regret of all the People.

The death of the grand Can was unfortunate to Abdalla; for the prince Beyan Selduz rais'd an army to revenge it, with which he departed from the fortress of Chaduman for Samarcand: when he was arriv'd on the frontiers of Kech, the prince Hadgi Berlas*, who was prince Timur's uncle, join'd him with all his troops; and they came in a body to attack Abdalla, who after having defended himself

Army brought into the field by Beyan Selduz.

* The son of Bourlati, son of Nemouli, son of Hommeyar, son of Caratchar Neyian.

some

Book I. some time was routed, and fled; and they put his brothers to death, as also Timur Chah Aglen, whom he had rais'd to the dignity of grand Can of Zagatai.

The defeat of Abdalla.

Thus Mirza Abdalla was soon punish'd for his crime, and oblig'd to abandon the country: he cross'd the river Gihon, took the road above Bacalan, and went to Anderab, a city of the little kingdom of Bedakchan, where he spent the remainder of his days.

All the friends of the late prince, Mir Cazagan, were dispers'd; and the princes Beyan Selduz and Hadgi Berlas, who at that time had great reputation and authority, made themselves masters of the country, and took upon 'em the government.

The prince Beyan Selduz was of a good-natur'd pleasant disposition, and never inclin'd to mischief; but he extremely lov'd wine, and scarce pass'd eight days without some debauch of that kind, which caus'd great confusion in his kingdom; for each prince attempted to make himself sovereign, and even those who wou'd otherwise never have had such a design, seeing the empire, in a manner, without a chief, thought themselves oblig'd, for their own safety, to do as others did.

The city of Kech, with its dependences, remain'd in the possession of the princes Timur and Hadgi Berlas, as it had always belong'd to their ancestors, till the time of Caratchar Nevian; no one having made any opposition to it: the country of Cogende was possess'd by prince Bajazet Gelair; and Mir Hussein, the son of Musella, son of Mir Cazagan, made himself master of Cabul, and several other lordships, and maintain'd himself as long as he was able in the dignity of his grandfather, with the

the officers of his court: Oladgia Bogai Selduz with his party, made himself sovereign of Balc; and Mehemed Coja Aperdi, prince of the tribe of the Naimans, took possession of Cheburgan; the kings of Bedakchan had fortify'd themselves in their mountains, that they might be independent; and Kei Cosru, and Oladgia Itou Aperdi, made themselves masters of Catlan and Arhenk; and Keder Jesouri, prince of the tribes of Serpol and Tacun, caus'd himself to be declar'd king thro his own power. Chap. 2.

All these princes, who were at enmity with one another, were continually at war; some of 'em were kept in hatred, and among the rest Mehemed Coja Aperdi, in the following manner.

Prince Setilmich, lord of Couhestan, fatigu'd with the war he had carry'd on against Malek Hussein, prince of Herat, which we have already mention'd, had join'd himself with Mehemed Coja after his return from Transoxiana, and contracted a strong friendship with him.

They took up a resolution vigorously to attack Hussein, and for that end rais'd an army, with which they went to assaut Herat: Hussein also brought his army into the field to withstand em.

Mehemed and Setilmich, having a great opinion of their own valor, swore they wou'd not turn back befor they had cut off Hussein's head.

Malek Hussein cross'd the river Morgab, and the two armys met on the plain of Yapaghou: as soon as the two princes, animated by the sight of their enemy, had put themselves in a condition to execute their resolutions, they went from the army, and advanc'd full speed with sword in hand against Malek; but, thro a fatal destiny, they were shot by two arrows from the army of the enemy; so that they fell from their horses, and expir'd that very hour.

Book I.

This accident put the army of the princes in confusion; and notwithstanding it was so numerous and formidable, it fled, and left the field of battel to the conquerors.

All these disorders, and the wars of the princes of the empire of Zagatai, serv'd to augment the misery of the country; tumult and sedition spread themselves every where; and nothing was heard and seen among the people but groans and marks of despair.

CHAP. III.

Toglac Timur Can[1], *king of the Getes, marches into Transoxiana. The flight of Hadgi Berlas.*

AS the country of Transoxiana was in confusion, and almost entirely ruin'd, Toglac Timur, king of Gete, the son of Aimel Coja, son of Dava Can, who descended from Zagatai Can, to whom the crown of this country belong'd, had a design to make himself master of it; and after having call'd his officers and courtiers to him, he rais'd an army, and in the month of March, in the year of the Hegira 761, march'd to the conquest of Transoxiana. It is remarkable, that in the space of thirty three years, from the death of Turmeschirin[2] Can, there reign'd eight Cans in the empire of Zagatai.

An. Dom. 1359. Mog. The Mouse.

[1] The 25th successor to the crown of Zagatai: he was the son of Aimel Coja, son of Dava Can; he dy'd in 1372.

[2] The 16th successor of Zagatai Can; he dy'd in 1326.

As

As soon as Togluc Timur arriv'd at the fountain Chanak Boulak, near the Sihon [6], in the fields of Tachkunt, formerly call'd Alchasch, he sent Oluc Tocatmur, prince of the hord [7] of Kerait, Hadgi Bei of the hord of Arkenut, and Bikidgek of the hord of Cangouli, for his scouts. These three princes us'd all possible diligence; and when they had cross'd the Sihon at Cogende, Bayazid Gelair, a very prudent prince, thinking it wou'd be for his advantage to keep a correspondence with 'em, join'd his troops with theirs, and march'd towards the city of Sebz. Chap. 3.

Prince Hadgi Berlas, uncle of Timur, rais'd as many troops as he was able in the citys of Kech and Carschi, and other neighbouring provinces, to withstand 'em; but he at last chang'd his resolution, and before the two armys met, march'd to Corassana.

CHAP. IV.

The rise of Mir Hussein, grandson of Mir Cazagan: he is assisted by Timur-Bec.

The first mention of Timur-Bec.

POLICY is preferable to valor; but when these two virtues are united in a general, they never fail to form a great man.

Good counsel defeats armys; with the arms of policy, a single man may destroy a hundred; and an arrow well aim'd, never fails to find a place in the heart of the enemy.

---

[6] Otherwise the Jaxartes, which separates Transoxiana from the country of Gete.

[7] These are the antient Mogul hords, mention'd in the history of Genghiz Can.

Book I. This is plainly to be seen in the affair we are going to relate: for when the prince Hadgi Berlas, on advice of the march of the troops of Gete, had abandon'd his own country, and all his effects, to retire into Corassana, and had cross'd the river Gihon; Timur-Bec, his nephew, who was a prince of a discerning spirit, well knew, that if he kept a long time from action, his country and principality wou'd not fail of being ravag'd and destroy'd, since his father Tragai dy'd the same year, and his uncle Hadgi Berlas was fled: he believ'd there was no other prince than himself who cou'd put a stop to the ruin or insult a foreign army was about to bring on his country; he had to do with a mighty enemy, who had already brought the empire into great danger; he saw the evil which was about to fall on his people, and that the storm was approaching. This young prince, who had scarce arriv'd at his 25th year, and by consequence had not yet obtain'd sufficient experience, fail'd not to undertake an affair so full of difficultys; he repair'd to the banks of the Gihon, and gave his advice to prince Hadgi Seifeddin Berlas, concerning the great dangers a country is expos'd to in the absence of a prince, and the violence the enemys were about to offer his people if he did not prevent 'em. "As a "kingdom without a leader, says he, resembles "a body without a soul, I think it proper, since "you design to go into Corassana, that I shou'd "return to Kech; and after I have given fresh "encouragement to the inhabitants of that "country, I shou'd go thence to throw my-self "at the feet of the grand Can, and offer him "my service: I will gain acquaintance with "the princes and lords of his court, and lastly "endeavor, by all ways imaginable, to divert "the

Timur-Bec first shews his wisdom at the age of 25.

" the tempest that threatens our country: by " which means I will save from inevitable ruin " the poor people whom God hath put under " our care; an account of which he will one " day require of us."

Chap. 4.

Hadgi Berlas was persuaded, that Timur in these discourses was inspir'd from heaven; wherefore he approv'd his advice, and this young prince departed. When he was arriv'd at Cuzar, he met Hadgi Mahmud Chah Yesouri, who was order'd to conduct the scouts of the army of Gete, and in hopes of a large booty had made great haste, having a design to spare nothing. He behav'd himself so handsomly towards this general, that he promis'd to commit no hostility against him before he had had a conference with the princes, and made a truce with 'em: the soldiers, notwithstanding the desire they had to commit disorders, stay'd at this place. Timur-Bec departed for Kech, where he found the three princes of Gete already arriv'd; he had a conference with 'em after a handsom reception. They shew'd the pleasure they had in his submitting to the grand Can of Gete, and gave him the command of ten thousand men, who were formerly under prince Caratchar Nevian, his grandfather's great grandfather; as likewise the principality of Kech, with all its dependences. Thus, by the good conduct of this prince, the torrent of misfortunes, which were about to over-run this country, was stopp'd, and the people again enjoy'd peace, of which they had utterly despair'd; for which reason, it was said, that at the sight of him alone, sorrow was chang'd into joy, and mortality into immortality. Those who had the least insight into things, imagin'd that this good success, how small soever, wou'd be of consequence

Timur made prince of Kech.

Book I. quence to Timur-Bec; but they did not foresee that this was nothing in comparison of the vast grandeur which he must attain to.

Timur-Bec, after this conference with the princes of Gete, took his leave of 'em, and apply'd himself in a particular manner to the care of his country: he gave orders for troops to be rais'd between the country of Sebz and the river Gihon, and got together a good army, with which he march'd to join Keser Yesouri. In the mean time there arose a dissension between the princes of Gete, for which reason they caus'd all their troops to march out of this country to attend Togluc Timur Can; and at that time Bayazid Gelair join'd our prince with all his friends.

CHAP. V.

Several intrigues between Timur and Hadgi Berlas; as also between the other princes.

THE Emir Hussein, grandson of Mir Cazagan, at that time departed from Cabul, with intention to make war on Beyan Selduz; for which reason he sent an ambassador to Timur-Bec, Bayazid, and Keser Yesouri, to beg their assistance, whilst he rais'd an army. Our princes held a council, wherein it was resolv'd, that Timur-Bec and Keser shou'd go in person to assist the Emir Hussein, and that Bayazid shou'd repair to Togluc Timur Can, to remove all occasions of blaming 'em from the princes of the court of Gete, and to be present and able to answer the objections made against the assistance given to Hussein.

Bayazid

Bayazid immediately departed to execute this design: but when he learnt at his arrival at Cogende that Toglue Timur Can was return'd with his army, he waited till his men were join'd on the bank of the Sihon; after which he chang'd his resolution, and went no farther. On the other hand, the princes Timur-Bec and Kefer march'd with their troops in order of battel; for the soldiers were so well instructed in the military art, that they never broke their ranks either upon their march or during action. Chap. 5

When they had pass'd the iron gate, which we have already mention'd, they join'd the Emir Hussein, and march'd with him towards the forests of Chaduman, where Beyan Selduz was: but this prince, who did not think himself in a condition to resist 'em, resolv'd to retire to Bedakchan, whither they pursu'd him; so that Chah Behaddin, who was king of that country, was also oblig'd to fly, and to abandon that city, which caus'd the whole country to fall into the hands of the Emir Hussein, who there made laws at his pleasure, and seiz'd himself of the government of it: after which he put to death Kei Cobad, brother of Kei Cosru, prince of Catlan. When the Emir Hussein, contented with what had been done, by the assistance of Timur-Bec and Kefer Yelouri, saw himself in possession of the greatest honors, he thank'd 'em; and they immediately departed for their own country. And as it was requisite, to arrive at that of the Emir Kefer, for 'em to pass over the territorys of Timur-Bec, this prince, who was generous, and lov'd to appear magnificent, fail'd not to give him a good reception on this occasion; for when the Emir was arriv'd at Kechem, on the frontiers of Bedakchan, Timur went before him with so much haste, that in four days

Book I. and four nights he arriv'd at the city of Sebz, fifteen days journey on horseback from thence; and at nine in the morning at Oluc Meidan, a pleasure-house belonging to Kech, where he generally pass'd the summer. He presently gave orders for a magnificent feast; and when Keser was near the place, Timur-Bec went to meet him, and receiv'd him with all the respect due to his birth and quality. The most delicious meats, the most excellent liquors, and the choicest fruits and perfumes, were at this banquet. The guests were no less pleas'd with the ball which follow'd, and the consorts of musick with which they were entertain'd.

After the feast prince Keser departed for his own country, but the noble Timur stay'd in his usual place of residence. His clemency extended equally to the poor as well as the rich; all the country felt the effects of his justice; the people enjoy'd a constant pleasure under his happy government; and the state became more flourishing than it had ever been.

Mir Hussein begs assistance of Timur a second time.

Soon after, Togluc Selduz committed several acts of hostility against Mir Hussein, who having been formerly protected by Timur-Bec, sent an express to let him know that prince Togluc had violated the peace: he also sent the like advice to Bayazid and Keser Yesouri.

Timur, according to his wonted generosity, caus'd troops to be levy'd, to assist Mir Hussein a second time: he march'd at their head; and having met Emir Keser at the iron gate, who came to join his troops with him, they went together to the Emir Hussein, who was at Hissar, otherwise call'd the fortress of Chaduman.

The enemy no sooner had advice of their approach than he fled. The Emir Hussein, who was thus deliver'd from him without drawing a sword, sail'd

fail'd not to go and meet his protectors: he acknowledg'd his obligations; and having magnificently treated 'em, he waited on each of 'em back. Chap. 5.

When Timur had pass'd the iron gate, he learnt, that Hadgi Berlas, his uncle, who, whilst the troops of Gete came to attack his country, was retir'd into Corassana, was now upon his return to Kech; that he had had a conference with Mir Bayazid; that they had both resolv'd to join their troops to make war on prince Keser Yesouri; and that Hadgi Berlas had already began to put the army in order which he was to command. This news being soon confirm'd, Timur pass'd with his troops by the frontiers of the province of Kech, and join'd prince Keser, with whom he departed for the city of Kech.

Hadgi Berlas no sooner had advice of their march, than he put himself in a posture of defence; and when he was near Kech, the two armys came in view at a place call'd Akiar. They gave the signal for battel by the sound of kettle-drums, and presently there were heard on all sides the cries of soldiers who were encourag'd to smite their enemys: there was so great a dust, that one cou'd not see a person at four paces distance; yet the soldiers of both armys did not mix together: blood flow'd from all sides, and every one gave the best proofs of his valor. The fight was so bloody, that the authors, who have mention'd the battels of Rousteni and Esfendiar, have describ'd them less terrible than these. At length the victory fell on the side of the brave Timur, by the death of the principal officers of the army of Berlas, who was oblig'd to fly to Samarcand to join Mir Bayazid.

Timur's victory over his uncle.

Book I.

Timur, with the army of Sebz, and Kefer with his, resolv'd to pursue him as far as Samarcand; but fate had otherwise order'd it: all the troops of Kech, I know not by what motive, abandon'd Timur in the midst of his march, and came over to Hadgi Berlas, insomuch that there remain'd with Timur only prince Yakub[1].

This defection of the troops of Kech had so bad an effect on the mind of Kefer Yesouri, that he began to grow jealous of Timur; and had so bad an opinion of him, that he could not forbear giving marks of it both by his words and actions; for this reason Timur at length quitted him, and return'd to his own country with prince Yakub, who was willing to accompany him.

Hadgi Berlas gave Timur a friendly reception, and conducted him to Mir Bayazid; they shew'd abundance of joy at his return, and in appearance entertain'd him as handsomely as he could expect.

The rupture of the friendship between Timur and Kefer Yesouri.

Timur the more resented this action of Kefer, in that he had always behav'd himself in a friendly manner towards him, and had never omitted shewing marks of his sincerity and perfect friendship; he was so sensible of the affront, that he thought himself obliged in honor to resent the injustice done him, for which cause he willingly consented to the resolution that Mir Bayazid and Hadgi Berlas had taken to make war on Kefer; whereupon they got together an army, and march'd towards his country. Timur, animated

[1] Timur-Bec is sometimes call'd Timur only, because Timur is his name, Bec being a title that signifys lord of a province.

[2] The son of Mobarek, son of Dogan, son of Gadan, son of Caratchar Nevian.

by

by his desire of revenging himself on Keser, Chap. 5.
march'd at the head of the vanguard. After having past the mountain of Kech, they met the enemy's army in a place nam'd Sirouch. Keser then reflected, but too late, on the fault he had committed; he thought repentance won'd be useless, and thereupon gaining fresh vigor, he with great difficulty ranged his army in order for battel; the soldiers mix'd together with frightful cries, and the field of battel was in a moment red with their blood. Prince Keser, after a long and vain resistance, was obliged to yield to the valor of the enemy, and fly.

This victory secur'd prince Bayazid in the throne, and put Hadgi Berlas in peaceable possession of his own country; but the unlucky state of Bayazid did not permit him to foresee in what manner he ought to behave himself to preserve his good fortune; the next day he had an intrigue with Hadgi Berlas to the disadvantage of Timur: this prince, thro his foresight, discover'd it in the council, and being then persuaded that he did not act sincerely with him, pretended that his horse bled, and went out, and as soon as he got home, took his quiver and other arms, mounted his horse and went into the field, confiding in the assistance of heaven, which had never abandon'd him: and so he saw'd himself from the snare prepar'd for him.

As soon as Hadgi Berlas knew of the departure of Timur, he sent after him to let him know, that he had just receiv'd advice that Abdalla the son of Taifou, and Zende Hacham son of Mehomet Aperdi, had raised troops to make war on them; for which reason he desir'd him not to pass the River, but to get together the troops of the desart; that for his part he would

send

Book I. send forces under the conduct of prince Chougam, to oppose them, and to hinder the sad accidents that might happen. As soon as Timur was advertis'd of what was past, he assembled the troops of the desart, and without waiting the arrival of Chougam, he march'd back, and Mir Bayazid departed at the same time from Kech to return to Cogende. Timur was no sooner arriv'd near Termed, than doctor Ali Gurguri, leaving the study of the sciences, took on him a command in the army; he came to meet this prince with his troops to give him battel in a place named Encar. The meeting and defeat of the warlike doctor were the same thing to Timur, since he routed him at the first charge; and pursuing him as far as the old city of Termed, he dispers'd his troops, did what he thought fit in the country, and even encamp'd in that city.

CHAP. VI.

The king of the Getes returns to Transoxiana with a great army. The death of Hadgi Berlas. The Can confirms Timur in the possession of his country of Kech, and of a Toman of ten thousand men.

An. Dom. 1360. Heg. 762. Mog. The Ox.

THE ambition of governing in Transoxiana was rekindled in the mind of Togluc Timur Can, which caus'd his bringing into the field a great army, with which he fell upon that kingdom. As soon as he was arriv'd at Cogende, Mir Bayazid, who was prince of that place, paid him his respects according to custom. Beyan Selduz went to meet this Can with abundance

dance of ceremony as far as Samarcand; and Hadgi Berlas, far from opposing him as he had before done, trusted in providence, and went likewise to meet him. Chap. 6.

During these transactions, the Can seiz'd on Mir Bayazid, and put him to death, which made Hadgi Berlas afraid lest he shou'd be serv'd so too; he therefore fled into his country of Kech, whence he brought some troops, with which he cross'd over the river Gihon: they were overtaken by the regiment of Cachmir belonging to the army of Gete, who follow'd their track. The Cachmirians immediately attack'd him, and there was a bloody battel, in which Chougam Berlas was kill'd. Hadgi Berlas retir'd into Corassana; when being at one of the villages of Jouvin named Corache, which is dependent of Sebzuar, he was surpriz'd by a company of robbers, who assassinated him and his brother Idekou. Corassana was soon after conquer'd by the army of Gete; and one may truly say, that Timur was wholly reveng'd by the hands of the Getes for all the unjust and traiterous actions of the princes of that country: for after he had slain the assassins of his uncle, he join'd by the Can's permission the village of Corache to the hereditary countrys of Hadgi Berlas; the soil of which is fruitful thro the industry of the people.

Death of Hadgi Berlas, uncle of Timur.

Justice done by Toglue Timur Can to Hadgi Berlas.

There was at that time at the court of Gete a prince whose name was Mir Hamid, of the tribe of Kurlukut, who highly distinguish'd himself among the other lords of the court by his fine genius, prudence, and policy, which obtain'd him the favor of the grand Can; insomuch that whatever he propos'd was approv'd of, and he was never refus'd any thing he requested. As he was a friend to Timur, he laid hold on

Book I. on every opportunity to represent to the Can the good qualitys and extraordinary valor of that prince, in so enticing a manner, that the Can took pleasure in hearing him: he begg'd of him the countrys which belong'd to Timur by right of succession; the Can granted 'em, and at the same time sent an express to our prince to come before him: he gave him the handsomest reception imaginable, and confirm'd him in the sovereignty of all the province of Kech, and of a Toman, which descended to him by the death of Hadgi Berlas, with all its dependences.

A body of ten thousand men.

In the winter of this year the Can resolv'd to make war on Mir Hussein, and he brought an army into the field for that purpose; Mir Hussein also rais'd troops, and march'd as far as the river Vakech, where he encamp'd to wait the army of the Can, which arriv'd there that having pass'd the iron gate of Colluga.

When the two armys came in view, they were rang'd in order of battel. Kei Cosru prince of Catlan, whose brother, Kei Kobad, Mir Hussein had put to death, abandon'd with his troops Mir Hussein, and came over to the army of Gete. This desertion obliged Mir Hussein to fly; the victorious Can pursu'd him, cross'd the Gihon, and came as far as Condoz. His troops plunder'd all the people of that country even to the mountain of Hendoukech, and the army encamp'd the following spring and summer in those parts.

Return of Togluc Timur to Samarcand.

At the beginning of autumn the Can return'd to Samarcand, and in his way put to death the prince Beyan Selduz and others, who he suspected were inclin'd to revolt from him: at the same time he behav'd himself obligingly to those who, as he was assur'd, remain'd firm

in

in his interest: and having made the empire of Transoxiana submit to his authority, and constrain'd all the princes, some by his sweet temper, others by force, to take an oath of fidelity to him; he gave the government of the conquer'd countrys to his own son Elias Cosa Aglen, and order'd several lords and captains of his court to attend on the person of the prince under the command of Bikidgek. Prince Timur had in charge the principal administration of affairs of state under that prince, because of his wisdom. At length the Can departed for the place of his ordinary residence. Chap. 7.

CHAP. VII.

Timur-Bec marches in search of Emir Hussein.

WE always find that adversity succeeds prosperity; Joseph did not arrive to the highest pitch of grandeur, till he had suffer'd the utmost disgrace: the same happen'd in a manner to prince Timur; for after Toglue Timur Can had departed from Transoxiana to return to Gete, Bikidgek, to whom he had given the superiority over all the lords of Gete, of whom consisted the court of his son Elias, was not obedient to the orders of the Can; for besides his not rendring justice to others, he was even so insolent as to commit acts of hostility against the Can himself. Timur, who foresaw the great disorders this contempt of the Can's commands would cause in the kingdom, thought it not advisable to stay there, and therefore went to seek Mir Hussein; he underwent many difficultys, to join this prince, who he knew

was

Book I. was in the desarts, because they had receiv'd no intelligence of him: but at last he met him in the desarts of Kivac, near the well of Saghedg.

These two malecontent princes went to find out Tekil governor of Kivac; but he had a villanous design to seize 'em: his malice was discover'd, and they parted from him, accompany'd by no more than sixty men, and went towards Layab. Tekil pursu'd them with a thousand horse well arm'd, and overtook them: they immediately prepar'd themselves to give him battel, notwithstanding their small number: the fight was bloody, and it was carry'd on with an admirable intrepidity and prudence. Tagi Bouga Berlas, and [illegible] distinguish'd themselves among the rest; tho' their horses were kill'd, they fail'd not to fight on foot in the field, as did Eltchi Bohader, who had [illegible] shot under him, yet nevertheless fought with extreme valor, with his bow in his hand. Timur, who was willing to partake of the glory, and had a particular regard to the safety of so great a man, snatch'd the bow out of his hand, and broke the string, lest his intrepidity shou'd cause his death. They fought with so much vigor, that there remain'd only fifty horse of the thousand which Tekil had brought into the field, who were not kill'd or wounded; and of the sixty whom our princes had with 'em, there remain'd but seven. Hussein, if one may so say, collected all his strength into his arm, and rush'd full speed upon Tekil; he split in two the enemy's standard, and struck terror into the most courageous. In the mean time Tekil's men surrounded Hussein, and had slain him, if Timur with sword in hand had not made his way thro the midst of 'em, and dispers'd

pers'd 'em, to facilitate the means for Mir Hussein to disengage himself. They presently rally'd, and return'd to the charge; Hussein's horse being wounded with an arrow, fell under him; and this Prince had continu'd fighting on foot, if the princess Dilschadaga his wife had not got off her horse to give it him. Timur, whose valor and good fortune had never let him miss an opportunity of acquiring glory, turn'd about in the perilous condition he found himself in, and with an invincible courage rush'd into the midst of the enemy's troops, with his sword in one hand, and his bow in the other. He aim'd so surely, so successfully, that he shot Tekil, the general of this unfortunate army in the face; who fell from his horse, and Timur with a half-pike, which he took from off the ground, gave him so violent a blow, that he join'd his body to the earth. And thus ended the battel with the ambition of the perfidious Tekil.

Timur made Hussein mount his horse; they re-entred the desart, tho they had but seven soldiers, and at last were abandon'd by three of this small number, who were of Corassana. Timur was not more surpriz'd at this misfortune than at any other; for this prince had as much resolution in adversity, as he had moderation in prosperity: he comforted the companions of his troubles, and encourag'd 'em by his discourses. At last it was resolv'd, they shou'd separate, that they might not be known in the desart; he went before with the princess Tuman Aga his wife, the sister of Hussein, accompany'd only by one faithful servant. He passed the desart, and arriv'd at Jourfei, where he met a horde of Turcomans: these brutish men gave the alarm to their companions,

Book I. panions, and they surrounded him. Timur hid his princess in a sort of pit, recommended himself to God, and then march'd towards 'em sword in hand; but a Turcoman nam'd Hadgi Mehemed knew him, and prevented their attacking him: the Turcomans made him satisfaction, and endeavour'd by their services, and an entertainment which lasted all night, to make reparation for the want of respect which they had shewn to his person. The next day prince Timur gave 'em marks of his liberality; presenting 'em with a ruby of great price, and two embroider'd suits of armor cover'd with pearls of inestimable value. Hadgi Mehemed made choice of three horses, which he presented to Timur, with all things necessary for his journey, and gave him a servant nam'd Sareg Coulangi to serve him as a guide: in this condition he went to join Emir Hussein, who had taken another way; and after their meeting they came to a place call'd Mahmoudi, and got off their horses near a well in the desart, where they staid about twelve days.

Mir Hussein and Timur betray'd by Ali Bei.

In the mean while, Ali Bei the son of Argonchah had advice of their arrival at Mahmoudi; his ill fortune prompted him to march against them with sixty arm'd horse: our princes were surprin'd, and led to Macan, where Ali Bei for their prison order'd 'em a dark chamber, the furniture of which was very mean; and it was so very nasty, that there was no living there.

Mehemed the brother of Ali Bei, having advice of the injurious manner in which his brother treated these lords, foresaw that this affair wou'd one day be of ill consequence to him: he therefore sent from the frontiers of Tous presents to Timur and Mir Hussein; and wrote to

his

his brother in terms which reproach'd his indiscretion, and expresly advis'd him to give the princes their liberty, and to ask pardon of 'em for the ill treatment he had us'd towards 'em, and to comfort them as much as possible. But the malice of Ali Bei wou'd not let him take this advice. He seiz'd on his brother's presents, and did not free them from their prison till the end of sixty two days: and he was of so ungenerous a temper, that when he granted them their liberty, he gave them but one poor lean horse, and an old camel. They were in this distress, when Mobarekchah prince of [illegible], and a friend to Timur, had advice of their misfortune; he went to seek them with his children, and having testify'd his sorrow for their affliction, presented Timur with several fine horses, and gave him all the assistance he was able. Timur receiv'd them with joy, and, according to his wonted generosity, gave the horses to Mir Hussein.

Then these two princes consulted what they shou'd do in their present condition: and they came to a resolution that Mir Hussein shou'd go to Hirmen, a place proper to pass the winter in; and that Timur shou'd return into his own country, that he might be able at length to rejoin Mir Hussein at Hirmen, with Toumen, prince of the tribe of Mikouzeri.

They departed according to this resolution; the Mir Hussein towards Hirmen, and Timur towards Kech. After he had cross'd the river, and arriv'd at Bocar-Zendan, a village of Bocara, he there left the princess Olagiai Turcan one of his wives, because his affairs oblig'd him to that precaution, that he might not be discover'd in his journey: he departed secretly, and pass'd without being discover'd thro his

Book I. own country of Kech. In the mean while Temouke Coutchin knew of his arrival, and came to meet him with about fifteen men. Timur order'd him to follow him, and they went to the mountain Cuzar, which they pass'd over next morning; and in the evening arriv'd at Acoubi, where they cross'd the Gihon, and enter'd the desart: but because the weather was exceeding hot, they were oblig'd to stay a whole month on the bank of the river, under the shade of a little wood, during which time the litter [1] of the princess Turcan, which was departed from Bocar-Zendan, and mov'd but slowly, arriv'd there. And perceiving at some distance a dust raised by a great number of horsemen, they thought it convenient to cross the river; Timur went on horseback into the water, whilst the horse that carry'd the princess's litter follow'd him: this oblig'd all the company to do the same, notwithstanding the rapidity of the great river, which they all safely cross'd. From thence they enter'd into the desart, where they staid some days, during which time Timur learnt that the people were gone out of their Ilak, that is, a place proper to pass the summer in: And this news made him desirous to go thither, and enjoy the cool season; he repair'd thither with his company, and having pass'd a month there, they march'd towards Samareand. Timur went down to the princess Cotluc Turcan, his eldest sister, and staid with her forty eight days; but as soon as he learnt that the people knew him, he took horse and went to the meadow of

Timur swims over the Gihon.

[1] By the word litter is to be understood a four-cornered nich, adorn'd with brocade within, and cover'd on the outside with red Indian linen, in which the ladys in the Levant are carry'd. This nich is convey'd by a horse, camel, or mule.

Kech,

Kech, where he lodg'd in a village call'd Achighi forty eight days longer; after this he departed along the banks of the Gihon, where he met Timur Cojas Aglen, and Behram Gelair, with whom he went to Candahar, as he had promis'd Mir Hussein. God favor'd their design; for when they were arriv'd at Hirmen, which was the place of rendezvous, they found Mir Hussein with Toumen: and here Behram Gelair parted from them, and fled into India. Chap. 8.

CHAP. VIII.

Several warlike exploits of Timur and Hussein.

Mir Hussein and Timur part for Sistan.

ABout this time the prince of Sistan was engag'd in war; but being too weak to defend himself against his enemy, he was oblig'd to beg assistance of our princes, to whom he made known the danger he was in. Upon this they march'd to join him with a thousand good soldiers well equipp'd: the prince went to receive them with great ceremony, and promis'd that if thro their assistance he shou'd be deliver'd from his enemy, and regain his former prosperity, he wou'd in return present them with a great many precious stones, and acknowledg the obligation as long as he liv'd. These princes forthwith march'd against his enemy, attack'd and defeated him; but the prince of Sistan not being in a condition to perform his promises, only return'd 'em thanks for what they had done. When our princes were departed from Sistan, they met a great company of Sophis,

Book I. zians [a], who waited their coming, with design to fight 'em. The arrows and darts flew from both sides, and particularly from Timur's, who being got into the midst of his enemys, let fly his arrows against 'em, and also rush'd with sword in hand upon the most valiant men, several of whom he slew outright; his war-club and lance also render'd him as formidable to all those whom fortune plac'd in his way. The slaughter which he soon made, oblig'd the enemys to employ all their strength against him alone; they oppress'd him with their arrows, and tho he always made a vigorous defence, he was dangerously wounded in the hand: nevertheless the Seghzians being over-power'd by our brave men, were put to the rout, and we pursu'd entirely defeated.

Timur wounded in the hand: Hezarfen says that he became paralytic, and lame by that wound.

After this victory, our princes return'd to Kichlac. Timur staid at the camp of Tuyuen to be heal'd of his wound, and Hussein march'd towards Bacalan with twenty men [b] in [illegible] Ajouni younger brother of Bikidgek, who oppos'd his passage with his troops. Hussein was necessitated to fight; but his soldiers, over-power'd by the great number of the enemys, were vanquish'd; and Hussein troubled at this disgrace, fled to Cheberte, accompany'd by twelve men only.

Timur recovers of his wound, and marches towards Arsef.

Timur was no sooner heal'd of his wound, than he march'd towards Arsef with Timur Coja Aglen, and twenty four others. When he was arriv'd at Kehmerdi, he learnt news of the defeat and flight of Hussein; and sent one of his

[a] A people inhabiting the country of Seghze, near Segestan or Sistan. [b] Winter-quarters.

[c] Saddic Berlas, descended from Ilder, son of Gemadar Novian.

men

men to let him know of his recovery, and to invite him to come to Arsef. Timur continu'd his road, and met Saddic Berlas *, who with a design to serve under him, had pass'd the desart with fifteen of his domesticks to seek him. Timur receiv'd him handsomely, and immediately sent to Hussein, to let him know that the sooner he came to join him the better. In the mean time, Timur on the road perceiving a hundred horse, sent a foot-soldier to know who they were; who brought him word that their chief was Caramchi the son of Hasan, who [illegible] of Hussein's arrival in the [illegible] of Mandan, came to seek him. In [illegible], Timur found these men were friends, besides their leader had wheel'd his horse about on an eminence in token of joy: he then join'd them, and they went together towards Arsef, from whence he sent spys, who brought him word the next day that they perceiv'd at some distance a body of horse. Timur immediately mounted, and [illegible] to join them: he ask'd them who they were; they answerd, we are officers of the invincible Timur; he spur'd his horse into the middle of them, and found Techac Coja Berlas, prince Seifeddin, Aiche and Tutak, accompany'd by seventy chosen soldiers. These brave men, from the esteem they had for the valor of Timur, had voluntarily engag'd in his service: when they had found [illegible] they sought for, they alighted off their [illegible], and kiss'd the ground on which he stood, a ceremony used towards the greatest princes. Timur return'd home, and the next day they

Chap. 8.

* Saddic Berlas, descended from Ilder, son of Caradar Nevian.

Book I. descry'd another body of horse who came from Kehmerdi; they found that it was Chir Behram, who after having staid at the camp of Toumen, whilst Timur departed thence, came to find him, repenting of what he had done. He learnt that Mir Hussein was also coming to meet Timur, being informed of his cure by Saddic and his servant Sevendge.

Ouloum Couli with a hundred and thirty horse, and Mamut Keli, with a hundred and fifty foot, also offer'd their service to our prince in Arsef: he receiv'd 'em willingly, and they had the satisfaction to learn from his own mouth the adventures which had happen'd to him during his absence.

They also having advice that Mengheli Bouga Selduz, their sworn enemy, had fortify'd himself in Olatchou, immediately march'd towards this citadel to force it: but Chir Behram, Mengheli's friend, warded off this blow by desiring Timur to let him go to him, under pretence of persuading him to relent by his remonstrances, and even to bring him before him. The prince consented to it, but Mengheli prefer'd flight to all other advice.

About the same time three hundred men of Doulan Jaoum, dependent of Ouim, who formerly were in the service of Timur's relations, came to offer him their service.

These troops very much strengthen'd the two princes; they departed from Arsef for Souf, which is a defile of mountains, where Amles son of Toumen was at the head of two hundred men, to favor the march of the cavalry of Balc: and this captain, being inform'd of the good condition Timur and Hussein were in, join'd those princes.

In

In the mean while Temouke was sent with three persons to the iron gate to gain intelligence; he arriv'd there after having pass'd the river Termed, and learnt that the army of Gete was retir'd from thence, having first ravag'd all the country. Temouke at this place met his relations, who, after a thousand caresses, told him that his wife and children were encamp'd in the neighbourhood, and they besought him very much to go and see them: but the generous Temouke refusd to do so, and bravely answer'd, that when the master was driven from his [illegible] that the servant [illegible]

Chap. 8.

[illegible] and Hussein departed from Souf with their little army, pass'd the straits of Ghez, and came into the plain of Oliai Bouga. They there learnt that the princes Soliman Berlas, Emir Mousa, Yakou Berlas, Hendouke Berlas, and many others with their troops, hearing of the success of their affairs, had broke the [illegible] Gete, in order to join them, [illegible] Termed; [illegible] informed, they hasten'd [illegible] Bouga towards the Gihon, with order to march all night, and even to cross the river, to learn news, and to return forthwith. For their part, they departed from Oliai Bouga, and enter'd into the country of Balc: here [illegible] princes their enemys, viz. Abousaid, son [illegible]; Mengheli Bouga Seldur, who had [illegible] the citadel of Olatchou to Abousaid [illegible]; and Haider Andkoudi, were united, after having got together six thousand men, with whom they design'd to attack our princes. [illegible], they no sooner heard of the arrival of the two princes, than excited by hate and ambition, they march'd with their troops

Book I. troops towards their camp, stopp'd on the banks of the river Abysiah, which separated the two camps, and laid ambuscades in all the passages of that river.

Timur, who was well skill'd in the art of conquering, came to the bank of the river to put a stop to the first onset of the enemy, and to wait the arrival of his friends: he insensibly gain'd what time he had need of, and behav'd himself so circumspectly, with regard to the march of each, that the enemy's army was oblig'd a great while to move along the bank of the river near the straits of Ghez to find a place fordable, with design to come to blows; which, thro Timur's prudence, they were not able to do till they came in sight of the city of Balc.

Then the two parties range'd their troops in such manner, that the main body was between the right and left wings; and the bank called Abdalla lay between the two armys. During these preparations, the princes, who we said before were near Termed, join'd our party: Temouke arriv'd also, and gave advice of every thing he had observ'd beyond the Gihon, as well in relation to the army of the Getes, as concerning other particulars.

Mir Hussein and Timur fight Abousaid, Mengheli Bouga, and Haider.

The combat began about noon, and lasted all night: Temouke was dangerously wounded; guards and centinels were fix'd in all places convenient for 'em. As soon as day-light appear'd, the soldiers of both armys, at the sound of the kettle-drums, gave a great shout, excited by a desire for fighting. Timur, with his wonted intrepidity, pass'd the bridge, and fell upon the enemy, tho their army was much more numerous than his, and wholly compos'd of valiant soldiers. This boldness struck fear into all the enemy;

enemys, who cou'd not withstand the bravery of our prince, but fled with great confusion. Chap. 2.

After this victory Hussein and Timur review'd their soldiers, and found only two thousand horse: Timur reserv'd one part to himself, and with 'em went before towards the Gihon, which he cross'd at Termed in a bark; and after having encamp'd on the bank of the river, he sent scouts to the iron gate of Coluga, who being fatigu'd, fell asleep, insomuch that Ajouni, younger brother of Bikidgek, unexpectedly came upon 'em with his troops. Timur, who rely'd on his scouts, was afraid of nothing; and his soldiers were resting themselves in their tents, when on a sudden, both the scouts and enemy arriv'd at their camp.

Our men had not time to rally, nor fix themselves in order of battel to oppose the enemy: all they cou'd do, after abandoning their tents, was to embark for repassing the river; whilst our hero maintain'd his ground with a handful of brave men, and faid in an isle, where he sustain'd the enemys attack with more than human valour, [illegible] time to his troops to cross the river, and he himself soon follow'd.

The two parties remain'd a whole month in sight of each other, on each side the river; and Timur having caus'd the barks to be burnt, departed at length for Culm, on the frontiers of Balk, where he join'd Hussein with the rest of his army.

Hussein and Timur make peace with the kings of Taikan and Bedakchan.

The two princes march'd to Condoz, where they got together the troops of the tribe of Borolidai, with which they turn'd towards Bedakchan. At their arrival at Taikan, they made peace with the kings of Bedakchan. They then return'd to Arhenk, and after having cross'd the river near Saliserai, went to Catlan, pass'd the desart,

Book I. fart, and encamp'd in a place nam'd Ghulec. Here Hussein openly complain'd of Chir Behram, even before his face, and before Poulad Bouga, in that he wou'd return to his province: he told him he did not act with honor, in abandoning them when they were near the enemy, and had so great occasion for soldiers. Timur gave him his advice, and ad'd him very kindly, that he might oblige him to stay with 'em; but he wou'd not: and tho' his humorsom temper was enough to provoke Hussein, yet he dissembled his resentment; and Chir Behram parted for Belgevan [4].

CHAP. IX.

The rencounter of the army of Gete, [illegible] its defeat, caus'd by the policy of Timur-Bec, with the reduction of the city of Kreli.

IN the mean while the news was confirm'd, that Tocluc Selduz, Kei Cosru, and several other princes of Gete, were come at the head of an army of that kingdom; and that moreover Timur, son of Bubecan Saric [illegible], Tocluc Coja Berlas, Hadgi Bei, [illegible], son of Blkidgek, and other princes of [illegible], with their troops, had encamp'd with twenty thousand men between Giala and the bridge Senghin; and besides all this, above six thousand men had deserted our princes, so that their forces were much inferior in number to those of the Getes: but Timur, who trusted in God, and

[4] A town in the province of Catain, long. 104. lat. 39.

incessantly

incessantly besought his assistance, frequently repeated this passage of the Alcoran; *How often has a small number of troops, by the permission of God, conquer'd an infinite number of soldiers?* And he was not ignorant, that if God was for him he had nothing to fear. In this disposition of mind, he march'd with two thousand men towards this great army; and meeting 'em at the foot of the bridge of Senghin, he boldly disputed their passage; he fought with extraordinary courage from nine in the morning till night, which gave his Soldiers an opportunity of taking [illegible] In the mean time Timur reflected [illegible] inequality of the forces, [illegible] would not be able to succeed in his designs if his valor was not seconded by policy; he therefore had recourse to this stratagem: he order'd the princes Mousa, Muvaid, Erlat, and Ouscara Behader, to post themselves at the foot of the bridge with five hundred of the bravest soldiers, whom he wou'd leave with 'em, whilst he swam over the Gihon with the rest between the plain of Issan and Rassan Kech, and posted himself on the mountains.

Chap. 9.

Timur crosses the river at the bridge Senghin.

The next day the enemys scouts knew, by the marks of the horses feet, that troops had pass'd the river in the night. This report made the leaders of the enemys army look about 'em, and hinder'd their fighting that day. When night came, Timur order'd his men to approach 'em, and to light fires on the tops of the hills round their army. This cast fear into the soldiers of Getes, who imagin'd they were surrounded by a numerous army; they therefore fled that night in disorder without fighting: they dar'd not fly towards the bridge because of the five hundred men posted there, and whom they believ'd to be a much greater number, altho the Getes were more

Flight of the army of the Getes.

Book I. more than ten to one. It may be truly said, that the fires kindled on the mountains broke the general's measures, and put a stop to the soldiers valor, since the disorders began among 'em from that time. As soon as Timur perceiv'd the effect of his stratagem, he came down from the mountain like a torrent, and fell upon the enemy sword in hand; they slew so many of 'em, that there were nothing seen thro-out the field but dead bodys: he pursu'd 'em as far as the plain of Hedgerat; and Mir Hussein, who arriv'd with the rest of the army, continu'd to make a terrible slaughter of 'em. This defeat wonderfully encourag'd the soldiers of Timur and Hussein, who encamp'd in that plain, while the renown of this victory spread it self on every side, and gain'd Timur great reputation.

He then decamp'd, and march'd with two thousand men to the iron gate, where he met the inhabitants of Kech, and of the neighbouring places, who had fled from the army of the Getes, and came in multitudes to seek him, and implore his protection. Here Timur chose three hundred men to guard his person, and order'd the others to stay there. He then sent the Emirs Soliman Berlas, Yakou Berlas, Behram Gelair, Gelaleddin Berlas, Seifeddin and Yoltimur, with two hundred of his guards towards Kech, ordering 'em to form four squadrons, and to fasten on each side their horses two long branches of trees well furnish'd with leaves, that in drawing 'em along they might raise a great dust. They punctually executed this order, which had its desir'd effect; for the governor of Kech, who saw so much dust upon the plain, believ'd there was a great army: this struck a terror into him, and made him abandon the city; which Timur's men enter'd without opposition, and there establish'd officers

officers of justice, and all things necessary. Thus fortune, which was always favorable to Timur, caus'd him to triumph over an army by fire, and to conquer a city by dust. Chap. 10.

CHAP. X.

The death of Toglus Timur Can, king of the Getes; and the defeat of his army by the princes Timur-Bec and Hussein.

Death of Toglue Timur Can, in 1372.

A month after the death of Can Togluc Timur Cy'd, and when Elias Coja, his son, receiv'd the news of it, he was encamp'd at Tach Arighi, four leagues from Kech: he had with him the princes and lords of his court, with a numerous army of horse and foot. The princes who brought him this news, were Oluc Tocatmur, and Mir Hamid, who came principally to conduct him into his country of Gete, where he was to take possession of the Imperial throne of his father.

Timur, with his hundred horse, march'd all night to arrive at Cuzar: a vast concourse of people came the next day to prostrate themselves before him: he rais'd some troops out of 'em, which he join'd to those of Kech, and order'd that Coja Selaberi shou'd command the rear of the army, with which he wou'd encamp at Chekedalic, to which place the Cheik Mehemed came to join Timur with seven regiments. They remain'd [illegible] days encampt at Chekedalic; during which time Mir Hussein arriv'd with his troops, and those Timur had left at the iron gate. Chir Behram, who parted from him in the plain of Ghulec, and was gone to see his family,

Book I. family, return'd also to join 'em with his troops after forty three days absence. They march'd in a body towards Cuzar, under the command of Hussein and Timur; and when they were arriv'd there, they visited the tomb of the illustrious Coja Resmes. After having pray'd to this great Santon to intercede with God for the prosperity of their army, they embrac'd one another, contracted an indissoluble union, and confirm'd the alliance by solemn oaths, taking the Santon to witness the sincerity of their promises.

It is remarkable in history, that great men have often a sort of fore-knowledg of the events which will happen to 'em: the coming of Joseph's father and brothers was reveal'd to him; as was the conquest of Mecca to Mahomet.

Timur's dream, which he imagin'd a good omen; and on it undertakes the battel against Elias Coja.

As Timur was one day considering in what manner he shou'd attack the great army of Elias with the few troops he had, he fell asleep, and in a dream heard a voice, which said to him distinctly, *Fear nothing, for the most high God will graciously give thee the victory.* He awak'd on this, and the more to confirm himself that the revelation was true, he ask'd if any one had spoken while he slept; they answer'd him in the negative: he therefore no longer doubted that the voice came from heaven. This inspir'd him with so much vigor and resolution, that he immediately went to seek Hussein; he told his dream to to him, and afterwards to all the army, who were very much encourag'd by this omen, and only sought an opportunity to fight. This happy news chang'd the prince's inquietude into pleasantry and good humor; and the soldiers, whom the present danger had render'd fearful, grew dauntless as soon as it was made known to 'em.

The

The princes pray'd to God for the prosperity of their arms, and at length took horse, and made all necessary preparations for the battel; ranging their [illegible] and dividing it into two bodys. Emir Hussein put himself at the head of the right wing, and Timur commanded the left: and in this order they marched against Elias.

This new emperor, being encamp'd at Tach Arighi, also divided his army into two bodys; he commanded in person the left wing, and made Mir Hamid his lieutenant general; and the Emir [illegible] the right.

[illegible] two armys were in sight, they [illegible] themselves in form of a half-moon; and the soldiers, animated by their general's speeches, were even mad to engage: a great cry was immediately heard in both armys, and the combatants erected their lances in token of resolution.

Fight at Cabamiran.

The battel began in a place call'd Cabamiran, by the enemys skirmisher, who rushed in the greatest number of these soldiers, which far surpass'd those of the army of Timur: but these men did not long continue in this disposition; for Timur, without stirring from his post, let fly his arrows against the enemys with such skill, that there was not one who advanc'd that return'd.

Timur's horse at length began the general [illegible] with such a terrible cloud of arrows, [illegible] darken'd the sky, and slew the most [illegible] of the enemys.

[illegible] Timur, follow'd by his soldiers sword in hand, broke thro the opposite wing of the enemy with [illegible] rigor, that he did not give 'em time to [illegible] the first discharge of their arrows; the fury with which he rush'd into the middle

Book I. middle of the squadrons, struck such a terror into 'em, that they were soon put into disorder: and as on the other hand Hussein was fighting at the head of his men with Bikidgek, never was a battel fought with so much fury, nor so bravely sustain'd. The slaughter of so many men exceedingly fatigu'd our warriors, but at the same time very much heighten'd their courage in exciting their revenge. If Timur charg'd the enemys with so much fury at the beginning of the fight, in the end he behav'd himself with greater bravery; for being seconded by his soldiers, who were animated by his example, he rush'd on the enemys on each side, bearing down all before him: he at length drove the first rank upon the second, which co'd not sustain the strength of our men, encourag'd by the indefatigable valor of Timur.

At the same time this prince made a great cry to excite his soldiers against those who fled; they pursu'd 'em with their lances, destroying all who fell into their hands: they wou'd never have been weary of slaughter, if Timur had not commanded 'em to desist, and to advance to the right, to charge the rear of the troops commanded by Bikidgek and Tocatmur: these princes fought with extraordinary intrepidity, and by their valor render'd the issue of the battel doubtful; but when they were attack'd on both sides, how bravely soever they behav'd themselves, and notwithstanding the number of their troops, they co'd not withstand the courage of Timur, their soldiers being constrain'd to give way to his strength, and follow the example of their companions, especially when they saw the bravest of their leaders expire; as Doumsa, colonel of the regiment of Behrin; Tchampa,

Tchanpo, a favorite of the grand Can, whom the soldiers regarded as the only support of their valor. The general Tocatmur caus'd no less consternation in the army by his death; as well as Biki, brother of the great general Bikidgek, Dolet Chah, and two other princes of the blood, encreas'd by their death the affliction of the soldiers. Thus at length this army, so formidable for its number, was entirely defeated by a handful of men, if compar'd with the great number of the enemy. Chapro.

The emperor Elias Coja Can, the princes Bikidgek, [illegible] Aglen, Mir Hamid, Josef and [illegible], were made prisoners: but the natural generosity of the Turks was of service to the emperor of the Getes; for he was known by some soldiers of Timur's army who had taken him; they got off their horses, and without acquainting their commanders with it, set Elias and Bikidgek on 'em, who fled, and alone sav'd themselves.

Timur march'd all night through by-ways to the place [illegible] of those that fled, of whom there were so great a number slain, that the water of the river was red with their blood; and in the mean time he sent the Emirs Yakou and Seifeddin towards Samarcand, to make themselves masters of it, which they did without any resistance. This famous battel happen'd in the year of the Hegira 765. An. Dom. 1363. Mog. The Crocodile.

Timur immediately held a council with Mir Hamid and Chir Behran; after which they departed with all haste to overtake the rest of the enemys that were fled, and especially the grand Can and Bikidgek: they pass'd the Sihon at Cogeade, and went to encamp before the city of

12055

Book I. Tachkunt[a]. Here God mix'd bitterness with their prosperity: these princes fell sick, but their sickness did not endure long, for they were cur'd at the arrival of the illustrious princess Olijai Turcan, who came from a Kichlac, or winter-quarters.

Timur then resolv'd to return home, and repass the river at Cogende. Having a desire to hunt, he had a vast tract of land encompass'd by men; the Emir Hussein did the same in the plain of Dizac: they follow'd this diversion for many days, and then return'd to Samarcand, which they enter'd in a magnificent manner; which was very agreeable to the people, who expected from these princes a milder government than they had enjoy'd under the Getes.

CHAP. XI.

The assembly of the princes convened by Timur and the Emir Hussein, in which they elevated Cabulchah Aglen to the dignity of grand Can.

AFTER the famous victory over the Getes, Transoxiana and Turkestan were deliver'd from tyranny; but our princes were in great danger from the small deference the lords paid 'em; for all those who had had any hand in the defeat of the Getes, won'd have set themselves up for sovereigns, and been independent in their provinces: and they flatter'd themselves

[a] The same as Alchah, a town upon the Sihon, long. 99. lat. 42 ½.

the

the more in this design, in that they imagin'd they had sufficient strength to do it. This disorder oblig'd Timur and Hussein, who had the greatest authority, to convene a general assembly, to consider thorowly of the affairs of state; and what appear'd of most consequence, was the choice of a grand Can. The two princes represented to 'em the indispensable necessity of an empire's having a head; and shew'd, that without one it wou'd be impossible to protect themselves against their enemys, and to preserve peace; because if many princes had an absolute command, every one wou'd strive to get the better of the others, and by this means there wou'd be continual wars, which wou'd entirely ruin the people who were under their protection. And that no one might refuse to submit to this chief, they resolv'd to chuse one of the race of Genghiz Can, to preserve the antient custom of the kingdom: they therefore propos'd Cabulchah Aglen [7], who, that he might not incur the disgraces which commonly happen to princes in great conditions, had chosen a solitary life, and taken on him the habit of a Dervise, which they forced him off, and put on him the royal mantle. Publick rejoicings were then order'd to be made throut all the city of Samarcand; the people were feasted at the expence of the court, the grandees endeavor'd to appear magnificent by distributing gold and silver; every one dress'd himself in his best clothes; the most precious furniture, and richest stuffs were hung out; consorts of musick were heard every where, and nothing was spar'd to make the feast magnificent.

[7] The son of Dengiz, son of Hoc. Cadar, son of Dusi Can.

Book I.

The princes made Cabulchah Aglem ascend the throne, and presented him with the royal cup, according to the custom of the Turkish kings: at length all the princes in their turns bow'd nine times before him, as the chief of each tribe is oblig'd to do to the Can.

After this ceremony they committed Haider prince of Andcoud, who was in irons, into the hands of Zende Hacham, to put him to death; which was accordingly executed the same night, to punish him for the hostilitys he had committed against our princes.

Timur continu'd the feast by a noble banquet, with which he entertain'd Mir Hussein; and he thought himself the more oblig'd, in that the place of the assembly was in his own country, and that of his ancestors, and the other lords were strangers.

After this banquet Timur made considerable presents to Hussein, as horses, swords, helmets, and the finest belts; and to render the joy compleat, Timur, to whom was given the sir-name of great, and Saheb-Caran, that is, the horo of the age, propos'd to Mir Hussein, and prince Oladgia Itou Aperdi, an old man of great experience, to deliver out of prison Emir Hamid, the lieutenant-general of the enemys, whose father had always been his friend; as also prince Eskender his companion, who had been taken in the war. Hussein consented to it in complaisance to Timur, against the proverb, which says, *When the enemy falls into your hands, put it out of his power to hurt you another time, lest you repent of it.* When Mir Hussein had departed for his horo and antient residence at Saliserai, Timur sent the Emirs David and Seifeddin to release Hamid and Eskender Aglen from their confinement, with order to pay

Title of Saheb-Caran, i. e. Hero of the age, given to Timur.

em

'em all the civilitys imaginable, and to bring them back; but Bayazid and Aimen, in whose hands the prisoners were, had no sooner perceiv'd the two messengers at a distance, than they imagin'd that they came with orders to put Hamid to death; but to save them the trouble, one gave him a great blow with a club on his head, and the other cut it off: thus died the Emir Hamid lieutenant-general of the Getes. When the Emir Hussein had advice of it, he said that the action of the servant was greater than that of the master; and sent an authentick demand to render Aglen his private enemy, who was sent to him, and put to death. Chap. 12.

Our princes staid at their respective habitations all the winter: their affairs were in so good a condition, that they could not at that time desire more prosperity than they enjoy'd.

CHAP. XII.

The battel of Lak, or of the Kaych.

THIS prosperity did not continue long; for at the beginning of the spring news was brought that the Getes had rais'd another army, and that they were marching towards Transoxiana. Timur sent advice of it to the Emir Hussein, who order'd Poulad Bouga, Zenghi-Baral, and Malek Behader, to put themselves at the head of their troops, and to march forthwith to Timur, who had already raised an army. Immediately after their arrival he departed; but when they were got to the plain of Aliar, they renew'd the troops, and staid

Book I. staid some time to refresh the cavalry. They then departed to meet the enemy, and after having pass'd the Sihon at Cogende, they encamp'd on its banks between Tachkunt and Tchinaz. Timur commanded his captains to fortify their quarters; and the enemy's scouts advanc'd when the Emir Hussein arriv'd with his army. He pass'd the Sihon, and encamp'd in a place which was mark'd out for his troops.

The enemy's army encamp'd also on the bank of the river at Ezam; for which reason our princes quitted their camp, and advanc'd towards the Getes. The scouts of the two armys were no sooner in sight, than they rang'd themselves in order of battel. The Emir Hussein commanded the right wing; his rear being led by Petlandgi Esaty, and his vanguard by Oladgia Itou Aperdi, and other brave men. Timur, who was the soul of the army, put himself at the head of the left wing; he gave the command of the rear to prince Sar Bouga, with the troops of Capchac, and of the vanguard to Timur Coja Aglen; he kept the princes Yakou, Seifeddin, Mourad Berlas, and many other valiant men near his person. They march'd in this posture to attack the enemy's army, commanded by the emperor Elias Coja Can. Timur's soldiers were full of presumption and vanity, because they had not only once before conquer'd this very enemy, tho he was superior to 'em, and better provided, but because they themselves were now possess'd of those advantages. But for this their pride they were punish'd, that the observation might be verify'd, *The day will be unfortunate to the army which depends upon the multitude of its soldiers.* God permitted the Getes, who in the battel of Cabanitan were defeated, notwithstanding their great number,

Each wing had its vanguard and rear.

Aglen was of the royal house of Genghiz Can.

number, to get the advantage in this, tho they had by far the fewer troops. They us'd for this purpose a stratagem which is said to have been taught 'em by a famous magician. Chap. 12.

It is commonly believ'd, that the stone call'd Gedi steep'd in water at a certain hour, has a power to change the air, to produce wind, rain and thunder, and terrible hurricanes; to which stone the Getes, being satisfy'd of their weakness, had recourse. However that be, so great a tempest was rais'd, that the world seem'd ready to fall into its original chaos: it rain'd so violently, that it look'd like the deluge; [illegible] fell, and the lightning [illegible] noise of the thunder astonish'd the most [illegible]: the earth cou'd no longer be distinguish'd from the sea; horses and oxen swam in the water; the feet of the horses of our army, which were the best in Asia, were stuck so far in the mire, that the skin of their bellies was peel'd off: this excessive moisture caus'd at length an Efferca, a cruel distemper, which shrinks the nerves, makes the limbs paralytic, and corrupting the flesh, [illegible] that in a manner nothing appears but the bones and nerves.

Virtue of the stone Gedi.

Efferca, a disease belonging to horses.

The enemys, to prevent the ill effects their stone wou'd produce, had provided themselves with good felts, with which they cover'd their [illegible], persons and horses; and they had prepar'd [illegible] to carry the water off: whilst ours were reduc'd to a miserable condition; their [illegible] becoming extremely heavy, and the horse being [illegible] embarass'd than the foot.

When the rain was over, their bad condition did not [illegible] their advancing, and they attack'd the [illegible] with an heroic valor; but the Getes, whom the rain and tempest had [illegible] disor-

Book I. disorder'd, mounted on fresh horses, and well-arm'd, receiv'd our army with a briskness so much greater than that of our men, that our soldiers were oblig'd to fly; and there were terrible cries in both armys. Then Timur, who saw he must either die shamefully or fight, turn'd himself about, and crying out to his soldiers to come to him, found himself insensibly in the middle of the enemy's right wing. As his men were surrounded by 'em, there was the most terrible slaughter that was ever known; blood flow'd in little rivers, and the dead bodys of both sides fell promiscuously over one another, both friends and enemys, without knowing who were conquerors. The rules of war were not observ'd; every thing was in confusion, and every one of the soldiers had been slain in the heat of the battel, if by an unexpected accident, Chem Coun Nevian, brother of the Emir Hamid, who commanded the right wing of the enemy, had not been slain: for Timur being about to give him a blow with his ax, this prince, who was one of the most valiant of the Getes, fenc'd off the blow with his buckler, but as he was rising up to strike Timur with his sabre, he was pierc'd with lance by prince Yakou Bertas.

The emperor Elias Coja Can had no sooner heard of the misfortune which happen'd to his general, than he retreated; and his soldiers who saw him fly, despairing of the victory, fled after him: but Timur and his men pursu'd them, and did not cease the slaughter till their horses fell under them, not able any longer to bear the fatigue; whilst the enemy's horses, which had not suffer'd thro the tempest and sloughs, were swifter and fled. But if we had the victory on one side, we were beaten on the other; for the left

left wing of the enemy fell so briskly on Petland-gi and Zendehachem who commanded the van of our right wing, that they approached the Emir Hussein, whose guards being surpriz'd, fled in disorder, notwithstanding the courage of Chir-Behram and Emlad Bouga, who on this occasion gave marks of the greatest valor. Hadgi Bei lost no ground, but briskly attack'd the captains Ferhad and Oronc Timur with their regiments, who began to give way; but prince Chamseddin unexpectedly came to their assistance with a great squadron, which not only prevented their flight, but beat back Hadgi Bei: the fight was bloody, and the enemys were triumphing, when Timur, who perceiv'd the disorder, arriv'd with seventeen companys, and fell upon Chamseddin, who was not able to sustain the attack, but lost ground and fled. These advantages gave the Emir Hussein an opportunity to rally his guards. Timur sent Behader his aide-de-camp to him, to desire him to advance, and to tell him, that if they briskly attack'd the enemy, he wou'd no longer be able to resist; but this prince, either through jealousy of the great actions of our hero, or through presumption, resented the message of Behader, abus'd him, and beat him off his horse. Timur who perceiv'd they had so good an opportunity of overcoming, dissembled his resentment, and sent to him a second time Hamdi and Malek who belong'd to him; but he treated them as he had Behader. "Have I fled? said he to them, why then doth he press me so ad-"vance? Whatsoever happens, whether we "conquer or are conquer'd, none of you shall "save himself from my hand." Malek and Hamdi returned in a great passion, and Timur vex'd that the most favorable opportunity shou'd be

Chap. III.

Book I. be lost thro the caprice of the Emir Hussein, resolv'd to be reveng'd: he ceas'd from attacking the enemy; and as the two wings of both armys had been reciprocally routed, and had taken each others place, they encamp'd where they were at that time, with design to give some refreshment to the soldiers during the night, after the excessive fatigue of the day. In the mean while the Emir Hussein recover'd from his ill humor, sent several messages to Timur, to intreat him to come and see him; but this prince, weary with his manner of acting, refus'd to go.

The sound of the trumpet Kerrena [1] waking the soldiers before morning, every one prepar'd himself to continue the fight. The two parties fell upon one another with great cries, mix'd with a confus'd noise of drums and trumpets, and the victory was not long in suspence: the army of the Getes fled, and Timur and his men pursu'd 'em, and in the pursuit perceiv'd the standard of prince Chamseddin, who was separated from the rest, and came with a great number; so our men abandon'd the fugitives, and turn'd towards the white standard: but the enemys, as soon as they perceiv'd the ensign, rally'd and return'd to the charge. The combat was bloody, and at length our men were vanquish'd; the Getes had the victory, and oblig'd us to turn our backs. Fear caus'd a great number of our men to perish in the sloughs and marshes. The enemys in the pursuit of the rest kill'd a great many, and there remain'd slain in the field of battel more than

[1] Kerrena is a large trumpet of brass, eight foot long, which serves to wake the soldiers, and sound a retreat.

ten

ten thousand of our men. This famous battel of Lai, that is to say, of the sloughs, happen'd on the first of Ramadan, in the year of the Hegira 766. Mirkhond remark, that the tenth of the same celestial conjunctions was in Scorpio, about the time of this fatal defeat: I mention this circumstance only for the perfection of this history, and not to infer that accidents are caus'd by the influences of the heavenly bodies: on the contrary, I believe there are no influences nor accidents in nature, of which God is not the disposer and primary author.

Chap. 13. An. Dom. 1364. Mog. The Serpent.

CHAP. XIII.

The Retreat of Timur-Bec and Hussein. Samarcand besieg'd by the Getes.

After this great defeat, the princes arriv'd at Kesh, where they did not think themselves sufficiently secure against the Getes, who pursu'd them; they therefore resolv'd to pass the Gihon, every one with the troops of his hord: the Emir Hussein told Timur that it was proper he shou'd do the same with his family and troops; but this prince answer'd him, that the other princes might do what they pleas'd, but that he was not of that mind, and that his temper wou'd not suffer him to abandon his country to the tyranny of barbarians; that he wou'd rally as many troops as he was able, and march against the enemys; and if fortune oppos'd his design, he shou'd nevertheless have the glory of dying in defence of his subjects.

The

Book I. The Emir Hussein went to Saliserai, where he made his men cross the Gihon, and retir'd with 'em by by-ways to Cheberto; from whence he sent spys to the places round about to learn news of the Getes, that he might fly into India on the first advice of their approach.

As soon as the Emir Hussein was departed from Kech, Timur neglected no opportunity of levying troops; his good conduct, and the affection of the people towards him, was the reason that he rais'd seventeen companys; he sent Timur Coja Aglen to command the half of these troops, and order'd Chaourchi and Abbas Behader to carry forage to Samarcand, and raise other troops there. Mir Chaourchi staid in the way to drink hard of some of the best wines: this liquor, which makes many men courageous and generous, dispirited him even to excess; he told David Coja and Hindoucha, that Timur had a design to seize 'em, and to send 'em to the Emir Hussein to be put to death. Upon this these two captains were afraid, and fled in haste to the Getes, which was a great loss to Timur; the others contin'd their road, and met at Kukeug a party of the army of the Getes, commanded by Kepec Timur, son of Oluk Tocatmur, and by the captains Chiraoul and Inkirsac son of Hadgi Bei; ours were surpriz'd and entirely defeated, with the four or five companys who remain'd with 'em.

Timur soon receiv'd advice of this fresh loss; he well knew that his prosperity must be at a stand for some time, and that there was no more likelihood of defending his country, to whatsoever hazard he expos'd his life: for this reason he cross'd the Gihon, and went to Balk, where he rally'd the troops of his Toman, and the

the other troops of his country who had fled thither. He also got together the Tomans of Kepec Can and Olaja Bouga Solduz, part of whom he sent to the river Oxus to guard the passages, and to get information of what happen'd there. Timur Coja Aglen arriv'd at this time, and he was punish'd for his bad conduct by a fine impos'd on him. Chap. II.

Siege of Samarcand by the Getes.

In the mean while the army of the Getes arriv'd at Samarcand, which at that time was without a citadel. Moulana Zaide Samarcandi, Moula Cardec Imam of Bocara, and Aboubeker Kelmi, their whole probity and knowledge had acquir'd them an authority and power over the people, and who imagin'd the tyrannick government of the Getes wou'd cause an entire desolation of this city, undertook to defend it against these barbarians. They represented to the inhabitants by their pathetic speeches the misery which this insupportable tyranny had brought on them; that what was to come wou'd be much worse, because of the particular attitude the Gotes imagin'd they bore to the princes of Transoxiana; that in this condition they ought to take arms to defend themselves from the cruelty of these tyrants, till it shou'd please God to grant the princes sufficient strength to resist them. The inhabitants of Samarcand, who had a great veneration for their Imams, and love for their princes, being desirous to take arms, were easily persuaded to do so: and without the princes at their head, they undertook to dispute with the Getes their entrance into the city: they fix'd chains cross each street, and every one arm'd himself, even from children of twelve years of age, to the oldest men. The enemy strove several times to surprize the city; they enter'd into the

Book I. the suburbs; but they were always repuls'd with loss; and even the citizens made such vigorous sallys, that they beat back the Getes into their tents, chas'd them entirely out of the suburbs, and kill'd a great number of them. But as this city was well peopled, and the inhabitants were not accustom'd to the fatigues of war, victuals became very dear; the artisan work'd no longer, and every one began to be tir'd with the siege; insomuch that being redue'd to the last extremitys, they had been constrain'd to surrender, if God had not deliver'd them on a sudden from the evil which threaten'd them. There was a mortality among the horses of the Getes, of which there perish'd three fourths, so that they were at a loss to get horses for the couriers. This misfortune ruin'd their army, and disabled them from continuing the siege, so that they were oblig'd to return home in a miserable condition, almost all of 'em on foot, with their quivers tied to their backs, and their swords on their shoulders. The principal men of the city were fill'd with pride, because the Getes were retir'd; and attributed to themselves the glory of sustaining the attack of so great an army, and even of having repuls'd it. Moreover, they wou'd have respect paid them, and claim'd a sort of superiority over the rest: they at length form'd great partys, spilt the people's blood, and caus'd strange disorders in the city, to maintain themselves in their usurpation.

On the other hand, Abbas Behader, whom Timur had sent to the iron gate, to observe the motions of the army of the Getes, return'd in all haste to that prince. He gave him an account of the miserable condition the enemys were in, and represented to him at the same

time the state of the inhabitants of Samarcand, who suffer'd a great deal under the tyranny of the usurpers. When Timur was inform'd of these things, he sent in haste to the Emir Hussein, to give him advice of them, and to invite him at the same time to march thither with his troops. Hussein was extremely well pleas'd with the news, and departed forthwith from Cheberto to Salisemi. Timur order'd all his family to cross the Gihon, and sent 'em to Kech, his ancient residence.

This prince then took horse to meet Hussein, which he did at the entry of the meadow of Dirdam. They embrac'd each other, and having renew'd their friendship, they promis'd to be more closely united than ever. They had a long conference on what had already pass'd, and what they had to do; and they concluded to be at Samarcand the beginning of the spring: Timur return'd, cross'd the Gihon, and encamp'd at Carichi. The name of Carichi was given to the remains of the palace Kopek built two leagues and a half from Nakcheb, in the mogul language Carichi, signifying a palace. Timur pass'd the winter there; during which time he built the citadel, which was finish'd before the end of that season.

Nakcheb, Nesef, and Carichi, are the same place.

CHAP. XIV.

Departure of the princes for Samarcand, and the dissension which happen'd between 'em.

THE princes departed in the spring for Samarcand; and as soon as they were arriv'd at this capital of Transoxiana, they agreed on what was of most importance; to wit, the punishment of the insolence of the Serbedals, who pretended to take upon 'em the highest posts, and had entirely confounded both the state and [illegible] they had [illegible]'d. It was resolv'd that they [illegible] all those petty tyrants; which was accordingly done. The Emir Hussein, after having reproach'd them for the horrid crimes they had committed, order'd their heads to be cut off, after their trial at Caniglitil, where the army encamp'd; insomuch, that there remain'd only Moulana Zade, whom Timur sav'd thro a motive of piety.

After the princes had regulated the civil government of this city, restor'd the laws and the ordinary course of justice among the inhabitants whom the Serbedals had sadly [illegible], Hussein made known his reigning passions. He saw himself at the height of his desires; and at the same time discover'd an insatiable avarice and meanness of spirit, which did not in the least shew him to be the grandson of the great Emir Cazagan. He employ'd all his care and authority to heap up riches; and avarice had so [illegible] a possession of his soul, that he had no regard to honor or equity: and without considering that Timur had as much or a greater share in the good

good or ill success of the wars they had been engag'd in, he even venur'd to tax the domesticks of Timur: he exacted immense sums from the princes Yakub, Soliman, Achouga, Eltchi, Behader, and Bakri Cha Balki. The barrel of the sloughs, where these princes lost their treasure, and most part of their baggage, had put 'em out of a condition to satisfy him immediately. All they cou'd recover thro their industry, was not sufficient to assuage his thirst after riches: but Timur furnish'd 'em with enough to make up the great sum they were tax'd at; and as this prince had not a sufficient quantity of [illegible] he gave the mothers and [illegible] of the princes Olajai Tuream his wife. Husein receiv'd all they brought him; he saw, among the rest, his sister's jewels; and he had a soul base enough to forget the duty of a brother, and not to refuse 'em. After having fix'd a price on 'em, he examin'd whether they had entirely paid the tax, and found there yet remain'd three thousand ducats* unpaid: this ungenerous prince demanded 'em, and Timur gave his [illegible] to [illegible] accept 'em; but he said he would go to Balkiz, from whence he must send a sum of money to Carozem, there to demand in marriage the daughter of Husein Soft, and that he wou'd wait for the remainder of what was due. He was no sooner departed, than Timur rais'd the siege of Kech, which he sent him.

These actions gave the Emir Husein a bad reputation: but the fear the people were in, because of the union between him and Timur, made 'em dissemble it: nevertheless, the aver-

* A ducat of gold, or a sequin.

Book I. tion which the principal lords bore to him was so great, that they resolv'd to use all their efforts to disunite 'em; and after having humbled the haughtiness of Hussein, they propos'd to themselves to give the absolute power to Timur, who was of a sweet temper, had a generous soul, noble passions, and, in fine, every virtue that was necessary to the forming of a great prince. But as the sun never shews itself till the stars have disappear'd, Timur cou'd not arrive at that pitch of greatness destin'd for him, without the ruin of Hussein. The Emir Moussa Ali Dervis, son of Bajazet Gelair, who was his wife's brother, and Ferhad, to break the union of the princes, made use of an artifice, that thought [illegible] princess belonging to the [illegible] Chirin Can, whose daughter, the mother of Ali Dervis, was ally'd to the Emir Hussein, [illegible] wrote a letter to him full of falsehoods, [illegible] of which were, that Timur, [illegible] grand Can and him, had sought means to revenge himself by an open war; and that he was so far resolv'd on it, that he had already began to make preparations, which wou'd no sooner be finish'd, than he will make known his designs by divers hostilitys. This letter was given to Hussein, who read it, and at the same time shew'd it to Can Cabulchah Aglen. They immediately sent men to Timur to be inform'd of the truth from himself, and to desire him to come to Samarcand to Ourda Catoun, with those who had given him advice of it, that being brought face to face the truth of the things asserted might more easily be brought to light. Timur, who not so much as thought of what he was accus'd of, took horse without fear, or using any precautions, and went to Samarcand; but

but the Emir Moussa and Ali Dervis having notice of his arrival, abandon'd the intrigue, and fled to Cogende, for fear of coming to dishonour. This was enough to persuade Hussein, and the rest, that Timur had no hand in the conspiracy; but it had a very different effect with regard to Hussein. Timur, who by his long familiarity with him, knew what his heart was capable of, and how jealous he was, since he believ'd what was contain'd in this false letter, did not doubt his having a constant suspicion of him, and that there wou'd be continual quarrels between em; he therefore thought it prudent for him also to be mistrustful of the Emir Hussein, to avoid the dangers which might happen. He seriously consider'd how he shou'd for the future deal with a prince whose proceedings were so unaccountable, and who had shewn so much baseness and avarice. The Emirs on the other hand were extremely discontented with Hussein, because of the tax he had impos'd on em, and were continually endeavouring to deliver themselves from danger.

Chap. 14.

One day, in a conference with em, this prince open'd his heart to 'em; and after having testify'd his resentment of the tyrannical actions of Hussein, he declar'd his intention to remedy this evil. Chir Behram and Behram Gelair, who, for fear of displeasing Timur, never dar'd to discover the mortal hatred they bore to Hussein, because of the firm alliance between these two princes, then took off the mask, and acquainted Timur with the unanimous design of all the princes; which was founded on their assurance that Hussein did not act faithfully with any of 'em. They declar'd to him they were all resolv'd to break off with him, and to treat him for the future as an enemy; that he had dis-

Book I. disturbed in every thing; and if they did not soon bring an army into the field to give him battel, he wou'd begin first with 'em. These princes were so warm on this design, and by their discourses so heighten'd Timur's discontent against Hussein, that they brought him to a resolution to make war upon him. They enter'd into a treaty, and confirm'd it by an oath; which imported that Chir Behram shou'd go to his principality of Catlan, and there raise troops, while Timur regulated the affairs of the army. Chir Behram carry'd with him an officer of Timur's, nam'd Adel, and left one of his own, call'd Tacoja; so that when Adel came, Tacoja depatted, and [illegible] were always kept a constant correspondence. [illegible] at Catlan; and as soon as he had raiſ'd troops, he led 'em to a mountain situated behind [illegible], where he began many hostilities against [illegible]. But this politick prince by his artifices gain'd over to his interest Chir Behram: he brought him from the mountain, on conditions somewhat advantageous to this faithless prince. Timur, when he had advice of it, wrote a letter to Chir Behram, to reproach him for his baseness and inconstancy: at the end of which he had these words; "I pray God you may soon receive from Hussein the punishment of your "faithlessness, when repentance will avail you "nothing."

Timur fail'd not to pursue his enterprize: he assign'd troops to Behram Gelair, prince Yakou, and Abbas Behader; and sent 'em to Cogende to make themselves masters of the hord of Gelair, and to seize on the Emir Mousa, and Ali Dervis the son of Bajazet, whose malice had been the first cause of this disorder: but these seditious men had notice of it, and fled. Behram

ram got together the hord of Gelair, and estabilish'd himself in his principality. Chap. 14.

After this expedition, Timur being apprehensive how difficult it was to extricate himself out of this troublesom affair of attacking the Can and the Emir Hussein at the same time, took horse with those who were of his side; and after having put to death the men belonging to Ali Dervis, he march'd with his houshold and troops towards Gete.

Whilst Timur was gone to Samarcand to raise troops, the Emir Soliman and Chaourchi, who were [illegible] raise discord between the two princes, [illegible] over from Hussein to him; and prince Kefer Yesouri being dead, Ali his brother, Elias, and Hadgi Mamut Chah, came with the troops of the hord of Yesouri to submit themselves to Timur. This prince made Cara Hendouke Berlas governor of Samarcand during his absence; after which he took horse to return. But Hendouke prov'd faithless to him, and [illegible] to Hussein, whilst Cara [illegible] who [illegible] in a capacity to govern, seem'd to have lost all his courage.

Death of Timur's wife.

Whilst Timur was gone from his palace to recruit his troops, the princess Olajai Turcan Aga, his wife, dy'd. He was very much afflicted at this loss, and on this occasion distributed great alms among the poor of the country. The Emir Hussein was the more touch'd at this misfortune, in that it was doubly fatal to him, first in losing his sister, Timur was disingag'd from his alliance, and the regard and friendship which this princess had kept up betwixt 'em, was now [illegible]'d.

CHAP. XV.

Timur-Bec brings an army into the field against Emir Hussein.

An. Dom. 1365. Mog. The Horse.

IN the autumn of the year of the Hegira 767, Timur having rais'd an army, consisting of the most valiant men of the empire, in order to oppose the Emir Hussein, gave the command of the vanguard to prince Seifeddin, and directed him to march without interruption. Hussein, whose artifices had succeeded so well with regard to Ghiat Bahadur, as to bring him over to his obedience, imagin'd he could do the same by Timur; on which account he sent to him Malek Behader and Abdalla Pirau with a treaty ready drawn up, after the most enticing manner. He put Timur in mind that he had always desir'd to cultivate a good understanding with him; that they had been concern'd together in the most dangerous affairs of the empire; that their union had been the cause of their success; that they were now lifted up above their equals; and that it was time they shou'd both enjoy their grandeur: in fine, he besought him entirely to confide in this treaty, and not to suffer jealousy to take possession of his heart. Malek and Abdalla arriv'd at Isoun, where the army of Timur was encamp'd, after having pass'd the iron gate; who having first paid their respects to him, they presented him with the treaty of the Emir Hussein, and then su'd for peace. But Timur, whose fortune seem'd to be in the disposal of providence, told 'em he ought to give no more credit to the words of Hussein than to the east-wind,

wind, and he won'd not regard what his ambassadors said. However, this overture of peace was of ill consequence to Timur; for the Yesourians had so little thoughts of succeeding, that their uneasiness made them resolve to desert Timur. Chap. 17.

At this time the princes Abbas and Yakou went to Cogende with Behram Gelair. Being arriv'd, a council was held upon the affair of the Yesourians; and it was unanimously resolv'd to secure the chiefs of that people, who had enter'd into a conspiracy to change their master: but Timur dispos'd it, and told em, that in so happy a conjuncture violence and indignation shou'd have no part in his actions, and that it wou'd be an injury to his glory and reputation, because when the rest of the people shall hear of the ill treatment us'd towards these men, they wou'd no longer continue under his protection; that it was necessary that moderation shou'd be the basis of a rising monarchy, and that his throne shou'd be establish'd on the pillars of justice and goodness.

After this discourse, which gain'd the hearts of all the captains, he order'd that they shou'd behave themselves courteously towards the Yesourians; whom having permitted to return home, he went to encamp at Carschi.

Hussein, who had rais'd the best troops he was able, march'd with Chir Behram, and brought with him the princes Mobarekchah and Mehemed Beyan Selduz, who had a great friendship for Timur: but as the army of Hussein had join'd him, they were oblig'd to go with him.

Hussein by a trick sends to beg peace of Timur.

Hussein, not being content with having a great army, won'd again make use of artifice and imposture to bring over Timur. He sent to him his treasurer Kefer with an alcoran, and

Book I. a letter, wherein he told him he had taken an oath on that book to give him a full account of the truth in his letter; the contents whereof were as follow.

"The misunderstanding between us will infallibly end in the ruin of the state, and the misery of the people. I know you are a prince of a sweet temper, that you have excellent dispositions, that you love the musselmans; shew a great deal of goodness to your subjects; and by consequence ought not to approve of what is doing. For my part, I think it advisable that my army shou'd stay at Gegana, and yours at Cazana; and that we have a conference together, accompany'd by a hundred men only, in Chekitchec, where we will renew our friendship, and confirm our former union by solemn oaths; so that hereafter the cendarys shall not be able to find means of sowing dissension among us: for the nation can never enjoy rest till there is a hearty agreement between us."

When Timur had read the letter, he presently knew it was a trick of Hussein, and look'd upon his promise only as an artifice: but as all the princes thought it better to have peace than war, provided Hussein acted with sincerity, he consented to what was propos'd; and leaving the army at Cuzar, he took only three hundred men for his guard, who were the bravest he cou'd chuse, and who had always shewn themselves faithful to him, designing to leave two hundred of 'em at Dehno for fear of a surprize, and then to march with one hundred only to Chekitchec, the place of interview.

In the mean while the Emir Hussein put to death Chir Behram in Nevendac, according to the

the prediction of Timur; for the words of great Chara-
men are often the oracles of fate.

The Emir Hussein did not fail in preparing to put his artifice in execution; and without regard to his oaths, or the veneration due to the alcoran, on which he had sworn, he dispatch'd with great expedition three thousand chosen men to surprize Timur. A peasant, who had formerly been a domestick of this prince, fled from the rest of the troops, and came with all haste to give Timur advice of it, whom he found already arriv'd at Balkan. An officer nam'd Bahram, who had been taken in pottedge, was by ill luck posted at a barrier at the gate of the palace, to whom the peasant immediately address'd himself; but this silly fellow wou'd give no credit to what he said, and imagin'd this news wou'd displease the prince, because a peace was actually on the anvil: he even beat the peasant, and sent him away without mentioning to Timur what had been told him. In the mean while Hussein's horse, who ride great haste, arriv'd very soon in the [illegible] of their quarters; and Timur had already taken horse with his hundred men to go to the place of rendezvous. He was very near it, when he had advice of the treachery of Hussein, and the arrival of this troop: nevertheless he advanc'd; and when he had got into the middle of the straits of Haram, he plac'd his men in ambuscade, to render the passage the more difficult to the enemy, and to oppose 'em with advantage. The enemy arriv'd, and there were great cries on both sides; the arrows fell like hail, and the fight was bloody. Hussein's men finding themselves in a place which was narrow, and unfitting for fighting, stop'd, to give Timur an opportunity to draw off; but they pursu'd him, and all he cou'd do was to retreat fighting

Book I. following as far as to Catlich, they not being able to pursue him any farther, where the two branches of the river of Chekedalic join.

In the mean while the news of Hussein's artifice was brought to Cuzar; and the army, who imagin'd all hopes were loſt, diſpers'd themſelves. Timur, with the few men he had left, went to Cuzar, where he learnt this ſad news; at which turn of fortune he was not daunted. But having return'd thanks to God, he came to Carſchi, where he held a council with the princes, in which it was reſolv'd to ſend the ladys to Macan, and thence to the confines of the country of Senger, the people whereof had always been faithful to Timur; to their care he truſted the princeſſes, and was very well contented they ſhou'd be ſent away, that he might the better carry on the war. The princes alſo reſolv'd that they ſhou'd rendezvous with their troops at Iſaac's well, in the neighbourhood of Boutdalic. Every one departed at the ſame time for his own country, where he levy'd troops, and made all neceſſary preparations, while the ladys went to Macan.

The next day the army of Huſſein arriv'd at Carſchi, and the Emirs Mouſſa and Hindouchah made themſelves maſters of the fortreſs which Timur had built there. Timur came to Iſaac's well, where he waited for his friends and officers, who arriv'd there one after another; and when they were all got together, they departed for Macan, croſs'd the Gihon, and enter'd the deſart. Timur ſent to all the lords of Herat, and to Mehemed Youn Garbani, to know the ſtate of their affairs. He encamp'd near the well of Chourab till the return of theſe meſſengers, which was two months after their ſetting out; he alſo ſtop'd all the caravans which came from Coraſſa-

na

na to Transoxiana. When all the envoys were return'd, by his orders it was rumour'd that the people of Herat had sent for him, and that these envoys were [illegible] their country: upon which he gave leave to the caravans to depart. He then took the road to Herat in their presence with all his men. The merchants arriv'd at Carschi, and fail'd not to give out that they had seen Timur depart for Herat; which news the Emir Moussa believ'd, it being told by persons disinterested, and who had seen him depart: for which reason he went out of the fortress of Carschi; and after having gone together his troops, he [illegible] with seven thousand horse to encamp at Semrac, with design to go to Uzlamir. Malek Behader, who commanded the five thousand horse Hussein had sent, went to Cuzar, and stop'd at the hill of Carcachun, and at Gonbedluli.

Chap. 16.

CHAP. XVI.

Several exploits of Timur, and intrigues of the princes. The march of Timur to Carschi.

WHEN Timur knew that the caravans were at some distance, he return'd immediately to the place he came from, where he staid as long as was needful for the caravans to get to Carschi; and then he resolv'd to revenge himself on his enemies, tho he had not above two hundred men. With this small number he took the road to Carschi; in the neighbourhood of which city were 12000 horse, with many princes and lords, whom the desire of fighting had brought thither: which renders the action of Timur the more remarkable, who

[illegible] who expos'd himself to so great a danger with an [illegible] of intrepidity. These are events which [illegible] can no ways comprehend, and which are only known to the divine being.

Rash action of Timur, which prov'd successful.

Timur march'd all night; and when he was come to the bank of the Gihon, he first made his own horse go into the water, and then was follow'd by many more, who swam over. They left the village Kuffar, that no one might give notice of their arrival; and there prepar'd banks, which they sent to the other side of the river, that the rest of the troops might cross over.

Princes who accompany'd Timur.

The prince Siorgatmich Aglen, the prince Dzeud, chief of the hord of Bouglat, and husband of Coelug Turcan Aga, eldest daughter of Timur; the Emir Tahou Bahadur, the Emir Mouaid Erlat, who espous'd another daughter of Timur; the Emir Sar Bouga Gulair; [illegible]; the Emir Seifeddin Nekur; the valiant [illegible] Capchac; Acbouga Behader of the country of the Naimans; and Mamutchair of Bocara; were of the number of those men who accompany'd Timur.

All those lords departed together, and arriv'd at Bourdalic; at which place were the ambassadors of the Emir Mousa, whom they seiz'd: they enter'd into Bourdalic, where they stay'd all the next evening, when they continu'd their march, and in the night went down to old Fezed. The next day they block'd up the passages, and lay in ambuscade: they stop'd all those who came to draw water, but soon after let 'em go. In the night they took horse for Chirkuir. The Emir Tahou told 'em he thought it advisable to fall upon the Emir Mousa during the night; believing that if they cou'd seize his person, they might make themselves masters of the rest, and do whatever they plea'd. But Timur

man answer'd him, "We are but a small num- Chapter.
"ber; and if unhappily any accident befal us,
"we shall be reduc'd to great extremitys: it is
"better therefore to do nothing inconsiderately.
"Let every one stay here, whilst I alone go to
"Carschi, where I will use such precautions
"that I may not be surpriz'd. I shall learn this
"town, where one may best enter the city, and
"consider what machines will be necessary to
"make our selves masters of a town of this
"importance." Thus Timur would do every
thing himself, without depending on the con-
duct of his generals. He immediately, with
Moubachen and Abdalla, took horse for Carschi,
and came down to the bank of the ditch sur-
rounding the citadel. As this ditch had much
water, he gave the horses to Moubachen to take
care of, and enter'd up to the knees in the aque-
duct Ternavi, which passes over the ditch, and
conveys water into the citadel. He cross'd this
current with Abdalla, who follow'd him every
where; and when they were arriv'd at the gate
which looks towards Tarmi, Timur march'd at
the head of them to the wall, where they went
round the wall, with great precaution, for fear
of being discover'd, and in order to find out
a part lower than the rest. Timur perceiv'd a
place, which he shew'd Abdalla, and which he
thought proper to fix the ladder against. After
this discovery Timur return'd by the same aque-
duct, took horse, and rode with all speed to his
troops, with whom he march'd immediately for
the taking of Carschi. He left some three men
to guard the horses, and sent a hundred to the
walls with their ladders, which they had brought
from Bamiaan, who also pass'd by the aque-
duct we mention'd, being conducted by Abdalla;
whilst Timur remain'd with a hundred soldiers

[illegible] make great approach the time when it shou'd be [illegible] in the morning, that he might enter the city.

Timur surprizes Carschi.

These brave men who, according to Timur's order, went to the foot of the walls, fix'd their ladders at the place agreed on; and scaling the walls, ran sword in hand to the gate, where finding the guards drunk and asleep in their mistresses arms, they put 'em all to the sword. The Dervise Baki broke the lock of the gate with his battel-ax, and made way for Timur and his company to enter; who order'd the trumpets to sound, and the soldiers at the same time to run to the castle, which they did with great crys. This struck terror into every one; and the inhabitants, [illegible] wak'd by the noise of the trumpets, thought there was an earthquake, or that the day of judgment was come. Timur, by his good conduct, made himself master of the city, while the troops seiz'd on the castle, where they took the son of the Emir Moussa prisoner with all his domesticks, whom they bound, and cast into prisons and pits. Mehemed Bei, son of the Emir Moussa, who afterwards was a confederate with Timur, being then very young, directions were given for concealing him, in order to his escape; that when he shou'd get to his father, his army might be intimidated, and disperse. He went that same night to his father; but the army did not disperse, as was expected, because the Emir Moussa sent immediately to Malek Behader, to give him notice of the city's being surpriz'd. These two princes join'd their troops, and about noon besieg'd the city with 12000 horse. The Emir Moussa, who was of the house of Faidgut, posted himself before the gate of the city, and Malek Behader encamp'd with the troops of

the Coronas over-against the gate which looks towards Cuzar. Timur himself resolv'd to guard the gate of the city, and had for his lieutenant the Emir Mousla Bouga. He order'd the Emirs David and Muaid to defend the gate of Cuzar, and assign'd to the Emirs Siorgatmich, Aglen, Abbas, Hussein Behader, Acbouga, and others, the care of the towers and walls. Chap. 16.

The Emir Muaid Erlat made a sally, in which he was the thirtieth man, and fell furiously upon the besiegers sword in hand. In this rencounter he fought with so great valor, that, in a manner, he eclipsed the great exploits of Rostem and Esfendiar[1]: he took forty horses from the enemy, after having killed the riders, and brought 'em into the city, fighting all his way back.

In the mean while Durke Behader, who left the enemy, following the example of fortune, who had turn'd her back upon 'em, came into the city, and submitted to Timur.

This prince had resolv'd the same day to sally out, and to make his enemys feel the strength of his arms; but Seifeddin, who was [illegible] by [illegible], represented to him that it was not advisable to undertake any thing that day, because the hour of nine the next morning would be more fortunate; his advice was taken, and the sally was put off till next morning. On the besiegers side Tizektchi Behader approach'd the gate with two hundred men, who carried their lances and bucklers in token of defiance; for which reason they kept watch all night in that post. But in the morning Eltchi Bouga and Akitmur, [illegible] the bridge, sally'd out with fifty men, [illegible] in hand fell upon the besiegers, of [illegible] made a terrible slaughter

[1] Two famous heroes in the Persian romances, to whom are attributed actions altogether incredible.

Book I. Timur order'd Alichah and Dervichec Bergougi, with twenty horse, to relieve these foot, who then oppos'd as many horse. They went accordingly, and gave great proofs of their valor and good fortune.

On the enemys side Tagi Bouga came to the attack with sword in hand; but Akitmur stop'd his passage, and unhors'd him.

Among the cavalry of the Emir Moussa there was a young Uzbec, exceedingly courageous, or rather rash, who already imagin'd himself a considerable person: he prepar'd for the battel, took in his hand a great war-club, and advanc'd to signalize himself by some eminent action. Cazan Bouga boldly oppos'd him, and fell so dexterously upon the young man, that he was not able to defend himself, which Bouga cut him cross the body with his sword.

The Emir Sar Bouga and Eltchi Behader fought briskly near the gate: they continually let fly a shower of arrows on the enemys, and so terribly gall'd 'em, that victory declar'd herself for the besieg'd. Fear got possession of the enemys hearts, who, to escape the more expeditiously, flung away their large bucklers, call'd Toura; and covering their heads with their little shields, retir'd into the retrenchments they had made: but our men pursu'd 'em, and drove 'em beyond their standards, that they coud not save themselves; and so they fled as well as they were able into the suburbs.

A body of a hundred men of the enemy, commanded by Toukel, assaulted the city on the other side; and their foot pay'd their arrows with so much dexterity, that they constrain'd our soldiers to retire: but Timur sally'd out with fifteen horse only, and inspir'd fresh courage into his men. Eltchi Bouga and Behram return'd

return'd to attack Toukel, who was fix'd behind a skirt of the wall, where he fought: Eltehi Bouga got upon the wall, and struck at him with his sword; but he avoided the blow, and fled. Chap. 16.

It happen'd about this time that one of our soldiers of the regiment of Corassana with his sword wounded Schah Behram, of which he died some time after. The good fortune of Timur, join'd with the fear of the enemys, caus'd the Emir Moussa, who was the principal author of this war, entirely to forfeit his reputation by flying with the seven thousand horse he commanded, tho he was reinforced only by an handful of men, but tho indeed very the most valiant in all Asia. The Eltehi's were routed and dispers'd; so that there remain'd only Malek Behader, who stood his ground before the gate of Cuar with five thousand men of the militia of the Coronas. Wherefore Timur march'd against him; but Malek no sooner perceiv'd him than being seiz'd with fear, he cast away his buckler, and fled into the camp at Gonbedluli. Timur pursu'd him, and Malek observing at a distance the cavalry of his enemies to be all his courage, and fled again from that place, while his troops dispers'd. One can scarcely believe a man capable of such intrepidity as to attack twelve thousand horse, inur'd to war, and excited by a desire of revenge, with only two hundred forty three soldiers: it is true indeed, the latter sought only to attain glory. Thus Timur, thro the assistance of heaven, took a city and a fortress in two days and two nights only, made slaves of part of his enemys, pillag'd their goods, and entirely defeated 'em.

Death of Schah Behram.

The soldiers of Timur enrich'd themselves with the spoils of the enemys, whom they pursu'd to a great distance. Timur order'd the prin-

ed Yahou and Seifeddin to follow 'em as far as the defile in the mountain of Chikidgek, and to slay all the fugitives they shou'd overtake. Then this prince, concern'd at seeing his orders so remisly executed, pursu'd 'em himself, the Emir Daoud marching before him. A hundred of the enemys horse, who belong'd to the rear of the army, perceiving 'em, divided themselves into two bodys. The left fell upon Elchi Bougé, and made him turn his back, whilst the right attack'd Timur, who not only sustain'd the first onset, but even rush'd on 'em with so much vigor, that they gave way and fled: the body on the left, which had fallen upon Bougé, seeing the defeat of the other, fled also; and there [illegible] which were join'd to the other spoils the victorious soldiers had taken from the enemys.

Timur then perceiv'd Amen Malek Agha, sister of Bayazid Gelain, and wife of the Emir Moufa, who fled with Malek Belinder: he pursu'd her, and call'd to Malek to abandon her, and told him he won'd save his life, tho he deserv'd to lose it. Malek laid hold on the promise of the prince, abandon'd the lady, and fled before: nevertheless the ladys fled full speed; and Timur, who alone pursu'd 'em, had overtaken 'em, if a valet nam'd Ashiftar, who had a bow and arrows in his hand, had not hinder'd him, feigning as if he would let fly at him as soon as he shou'd see him advance. This man was an ill archer; but Timur, who had neither buckler nor arrows, took him for a good one, and was not willing to be blam'd for having expos'd his life for a woman; so he took care of himself, while his horse, thro a caprice, stopt short, which accident gave time to Doletchah Bacchi to join him, who holding his buckler before his head,

head, pursu'd the ladys, and the valet was oblig'd to let fly at him: but he shew'd his unskilfulness, ceas'd defending himself, and fled as fast as the ladys; so that Dolechan was not able to come up with 'em. Chap. 16.

Arzou Mulc had then gone with child nine months, and was soon after deliver'd of a princess, who was nam'd Toman Aga. Without doubt the good fortune of this child was the only cause that her enemys cou'd not overtake her: the person design'd for happiness is happy even from its mother's womb. Toman Aga had afterwards the honor to enter the marriage-bed of Timur.

The prince return'd from Acoubi, which is near Kezilcac, which occasion'd joy thro the whole camp; but the Emirs Yakou and Seifeddin were asham'd, and repented for having shewn so much slackness in obeying Timur's orders: his displeasure encourag'd 'em; they immediately departed to make reparation for their fault, and pursu'd their enemys: they march'd along the river Chakdalice, and came to the narrowest passage of the mountain Chakidgek, where they met the troops of Gelair, and others who had fled; they brought 'em back, and by this means made amends for the fault they had committed.

Timur staid all the winter at Carschi, contented and glorying in his victorys; and gave the people of this country marks of his clemency and liberality, in relieving poor family, whose ruin the war had caus'd. His chief care was that Carschi should flourish in this great city: and he ordered that the grounds round about shon'd be cultivated, that there might be plenty.

Book I. He gave the government of Bocara to Mamutcha, and commanded him to reduce entirely to obedience the inhabitants of that city, to render the country flourishing, and to remit yearly the tribute and revenues to his treasury.

He sent orders to Nikepeicha, who was wandering about Corassam, to come to him; and he gave him the government of Amouye and its dependences, of which he had formerly been the natural prince. Ali-Yesouri, who was without any employment at the head of the Yesourians, went to Bocara to find Mamutcha his son-in-law, and with his Yesourians submitted to Timur, whom they had formerly refus'd to obey, tho he had several times summon'd 'em so to do. The Emir Muaid sent Chirin-Bei Aga his wife to Macan, and the secretary Tokmegi's wife accompany'd her; but they miss'd their way, which caus'd the loss of many horses and beasts of carriage; but a guide was sent 'em, who conducted 'em to Macan, where Timur kept a seraglio.

CHAP. XVII.

Mir Hussein brings an army into the field to oppose Timur.

WHEN the Emir Moussa had sav'd himself from the fury of our soldiers, he fled with the ruins of his troops to the Emir Hussein, who, on the recital of what had pass'd, was very much astonish'd. But the fear and inquietude which seiz'd him did not hinder his recruiting his army, and parting immediately

diately from Saliserai, with design to give Timur battel. He sent before him the Emirs Oladgia Itou Aperdi, Gehaucha son of Taisou, and Poulad Bouga, with ten thousand men of the Coronas, under the conduct of the Emir Moussa. They pass'd the iron gate, and encamp'd in the narrowest place of the mountain of Chekidgec, where they prepar'd for battel. Chap. 17.

Timur, on advice of these motions, departed with resolution to attack 'em at night. He took the road to Ilgouz Bagh, a mountain situate in the plain of Yerragh; and that he might not be perceiv'd by the enemys, he went thro the deepest snow. He sent some men by the road which leads to the top of the mountain to get intelligence. They there seiz'd on twenty of the enemys, who inform'd 'em of the state of their army; and told 'em they had pass'd, during the night, by the narrowest part of the mountain Chekidgek, and were encamp'd at Chekedalic. Timur, for the greater security, sent spys there, who confirm'd this advice, and assur'd him that the Emirs Moussa, Oladgia Itou, and others, had ten thousand horse, and that they were rang'd by squadrons on the mountain Arcaya, where they were encamp'd. Timur had then but two hundred men, whom he put in order, and march'd against the enemys, alway securing the advantage of the ground.

When the two armys were in view, they raiſ'd hideous cries; but Timur being assur'd of the great inequality of their forces, thought it proper to delay the time, that he might not expose himself to an apparent defeat, which would have tarnish'd the glory of the famous victory he had already gain'd.

He thought himself the rather necessitated to do thus, in that it was the beginning of his

Book I. rise; and that in losing this battel, he should lose all hopes.

The enemy well knew our army was not numerous enough to attack them during the night; but Timur, who was better satisfy'd of it, prefer'd his retreat to so rash an enterprize; and returning by the way of Courdenc, without being pursu'd by the enemy, he got to Carschi, and then to Bocara, whence Ali Yesouri and Mamutcha came to meet him, and pay him their respects: and afterwards he made his entry into the city.

The Emir Yakou had formerly been ill used by Mamutcha; this governor had caus'd him to be ty'd to a horse's tail, beaten with a stick both before and behind, and made to run in that condition: but as he was always jealous of him, and hated him, he counsell'd Timur to go into Corassana on pretence that his affairs requir'd it; nevertheless Timur would not consent to it, whatsoever instances he made him. The Emir went thither without taking leave of him, accompany'd with Seifeddin and Abbas Behader, and they arriv'd at Macan. Some days after, the news was brought to Bocara, that Moussa and Oladgia Itou, the scouts of the Emir Hussein, were approaching with a great army. Timur told Ali Yesouri and Mamutcha, that there needed only resolution and valor to preserve the country, and that they shou'd lead the troops out of the city, and attack the enemy by night. But these captains, who had not courage enough to undertake so rash an action, refus'd to do it, and made appear to Timur, that it was better to defend the place, and stand firm against the attacks of the enemy, than to expose themselves to the loss of a battel.

As

As Timur perceiv'd their cowardice by their discourses, he doubted their resolution to defend the place; and as his affairs requir'd his presence in Corassana, he went thither. When he was arriv'd at the Gihon, he met ten barks going down; he order'd 'em to be stopp'd, and they serv'd him and his men to crossthe river: thence entring into the desart, he march'd to Merou, and went to join his illustrious family at Macan, a town of Corassana. Chap. 18.

CHAP. XVIII.

The siege and taking of Bocara by the army of Hussein. Timur defeats the army of the Coronas.

THE Emir Hussein besieg'd Bocara, which was at first vigorously defended by Ali and Mamutcha; who, after having rang'd the troops that were in the suburbs to enter the city, gave marks of their valor in a sally from the gate of Kelabad, where they briskly repuls'd the besiegers, who, that they might surprize 'em, pretended to fly as far as the tomb of the Santon Seifeddin Bacrezi. These men not being skill'd in the art of war, and imagining that they fled in earnest, purs'd 'em with their swords, axes, and other arms; but as they advanc'd, Hussein rally'd his troops, who drove them back as far as the gates of the city, killing a great number, whilst the rest with difficulty escap'd, and flinging away their bows and arrows, hid themselves in holes and granaries. Ali and Mamutcha wou'd have rally'd

Book I. some soldiers to defend the city; but they cou'd not do it. Wherefore being oblig'd to fly during the night, they took the road to Macan, very much troubled at their not being able to obey Timur's orders, which wou'd have been much more to their credit.

The Emir Hussein sent men in pursuit of 'em, as far as the Gihon, who slew almost all of 'em, and took possession of their baggage. With great difficulty Ali and Mamutcha safely pass'd the Gihon with some of their servants: they went thro the desart to Meron, and at length had the honor to see Timur at Macan, of whom they begg'd pardon for their fault. Timur gave them horses and furniture, and took 'em again into his service.

Thus the Emir Hussein made himself master of Bocara, where he staid some time; then leaving the Emir Calil with some other Emirs and good troops to guard the city, he return'd to Saliferai.

Timur passes the Gihon, and seizes Nikepeicha.

In the mean while, Timur learnt that Nikepeicha, to whom he had given the government of Amouye with its dependences, had behav'd himself as an enemy, and not only ungratefully seiz'd all the soldiers who wou'd have listed themselves in his service, but had even stopp'd his domesticks. This news put Timur in a passion; wherefore he departed that night by the road of Tourtghul with six hundred men, and arriv'd at the Gihon, when the river was overflown and extremely rapid. He himself look'd out for a passage, and at length chose that which is at the foot of the mountain of Bourdalie, and order'd the Emirs to go down lower on the banks of the river with four hundred horse. This prince, follow'd by twenty men, enter'd into the river at nine a-clock in the

the morning, and swam till half an hour past twelve before they got to the other bank; they then march'd all night, and next morning found themselves at the town of Amoaye, where Nikepeicha was. This governor being valiant, a good horseman, and dexterous at the bow, put himself in a posture of defence: but his ingratitude was fatal to him, for on his shooting his first arrow, the string of his bow broke, and the arrow stuck in the buckler of Cutai Behader, who, with Durke, fell immediately on him, and bound his hands behind his back: wherefore one may well say, that his treason had spun the cord with which he was bound. Timur order'd barks to be brought from the other side the river, in which the princes cross'd with the four hundred men.

About the same time Timur had advice that the army of the Coronas was encamp'd in the neighbourhood of Bocara: whereupon this prince being resolv'd to attack them, departed thence, march'd all night, and met 'em in a place call'd Birmat: the two armies fought with extreme vigor: till at last the advantage fell on our side; for the Emir Calil general of the Coronas was at length vanquish'd.

After this expedition the victorious Timur pass'd the Gihon, and encamp'd a whole month in a place nam'd the hill of Caraoul, where are wells and cisterns; from thence he went to Mecan, where, soon after his arrival, he punish'd Nikepeicha for his ingratitude.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIX.

Timur sends an ambassador to Malek Hussein at Herat.

TIMUR, at his arrival at Maran, sent the Emir Yakou in quality of ambassador to Malek Hussein prince of Herat, who gave him a handsom reception, and spar'd nothing to convince him of the union he desir'd with his master, telling him he wou'd go express to Seracs, and if Timur won'd give himself the trouble to come to that place, they wou'd tie into a strict alliance, which shou'd be confirm'd by solemn oaths. The Emir Yakou gave Timur an account of this negotiation; but our prince having been formerly in this country with Hadgi Berlas his uncle, he remember'd all the bad actions the race of Malek was accus'd of.

When the Emir Norouz son of Argoun Aga had all the power in the country of Corassana in the reign of Cazan Can, Malek Facteddin, uncle to Malek Hussein, had been shut up by his father Chamseddin Kert in the citadel of Kustar in the country of Gour. Norouz having obtain'd his freedom of his father, gave him in marriage the daughter of his own brother the Emir Hadgi, with the government of Herat; which was the cause of his rise. But when Cazan Can's inclination towards the Emir Norouz, was chang'd thro the calumny of some slanderers, and the Can had put to death his brothers and relations in Media, and sent the Emirs Cotluccha and Mankegut to take Norouz himself, this prince confi-

ding

ding in the obligations Facreddin ow'd him, and the alliance they had contracted, fled to Herat for succour, where he said the more willingly, in that Facreddin gave him a handsom reception, and renew'd his protestations of friendship, which he confirm'd by an oath. Nevertheless, the Emir Cotluccha was no sooner arriv'd at the gates of Herat, than the traitor Facreddin committed the most vile action in delivering up his benefactor the Emir Norouz into the hands of his enemies, who presently put him to death. Cayaseddin, brother of Facreddin, and father of Malek Hussein, behav'd himself in the same manner in the reign of the Sultan Abousaid towards prince Chouban Selduz his benefactor, unjustly putting him and his son Chelaocan to death, who fled from Sultan Abousaid to him for refuge, because he had promis'd and sworn to protect them. Tho the Emir Chouban had always blam'd the conduct of the Emir Norouz, in flying for refuge to such traitors, saying, he was wrong to put himself into their power, to the liberty which might cost him dear by slight; yet he did the same, and the like misfortune happen'd to him. As the fact is related at length in my *book of preliminaries*, I have but slightly mention'd it here, to shew that Timur's foresight did not permit him to rely on the prince's promises, tho on the other hand his generous temper pointed out to him that it would be unhandsom, if in requital for the good entertainment Malek Hussein gave his ambassador, he should behave himself with incivility and scorn, wherefore he sent to him his own son prince Sahinghair, who was the eldest and dearest of his children, accompany'd by Mobarekcha Sendgeri. And because we are oblig'd

to

Book I. to return greater civility than we have receiv'd. Timur order'd him to tell him in answer to his obliging expressions, that for a proof that he confided entirely in him, he had sent his son, and left in his kingdom his family, and all that belong'd to him, because he design'd to return to his native country: he added, that he did not doubt but Malek Hussein wou'd follow the generous sentiments which kings ought to have, in being faithful in what is entrusted to them, and that he wou'd be well pleas'd with what he did; because from great men ought to proceed only great actions.

CHAP. XX.

Timur defeats the army of the Emir Hussein in Transoxiana.

AS Providence had design'd the crown for Timur, this prince was not permitted to taste the pleasures of Corassana, whilst he cou'd acquire glory; he was excited therefore to depart out of that country, to seek laurels elsewhere, tho the security he was in, and the good order of his affairs were powerful motives for him to stay there.

At this time almost all Transoxiana was in subjection to his enemys, who had every where troops in garison; yet he departed with six hundred men only for that country, cross'd the Gihon, and having march'd all night, arrived next morning at Neyestan, that is to say, the field of reeds, where he staid all that day in a garden to refresh his horses, and at length passed

pass'd by Jouibari; he march'd all night, and arriv'd at Carschi on that side of it which looks towards Cuzar, and he invested it with his troops. Chap. 20.

He met many of the kinsmen of the Emir Moussa, whom he seiz'd and bound; the relations of Caiser Anandgic, Coudeci and Ourdichah fled with their men; Dourke and Ali Behadder fought some merchants whom they took to be enemys, and after having us'd them ill, took from them some bales of brocade, which they brought to Timur; who order'd all to be restor'd to the merchants, without reserving the least part.

There were at this time five hundred men of the Coronas at Couzimondac, whom the Emir Soliman Yesouri join'd, as also Barat Coja and Hendoucha, with their troops: Anandgic and Coudec pass'd by Cuzar, with a design also to join 'em.

Timur, ignorant of what had happen'd, departed from Carschi at sun-set, and arriv'd at midnight at Neugat, where he learnt news of the Coronas, and of the troops which had join'd them; this oblig'd him to be upon his guard, so that he went out of Neugat the sooner, and staid all night in the plain of that town.

The next day he decamp'd, and in their march Emir Yakou fell from his horse, and was so dangerously wounded that his health was very much impair'd: wherefore Timur sent him to Balch, accompany'd by thirty men, and then march'd vigorously against the Coronas. All the brave men thought it best to give 'em battel, except Ali Yesouri, whose relations told Timur of it, who compell'd him to take horse. Ali Behader and Acbouga were sent before with sixty troopers for the forlorn-hope; and on the enemys

always his Bendoucha was at the head of three hundred horse. These scouts soon came to blows; there ensu'd a bloody fight, in which the bravest warriors lost their lives. Tho Timur's soldiers were fewer than their enemies, yet they defeated 'em, and beat 'em back as far as the body of their army. After this expedition Timur gave time to the cavalry to rest, and did not take horse himself till noon; then he divided the soldiers into seven bodys; and because the enemys were by far more numerous than they, he made the following speech to encourage his men: "This day, brave soldiers, is a day of dancing for warriors; the dancing-room of the heroes is the field of battel; the cups of war are the lances, sung and dance'd to; and the wine which it drank is the blood of the enemy."

Military discourse, according to the genius of the Tartars.

Timur left the Emirs Daoud, Sa[illegible] Hussein Berlas, Seifeddin, Abbas, Acbouga, Hindou, Kirchi Bouga, Doukie, and Ali Behader, each in his own post; advanc'd himself to view the enemys, and at their approach divided his troops into two wings, commanding in person the main body.

When they were in view, the Cheik Bedreddin and his son fled, Ali Yesouri and the two horsemen who accompany'd him, did the same; but this did not hinder Timur's rushing upon the enemys like a lion. The battel did not last above an hour, victory declaring for Timur, who intirely routed this vast multitude. Our victorious soldiers pursu'd 'em, and drove 'em as far as Cadhedalie; taking their principal officers prisoners, with much cattle and baggage, and enriching themselves with the booty. Among the prisoners, were Olad-gia Itou, Taycani and Poulad, who had once been

been of the number of Timur's best friends; wherefore our soldiers put them to the sword, and laid their heads at the feet of the great Timur, who cou'd not see these honourable men lie dead without grief; he order'd that their bodys shou'd be carry'd to the city of Kech, that the Imams might pray for 'em, and funeral obsequys might be perform'd in a sumptuous manner, tho they had us'd hostilitys against him. Chap. 20.

After this defeat he would not give the enemys time to recover their loss, nor to levy fresh troops; but resolv'd to purshe 'em as far as the fortress of Ghichuman, and so put his army in order, as which directly against the Emir Hussein; but the princes refus'd to follow him, representing to him, that their opinion was, that he ought to abandon this enterprize, and return to Samarcand; to which he consented.

Timur having got together the troops of Kech and the neighbouring places, departed for Samarcand, leaving Termagiuc Aigouri and Taghichak at Kech, to take care of his revenues, quietness and easing the people. At his arrival in the neighbourhood of Samarcand, Ouchcara Behader, governor of that city, sally'd out with the troops of the Emir Moussa, and stopp'd at the bank of the rivulet Rahmet. Timur divided his soldiers into two bodys, and at the first onset routed his enemys. Akitmur Behader pursu'd Ouchcara, and striking at him with his sword, broke his quiver and arrows. But Ouchcara turning himself upon his saddle, answer'd him with another blow of his sword, with which he smote the head of Akitmur's horse, which fell under him: so that Ouchcara fled, and enter'd into the city. Timur encamp'd in a place call'd Retin, while Ouchcara got together fifteen hundred men, whom Timur returns to Samarcand.

Book I. whom he equipp'd to advantage, and made a second sally. The soldiers of Timur march'd against 'em like roaring lions, and so affrighted these new troops, that they fled without fighting; and re-entring the city, block'd up the streets to hinder the cavalry from passing. Their fears were so great, that they got in their horses all saddled with the greatest expedition, their saddles being much bruis'd, so that they were but badly equipp'd; the soldiers likewise being reduc'd to so great misery, that they hid themselves in the filthiest places.

Timur staid some days in the delicious country of Sogd, where he chose for his pleasure-houses Ferinkunt and Sagruge, two very agreeable villages.

In the mean time he had advice that Oladgia Itou and Poulad Bouga were advancing with a great body of the Coronas. Taghiskan also arriv'd, and confirm'd this news, adding that a troop of soldiers had fallen upon Termagiuc unawares, and put him to death.

Timur departed from Sogd, to encamp with his army on the bank of the rivulet Yam; to which place Argounschah, native of Bourdalic, whom Timur had sent to gain intelligence, brought with him a soldier, who told Timur that Oladgia Itou and Poulad Bouga were encamp'd on the rivulet Toum, and that the Emir Hussein was arriv'd at Carschi with a great army. On this Timur imagin'd it best to wait a more favorable opportunity to revenge himself on his enemys.

He disbanded the army he had rais'd at Kech and the neighbouring places; and with the six hundred men who were with him before his passing the Gihon, march'd towards the lowermost part or bason of the river of Samarcand.

The Emir Hussein had already given orders to the Emir Moussa and Ouchcara Behader, to oppose Timur in his passage; for which reason they were marching to encamp with their troops at Kukelder Archighi, to give him battel. Chap. 10.

Timur arriv'd there, and attacking them first, they fled, and sav'd themselves with great difficulty in the city of Samarcand.

Timur came to Sagruge in the night, and having given time to his cavalry to rest themselves, he departed in the morning, and arriv'd in the evening at Caradgic: he set out next morning, and came down to a place call'd the camel's neck; he went thence in the evening, and marching all night, arriv'd at Kukenc; he cross'd the Sihon at Cogende, where he staid one night. And as Kei Cosru and Behram Gelair, who sided with the Can of Gete, had brought thence seven thousand Getes commanded by Coutchoun Timur and Chiraoul, and had stopp'd at Tachkunt, Timur went towards that part of the country, the Can having order'd that the army and the people of the country shou'd rendezvous under Behram Gelair, who by virtue of that order ought to be Emir or governor of that city. But Timur did not find in Behram that friendship he expected: for tho Behram had always pretended a great affection to him, after having sworn to join with him against the Emir Hussein, and by the assistance he had receiv'd from Timur's troops was establish'd in his own inheritance, and had got the advantage over his enemys; yet when this prince requested him to serve him in the condition he was in, he had no regard to his promises and treatys, but forgot all the obligations he ow'd him, and refus'd to render

him the service he was able, tho he might have done it with ease, since he had the disposal of all the country, as collector of the revenues of the imperial treasury.

Timur boldly reproach'd him for his ingratitude: telling him that the union he had contracted with him was the first cause of his rupture with the Can and the Emir Hussein; that this union had been prefery'd inviolably on his side; that he had deliver'd him out of misery, and help'd him to recover the command of his Toman, which he cou'd never have done without his assistance; that after he had been beaten by his enemys, he had been the cause of his gaining the victory over 'em; and that when he saw him have troops sufficient to assist him, he came to him: but because after all these kindnesses he had treated him with so much baseness, he did not doubt that he shou'd one day see him at his gate in the same miserable state from whence he had before deliver'd him. All this in the end fell out exactly.

The Emir Kei Cosru did not treat Timur in the same manner; for after having testify'd to him the joy he felt at his arrival, he conducted him into his palace, where he treated him magnificently, and gave him all possible marks of his good-will, promising to join with him against every one else.

The Emir Kei Cosru had the honor to be son-in-law to Togluc Timur Can king of Gete; and the prince Touman Cotluc afterwards gave him in marriage the daughter of his cousin Bisun Timur Can, son of Abuken; and he had by this princess a daughter nam'd Rakie Can. Timur demanded her in marriage for his son the Mir-

za Gehanghir; and they pass'd a whole month in pleasures and diversions. Chap. 21.

CHAP. XXI.

The Emir Hussein sends an army against Timur, which is defeated.

THE Emir Hussein went into the city of Sebz at the head of a great army of the Coronas, and encamp'd at Salat Boulac. He sent before to attack Timur the most considerable Princes of his army, to wit, the Emir Moussa, the Cheik Mehemed son of Beyan Selduz, Oladgia Itou Aperdi, and others, with twenty thousand men; who march'd by Samarcand to the river of Balangour. *But the Emir Moussa and the other leaders of these troops, who had several times felt the effects of Timur's valor, were seiz'd with fear; which oblig'd 'em to detach from their army three great squadrons whom they sent before, with orders that every one shou'd keep a particular way to wait Timur's passage. Malek Behader was posted in the road to Suzangheran with three thousand men; Gehanchah in Rebat-Mulc with fifteen hundred troopers; and Kherman with a thousand men at Dizac to guard the passage of Biti Cadac.

Timur, who was not disturb'd at the great number of the enemys, being accompany'd with Kei Cosru, took with him two thousand Getes to oppose 'em. He went before with fifteen hundred men from a place call'd Cavas; he cross'd the Sihon at Cogende, and in the night attack'd Gehanchah, whose troops he dispers'd:

Book I. dispers'd: the next day he went to Dizac, where he attack'd Kherman and beat him; and permitted his soldiers to pillage his baggage. He staid at Dizac to give his cavalry time to rest themselves, and left there three hundred Getes to guard the spoils of the enemy. He then departed with two hundred horse only, to attack Malek Behader: he sent before him thirty of his bravest and most experienc'd soldiers; four scouts went also to the right and left to make discoverys, and he follow'd 'em himself with a hundred and sixty six men.

When the enemys saw these thirty men so well equipt advancing towards 'em with great boldness, they were surpriz'd, and thought it was the vanguard of the Moguls army, that is to say, of the Getes, and that the main body was behind. This thought, join'd with the secret fear they had of Timur, caus'd the [illegible] of Malek to fly. Our men pursu'd 'em, and kill'd a great number: these cowards, who were fill'd with the fear which Timur had caus'd in them, approaching the Emirs Moussa and Oladgia Itou, also struck terror into them; and tho they had twenty thousand men complete, they decamp'd the same night, and fled in so great disorder, that no one staid for his comrade, because every one being under apprehension of death, fled full speed to rejoin Hussein.

The prince Kei Cosru sent to inform Timur that the army of the Getes had plunder'd the Mussulmans; that after having made many slaves, they had return'd by the way of Dizac; and that he expected Timur with a hundred men in Rebat-Mulc. This news griev'd Timur, who presently went to Kei Cosru, to acquaint him, that

that it was not right to leave the Mussulmans in the hands of the infidels.[2] Chap. 21.

Upon this they held a council, wherein it was resolv'd that sixty chosen men shou'd be sent in search of the Getes in the mountain, to molest 'em, and perhaps put 'em to flight; in which case it wou'd not be difficult to deliver the slaves from the hands of the barbarians. In short, these sixty men had no sooner rais'd a dust on the mountain, than the Getes were afraid and fled, abandoning the slaves and booty, of which our soldiers easily made themselves masters.

After this expedition they return'd, and Timur crossed the Sihon, and went down to Cograc.

When the Emirs and soldiers of Hussein, asham'd, poor, and miserable, were come to him, he fell into a great passion, and after a sharp reproof, told 'em they too well deserv'd the misfortune which had befallen 'em. He departed with the Can very wroth; and when he was at the white mountain[3], he chose ten thousand of his best soldiers, encourag'd 'em by his discourses, and sent them away as scouts, with order to cross the Sihon at Cogende, and to march with all expedition to give the enemy battel.

About the same time that Timur receiv'd the news of the march of Hussein, there fell a terrible shower of hail throughout the country; and this happen'd during the night, and the darkness was extraordinary, yet he mounted his horse immediately, and the Emir Kei Cosru assisted him with his forces. They departed to-

[2] The Getes were idolaters. [3] Ac Kutel, or Altogether

Book I. gether at the head of fifteen hundred men, and at midnight arriv'd at the passage of Barin: they seiz'd it, and order'd the trumpets to be sounded, the noise of which, join'd to the fear the enemys were in, caus'd this army, so formidable and numerous in comparison to that of Timur, to be seiz'd with a panick. It cross'd the river, and march'd all night to find Hussein; the soldiers appear'd before their general with shame, and the general was afflicted at his bad fortune. During these transactions, Behram Gelair, without following the advice of Timur or Kei Cosru, departed from Tachkunt with the army of Gete, to return home, and took the road to Seiram. As the furniture belonging to Timur and Kei Cosru were with Behram, their princes were constrain'd to follow him; and when they were arriv'd at Seiram, they found 'em left in the village of Tchemkhoud, whence Behram was already departed.

Flight of the army of Emir Hussein for fear of Timur, and the return of Hussein.

Timur sent Sar Bouga and Achouga Behader to Gete to the Emirs Chamseddin and Hadgi Bei, to get their assistance; and then he consulted with Kei Cosru concerning the place where they shou'd take up their winter-quarters, and it was resolv'd that Kei Cosru shou'd go to Otrar, and that Timur with his six hundred men, on whom he very much rely'd, shou'd return to Tachkunt.

The Can and the Emir Hussein consider'd, that the winter approach'd, and that with all their efforts they wou'd be able to gain no advantage over Timur, because this prince by his wise conduct had defeated all their enterprizes, notwithstanding the numerous armys they had got together: they therefore left at Samarcand Poulad Bouga with a troop of their bravest soldiers

soldiers to guard that city, and return'd to Chapar Arkenkserai to pass the winter there.

CHAP. XXII.

The Emir Hussein again seeks to make peace with Timur.

AFter the winter, Sar Bouga and Arbonga Behader, whom Timur had sent to Gete, return'd, and brought advice that a great army of the Getes were marching to his assistance; and because this prince usually succeeded in his undertakings, and defeated the greatest armys with few soldiers, the Emir Hussein resolv'd to make peace with him; and he the more earnestly desir'd it, in that he learnt that the army of Gete intended to come over to this prince in the spring. He imagin'd he should not be able to resist him when at the head of a great army, and with a handful of men he had, unless all his prospects were to succeed; if he continu'd the war, he must expect the bad consequences of it; for this reason he thought it proper to apply himself to the doctors of Cogende and Tachkunt, and beseech them to prevail with Timur by sentiments of piety, and to inspire in him, thro their wise counsels, a spirit of union and peace, instead of that of discord and war. These doctors did not fail to come and see him; after having made vows for his prosperity, they told him that being persuaded of the respect he bore to men of their character, they were so bold as to ask a thing which concern'd both religion and the state. "We know, said they, the war between you is the

Book I. "the cause of the ruin of the kingdom, and of "the misery of the people; and that at present "a strange army is on the point of coming in-"to this country: the infidels will plunder the "goods of the Mussulmans, and bathe their "hands in their blood; and if they are conque-"rors, which God forbid, they will not spare "even you; the hatred between you will cause "strange effects, and ruin all the antient fami-"lys of the empire. We hope that, following "the inspirations of him who has always given "you the victory, you will change this hatred "into friendship and peace, that the affairs of "the empire may be restor'd to their former "state, for the good and security of the peo-"ple."

These remonstrances were follow'd by a dream of Timur, which at length cast'd in him a resolution to make peace. This prince dreamt that the Sihon was overflown, and that he was set on a plank of wood on the water; that he fell down on his face, and pray'd without intermission to be deliver'd from the danger he was in: that his surprize made him swoon away, and that when he was return'd from his swoon, he found himself on the bank of the river towards Samarcand, from whence, looking behind him, he perceiv'd a boisterous sea. When he awak'd, he interpreted the dream after this manner: he imagin'd the sea signify'd an army, and that the deliverance he found in getting on the bank of the river towards Samarcand, signify'd that his desires wou'd be accomplish'd in that very place.

All these reasons oblig'd him to change his resolutions, and to despise the assistance he expected from Gete: he was entirely resolv'd on a peace; but he thought that if he made use of

a mediator in it, it wou'd take up too much time to canvass the reasons on both sides, and to keep up the right of each; that the business won'd be long in hand, and it was better he shou'd go himself to find the Emir Hussein; that it won'd be more convenient to have a conference together in relation to the difference between 'em, because they wou'd sooner agree on the articles of peace. For that purpose he sent to Hussein an officer whom he cou'd confide in, call'd Pentchenbe, to let him know his design; and at length our prince departed in person to regulate his affairs himself according to his custom. In the mean while the Emir Moussa and Oladgia Itou came to meet Timur on the part of Hussein, to ask pardon for all that had past: they renew'd their antient friendship, and Timur did Emir Moussa the honor to embrace him.

After the preliminarys were settled, the peace was concluded, and these princes disbanded their army. They regal'd each other with several diversions, and then they return'd home. Timur took the road to Kech, and arriv'd at that agreeable country, where all the grandees came to kiss his feet, and receiv'd him with all imaginable civilitys. He found at Kech all sorts of satisfaction and happiness, and the people of this kingdom were extremely over-joy'd to possess in peace a prince so dear and valuable to 'em.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXIII.

The Emir Hussein brings an army into the field from Bedakchan.

THE Can and the Emir Hussein, on the news of the kings of Bedakchan having revolted, fail'd not to prepare an army for reducing them; and as these rebellious princes had also rais'd troops, they went to meet 'em, and the two armys were soon in view.

Malek Hussein, prince of Heraz, sent some good troops from Balc, with orders to ravage the provinces thereabouts, which were subject to the Emir Hussein; and Timur had no sooner advice of this enterprize than he dispatch'd Kech with his forces to repulse Malek Hussein, in consequence of the peace and union which had been renew'd between him and the Emir Hussein.

When the troops of Malek heard of Timur's march, they return'd back, after having pillag'd Cheburgan and Balc, and all the country as far as Culm. Timur cross'd the river at Termed; but as the Corassanians retir'd, he advanc'd no farther, but went in search of the Can and the Emir Hussein, who on notice of his coming, made a truce with the kings of Bedakchan, and immediately return'd. These princes met at Condoz, embrac'd each other, and put an end to the aversion they had a long time bore to one another. They made entertainments which lasted several days, went together to the cold country of Iscamich; and Timur sent orders to prince Gehanghir his son, who was at

Macan,

Macan, to come immediately with his family and retinue to the agreeable territory of Kech; which he did accordingly.

Pouiad Balaq and Acbouga also revolted, fortify'd themselves in the citadel of Cabul, and committed many acts of hostility. The Emir Hussein accompany'd by Timur, march'd with an army to that place to reduce 'em, pass'd by the mountain of Hendoukech, and arriv'd before Cabul. Pouiad and Acbouga made preparations to defend themselves with bravery, and fortify'd the citadel.

Timur and Hussein march'd with an army to Cabulestan.

Our army attack'd the place on every side, and gave many assaults; the besieg'd vigorously defended themselves from the top of their walls, casting great quantitys of stones, and shooting arrows on the besiegers.

Timur employ'd all his courage in subduing the enemy, which he so effectually perform'd, that he took from 'em all hopes of safety: but thro his own and his soldiers courage a great many of his brave officers were slain, Catai Behader, [illegible] others were wounded in the attack; but the presence of Timur inspir'd 'em with so much resolution that they at length became victorious: our army enter'd the place sword in hand, seiz'd on Pouiad and Acbouga, and bound their hands; and after the taking of the place, the princes return'd home laden with glory.

The Emir Hussein ask'd Timur's advice in relation to the design he had to make his ordinary residence in the city of Balc; and for this end to rebuild the citadel of Hendouan, formerly noted for the height of the walls, the depth of the ditches, and the largeness of the towers: but Timur attempted to dissuade him from this thought, and for that reason told him

the

Book I. the tragical history of the Mirza Abdalla his uncle, who after the unfortunate death of his father Mir Cazagan, wou'd reside at Samarcand, notwithstanding the counsel of the Emirs who were attach'd to his interest both by duty and inclination, and who cou'd not but represent to him, that thus to abandon his native country, and live amongst strangers, was thro want of prudence, because one cou'd not confide in the service or assistance of strangers: but this young prince wou'd not hearken to the counsel given him; and at length what had been predicted happen'd to him.

Timur told the Emir Hussein that he took the same road as his uncle, and that a prince of so great a soul as himself shou'd not be guilty of a like fault, after such an example had been given him.

Tho the Emir Hussein approv'd of Timur's counsel as very fit to be taken, and as given him thro pure friendship, yet he did not follow it, but was resolv'd to put his design in execution. He departed for Balc, at which place his misfortunes began; and tho it was resolv'd, that at their return from Cabul, Timur shou'd depart for Kech, yet he desir'd him to accompany him to Balc, which he did. Hussein was no sooner arriv'd there, than he began to build the citadel of Hendouan, and to dig the ditches: he gave orders for the men to work there with diligence, made all the inhabitants of Balc come into the citadel, and the city remain'd like a desart; which happen'd in the year of the Hegira 769.

An. Dom. 1367. Mog. The Monkey.

In the mean while advice was brought that the army of the Getes was again upon its march thither. The Emir Hussein, who foresaw that he was not able by himself to get over so intricate

tricate an affair as this, besought Timur to do it himself, and to march into Transoxiana to repulse this army, telling him all wou'd be lost, if the troops had not for their general the most valiant prince in the world.

CHAP. XXIV.

Timur marches at the head of an army to repulse the Getes.

When the news of the march of the Getes was confirm'd, Timur departed for Transoxiana accompany'd by the Emir Moussa. They prepar'd themselves warmly to oppose the enemys, who were arriv'd at Tachkunt, where they encamp'd to pass the winter.

Timur and the Emir Moussa march'd to Samarcand, and encamp'd at Cara Kichlac. The Emir Hussein follow'd 'em with the rest of the army, and encamp'd in the plain of Kech.

There very fortunately arose a division among the lords of Gete: for Camareddin of the hord of Ouglat, Kepec Timur, and Chiraoul were united with some troops against Hadgi Arkenout, who resolv'd to give 'em battel. They took horse with this design; but when they were in view, they made peace, and Arkenout return'd home: but Camareddin and Kepec Timur deceiv'd him, and retreated with their troops instead of following him; and then Hadgi Bei son of Chiraoul cut off Arkenout's head, and by that means put the army of the Getes in disorder, and oblig'd it to march back again. Timur, who was well skill'd in the art of war, wou'd not attack 'em, but

Book I. but said, that when there was a misunderstanding between the generals of the enemys army, it was requisite that the sword shou'd be left in the scabbard.

Timur and Moussa sent messengers to tell the Can and the Emir Hussein, that since the Getes were return'd in disorder, it was proper to pursue 'em; but because the kings of Bedakchan had made several irruptions during the winter on their dominions, and had pillag'd the city of Condoz, the Emir Hussein thought it more advisable to march into Bedakchan, and put a stop to the designs of those princes.

Since thro the valor of Timur there was no further danger to be apprehended from the troops of Gete, the princes Moussa and Timur rais'd fresh soldiers, with whom they march'd to Bedakchan; and when they had cross'd the Gihon, and regulated the march of the army, they went to Taican and Koaoughan, and encamp'd at Kechem, a place dependent on Bedakchan. Timur, who lov'd to be first in every expedition, departed post, being accompany'd by Gehanmulc, son of the Emir Hussein; and this last prince staid with the Can in Kechem.

On the other hand, the army of Bedakchan march'd towards the borders of the mountain Kerkes, where they stopp'd; their commanders imagining that not a bird con'd pass without their permission: but when they perceiv'd Timur's horse, they fled. Nevertheless, when they were arriv'd at the defile of Gerem, they were resolv'd again to stand their ground; but as soon as Timur's standard approach'd, all the troops fled beyond the mountain, cross'd the river Gerem, ruin'd all the country, and lea'd on all the passes of the river. Timur cross'd it, and conceal'd a part of his men. And when the enemy

enemy had advice that the army had pass'd it, they retir'd by the upper side of Bedakchan, encamp'd in a narrow pass of the mountains nam'd Ortondge, where [illegible] rivers meet: but having advice [illegible] troops were [illegible] thither, they [illegible] their backs, and abandon'd it again [illegible] went towards Conghoralenk, and crossed at the [illegible] part of the Gihon; seiz'd on the other passes of the river which were on this side, and encamp'd there. The scouts of our army pursu'd 'em; but the enemy having prepar'd themselves to give battel, beat and routed 'em; they even made prince Cheik Ali, king of Bedakchan, prisoner. These vagrant princes afterwards presented Timur with the horses, and all the flocks of their king. Timur, on advice that a troop of the enemy which had fled was retir'd into a defile, sent against 'em Gehanmulc, son of the Emir Hussein, with troops. He vanquish'd 'em, and took from 'em a great quantity of spoils: but at his return the troops of Bedakchan oppos'd his passage, took possession [illegible] and gave him battel. Gehanmulc fled, and the [illegible] troops recover'd all they had lost. They kill'd a great many of our men, disabled six hundred and thirty horsemen, and made themselves masters of their horses and baggage. Balkhi rode post with this news to Timur. The prince immediately took [illegible] and in a passion march'd to the top of the [illegible]; but his soldiers being fearful, wou'd not [illegible] him; so he was forc'd to content himself [illegible] thirteen horse, with whom he seiz'd on a narrow pass, thro which the enemys were oblig'd to march: he fell furiously upon 'em, and beat 'em, rescu'd his soldiers from their hands; and Timur protested that of all the battles he had been in, he had not yet met with

Book I. so rough a one. In the mean while fifty of the enemy's infantry, cover'd with their bucklers, boldly march'd against Timur; and being within shot of him, let fly a great cloud of arrows. At the same time two hundred men came up to their assistance: but, thro the good fortune of Timur, Eltchi Boga ran to 'em, being alone, and routed 'em. He caress'd 'em, and for that reason touch'd 'em several times upon the neck, speaking to 'em in a kind and civil manner. "The person you see, says he, is the great Timur: he will restore you your slaves: why do you then fight to no purpose? You know that if you are kill'd or made prisoners, you will bear the blame of having your slaves taken." When the soldiers heard the name of that prince, the [illegible] hinder'd 'em from fighting. They confess'd their weakness, kiss'd the earth in token of [illegible] and two of 'em came to him, in [illegible] manner, to beg pardon. Timur order'd 'em to bring the next morning all the horses and bucklers they had taken from our men; and he promis'd to deliver 'em back their slaves. They consented to every thing he requir'd; and said to him, "We are your servants; whatever you command, we must obey." They then return'd home, after having wish'd him all manner of prosperity. Timur return'd to his camp. The men of Bedakchan got together all they cou'd find belonging to us, besides several presents * of horses and other things: [illegible] they laid 'em at the feet of Ti[illegible] who kindly accepted of 'em, and ord[illegible] their slaves to be restor'd. At length this great prince, by his prudence, valor, and good conduct, with thirteen men only, deliver'd six hun-

* The Tartars presents always consist of [illegible] dred

dred and thirty horsemen who had been made slaves, and recovered what an army had shamefully lost; [illegible] professions made him by the [illegible] return'd safe to [illegible] as soon as he arriv'd, Ti[illegible] and the troops which had fled, [illegible] which were come into that city, were sharply reprimanded. The Emirs besought him that he wou'd defer the process against 'em till the end of the campaign; but Timur's zeal wou'd not permit it. He order'd 'em to be brought that instant before a court-martial; and after [illegible] all punish'd according to their sentence.

[illegible] Timur's stay at Bedakchan, the Emir Hussein sent to tell him, that the Cheik Mehemed Selduz and Kei Cosru, after having got together all their friends and some troops, were upon their march, with their ensigns display'd; that nothing but his invincible sword was able to quench the fire of this rebellion: and he [illegible] with expedition, to settle [illegible] conduct. After [illegible] the Emir Hussein return'd with the Can to Saliseraj.

CHAP. XXV.

Timur returns from Bedakchan.

WHEN Timur had advice that the Cheik [illegible]hamed Beyan Selduz and Kei Cosru were [illegible] to make war on Hussein, he took horse [illegible] departed from Bedakchan: and as every one [illegible] that victory always accompany'd the standard of that prince, the rebels [illegible] him a letter, in which they represented the

Book I. cause of their discontent, and beg'd assistance of him. This letter was intercepted by the Emir Hussein, of which Timur had advice. When he was arriv'd at Arhenk, he had a conference on the bank of the river with the Emir Hussein, who testify'd his joy on seeing him, and observ'd on his side all the ceremonys which were tokens of a kind reception. Timur, because of the friendship they had renew'd and confirm'd by oaths, expected that the Emir Hussein wou'd shew him the letter of the princes, and not conceal his design; because the discovery of a secret is a token of sincerity: but Hussein did not answer his expectation, which made him jealous. He was no sooner got to his palace, than three persons came to him, who told him that the Emir Hussein had resolv'd to surprize and seize on him. All this was confirm'd by a private person, to whom the Can Adel Sultan had told that the Emir Hussein had order'd the Emir Moussa to watch an opportunity to seize on Timur; which letter he brought with him. Tho these circumstances increas'd his jealousy, yet he had so great a soul, that he took no notice of 'em, and acted as he had done before.

All these marks of Hussein's baseness, confirm'd by so many circumstances, did not astonish Timur: he conceal'd this letter, imagining that if Hussein had any design to betray him, he wou'd have done it at their first interview. "Is the "Emir Moussa, *says he*, able to seize me? And "can a fox make a lion his prey?"

After he had banish'd from his mind all these thoughts which might give him any discontent, he took horse, and went to find Hussein, to know of him the truth of these rumors. He met him on horseback on the bank of the Gihon, and as he was about to speak to him, there came a bark

bank from the other side of the water, out of which there suddenly sprang forth a man, who whispered to [illegible] the enemy is near, [illegible] Hussein, upon hearing [illegible]s, thought the best way to [illegible] enemy wou'd be to send Timur [illegible] He told him of it, and instantly [illegible] to cross the river with his troops.

Timur did as he desir'd; and when he had overtaken the scouts, he put the army in order of battel: but the enemy had no sooner heard of the arrival of the great Timur, than they fled [illegible] Cheik took the [illegible] Cair Tamar, and thence to Afar, whither he was pursu'd by Zendehacham; and the Cheik Mehemed Beyan Selduz fled to Zizi, towards Cogende, to which place Timur pursu'd him: but the Cheik cross'd the Sihon, and fled towards Tachkune and Otrar: wherefore Timur, full of glory, immediately return'd to Kech, where he ordinarily resided; whilst every [illegible] for the reward of his victory.

[illegible] the insults of his enemies, [illegible] to Balc, where he chose the castle of Hendodan for his residence.

CHAP. XXVI.

[illegible] rupture between Timur and Hussein.

WHEN God designs a thing, he disposes the causes, that whatever he hath resolv'd on may come to pass: thus he design'd the empire of Asia to Timur and his posterity, because he foresaw the mildness of his govern-

Book I. ment, which wou'd be the means of making his people happy. The least accident in the course of this prince's fortune hath been so extraordinary, that the wisest and most learned men were never able to fathom it: every thing fell out according to his desire, thro the assistance of the divine providence, which had resolv'd to settle the crown on his head. And as Scripture, according to Mahomet, is the teaching of God, who is one, it cannot be divided, no more than there cou'd have been two moons in the same heaven: so, to fulfil this truth, God destroys those who oppose him whom providence wou'd fix upon the throne.

Among all the princes who had the title of [illegible] was none of greater [illegible] fein: but his wicked inclinations, his ruin, and his avarice made [illegible] sentiments of honor and virtue; on the other hand, his [illegible] and the small regard he shew'd to others, join'd to passion and imprudence in his speeches, render'd his government insupportable, and drew on him so great an aversion from the people, that they lost all the esteem and affection they had had for him. The good intelligence he kept with Timur-Bec had so firmly supported his authority, that scarce any one refus'd whatsoever he demanded; and he, who declar'd himself his enemy, was not safe from the vengeance of Timur, but by flight. In all his affairs, tho perplexed and unsuccessful, Timur assisted him as far as he was able, with an admirable courage and intrepidity: he even pursu'd the Can Mal Sultan, who was jealous of Hussein, tho he had rais'd him to the throne: this prince fled from his court, and pass'd thro the country of Kesh;

but

but Timur seiz'd him after some resistance, and sent him to Samarcand. Moreover, the friendship of these two princes was strengthen'd by their alliance in marriage, Timur having espous'd the sister of Hussein: Nevertheless the latter had always design'd to deceive Timur; for tho he had in appearance repented of the enmity he had conceiv'd against him, and had obtain'd a peace with so much difficulty, and tho their agreement was confirm'd by oaths, yet he left not off his former practices, his inconstant humor, join'd with the malice of his relation Tokta, had brought him to the point, that he cou'd not be true to his oaths, and the treaty he had made with Timur. He sent men to Kech, to make all Timur's subjects depart out of that city, and to bring 'em to Balc. And because the Emir Muaid had in a drunken fit beaten and kill'd the son of Chaourtchi, and fled for it, Hussein sent messengers to bring away to Balc the wife of this Emir, call'd Chirin Bet [illegible] he dismiss'd the prince [illegible] and [illegible] near [illegible] with the Emir Moussa with the troops he commanded. Timur had every day new causes of jealousy, advice being brought him that a design was form'd to seize his person: on the other hand, the secret which Hussein had made of the letter of Kei Cosru, join'd with the attempts he deemed Beyan had given him that all these things were well grounded, as in effect they were; and the reflections he made on the present treasons and former treasons of Hussein: all this, I say, convinc'd Timur of the evil intention of that prince, whom it was [illegible] not to suspect. In the mean while he held a council with the Emir Moussa and the princes he

ent'd most confidence in; in which he told 'em the Emir Hussein had designs against his person, and that it was prudent for him to prevent their being put in execution.

When the Emir Moussa, the other Emirs, and the principal courtiers of Timur, as the Emirs Daoud, Ser Bouga, Mnaid, Hussein Behader, Acbouga, Eltchi Behader, the Cheik Ali Behader, and Doletchah secretary of state, had heard his discourse, they unanimously agreed that he ought no longer to confide in the treaty or oaths of Hussein, since he always had design'd to deceive him. "God forbid, said they, that we shou'd let slip the opportunity of putting ourselves in a condition to see him [illegible] we shall never be [illegible] and then repentance will avail nothing; [illegible] to prepare to oppose him, and [illegible] care to carry on incessibly so important an affair, that he may no longer have the means of hurting us." After having given thanks to God, according to the custom of the council, they concluded thus: "Since the enemy has always evil designs in his heart, it will be better to proclaim open war against him." Then addressing themselves to Timur, they said, "This perfidious prince designs to ruin you: you ought therefore as a wise man to break off all intelligence with him; by which you'll put an end to his insupportable tyranny, and stop the tears and crys of the people, who expect freedom from your hands."

The Emir Yakou and Doletchah press'd this home to Timur, who gave great attention to 'em. And after the Emir Moussa had renew'd with this prince a promise of friendship, they conceiv'd a perfect enmity against Hussein; and excited

[illegible] opportunity this conjuncture af- Chap. 26.
[illegible] the rupture by the [illegible]

On further [illegible] Hussein design'd to violate his oath, [illegible] already prepar'd to execute his artifices, Timur [illegible] on the ruin of this enemy. But as his great [illegible] wou'd not permit him to make use of tricks, which are suggested by weakness or necessity, he boldly declar'd war against him, giving out his orders for troops to be rais'd, and sending Hindoui Corcora native of Capchac, with orders to oblige the Cheik Mehemed Beyan to return, who had fled, and cross'd the Sihon for Otrar.

When the troops were come to the place where Timur was, this prince gave his orders among the scouts and guards; he kept with him the Emir Moussa to command the rear, and departed from Kech in person, after having, according to custom, consulted the astrologers, and taken the happy moment in which he shou'd decamp. He set out before the rest with a great [illegible] full of [illegible] ambition, and hope. As soon as he arriv'd at [illegible] the Emir Moussa was surpriz'd with a panick fear, as usual, went back from his promise, fled, and return'd to Samarcand. Timur seem'd to take no notice of this action; but sent Siorgatmich [illegible], with the Emir Muaid and Hussein Ber- [illegible] before the rest, as scouts; while himself [illegible] the guards, and continu'd his march. [illegible] scouts had pass'd the iron gate, and were [illegible] at Termed, the scouts of the army of [illegible], commanded by Hindouchah and Calil, pursu'd 'em, but they soon fled back to Balc.

When Timur was arriv'd at Boya, [illegible] leagues from Termed, he met the illustrious and

Book I. and place called Seid Bereke, one of the most considerable Cherifs (that is, relations of Mahomet) of the venerable Mecca. This famous Cherif, who had acquir'd a great reputation for his piety and learning, came by chance to this place: he presented Timur with a drum and a standard, which are the ordinary marks of royal dignity; and at length, as it is report'd, he sung an hymn, which predicted Timur a secure happiness.

Timur gave Seid Bereke a very magnificent reception, he being one of the most illustrious lords of the house of the prophet. He then join'd with him in an indissoluble friendship, and [illegible] resolv'd to spend all his days with [illegible] he had foretold: and Timur order'd that [illegible] they shou'd be both laid in the same [illegible] that his face should be turn'd towards the sky or firmament, which every one shou'd lift up their hands to heaven to implore assistance of some intercessor, he might lay hold on the robe of this child of the prophet Mahomet.

The great confidence Timur always plac'd in this Cherif, who was the chief of all the other relations of Mahomet, is too well known to need proofs of it. Their strict friendship wa of great advantage to the Mahometan religion, and on that account several people abandon'd their error and idolatry to embrace it. Th union hath continu'd to this day among th illustrious posterity, and it is hop'd, that ving begun so well, it will remain among the descendents to the end of time.

Timur departed from Boya for Jagana on the river Jaganrouc, where he order'd the Emir Yakou to assemble the troops which were in the neighbourhood. Yakou accordingly got together

[illegible] the hordes of [illegible] tartars, as well of the Chagatai land as [illegible] and sent him to the [illegible] camp; he [illegible] Cathan to levy the troops of [illegible]

When the standard of the great Emir was arriv'd at the passage of Oubadge, the Cheik Mehemed Beyan and Hindoui Cortora join'd the army. This Cheik had the honor to salute Timur, who cross'd the Gihon, and went to encamp at Culm, the troops of which place join'd ours. The Emir Chodaidad [illegible] the Emir Hussein [illegible] the Cheik [illegible] Timur [illegible] and join'd, [illegible] with their troops, and receiv'd particular favors from Timur; and as they all hated Hussein, not being safe against his [illegible] they were over-joy'd at the [illegible] and the war he had declar'd. They gave several entertainments to satisfy their satisfaction, and loaded this [illegible] with praise. "All the kings "[illegible] supported by your army; "[illegible] "you [illegible] monarchy flourish." The Emir Bek Cofru, who had fled from his country of Catlan to Alai for fear of the Emir Hussein, came also to join this army; and the Emir Yakou arriv'd at the same time with the troops of Catlan. In short, according to Timur's orders, there came from every province of the [illegible] of Zagatai a general with his troops to [illegible] which was so fill'd that there was no [illegible] any more.

All the [illegible] and princes of this great kingdom promised obedience to Timur, and gave publick testimonys of their fidelity in his service; so that nothing could be a finer sight than the camp of this conqueror. Timur sent out a great number

Book I. [illegible] brave men for scouts; which the Emir Hussein had also done. The Cheik Ali Behader, who was of prodigious strength, had no sooner perceiv'd the scouts of Hussein, than he rush'd on them like a lion sword in hand. The encounter was terrible, nothing being heard in the two Mangalai[1] but frightful cry's, while the soldiers fell on each side. Catai Behader attack'd one of the scouts, and oblig'd the enemy to fly; and the Cheik Ali Behader took Chouban Zenbedal prisoner. Afterwards this great army, being divided into two bodys, march'd by the foot of the mountains; the soldiers, who were always desirous to fight, [illegible] TIMUR. [illegible] H

The army encamp'd on the banks of [illegible] which runs from the narrow passage of [illegible] near the citadel of Orhon. Timur-Bec gave Bougaraich Aglen the title of Can; and after he had regulated his army, departed for Balc. He met Zendehacham the son of Mehemed Coja, leader of the vanguard, who came from Cheburgan with the troops of the head of Aposdi, and join'd him. [illegible]

This army, consisting of a prodigious number of valiant men, block'd up the city of Balc on all sides, and besieg'd the citadel called Hendouan. There was a hideous cry among the Tartar troops; nevertheless a great many horse and foot sally'd out of the city to repulse the soldiers; and the two armys fought with an parallel'd courage till night, when both party

[1] A considerable body of soldiers who are a kind of vanguard, always commanded by a prince.

grew

drew off. In the battel, prince Omar Cheik, Chief of the sons of Timur, who was no more than fifteen years old, [illegible] proofs of his valor, was [illegible] which pierced thro his foot: and tho the surgeon drew a hot iron thro the wound, this brave young prince bore it with invincible patience. The next day, the sun had no sooner shone on the fort of Hendouan, than the two partys prepar'd for battel. Timur's army march'd at the sound of kettle-drums and trumpets; and a party of Hussein's men sallying out of the citadel to shew their valor, they began the fight, which was very bloody; [illegible] defiance behind, this terrible encounter, conceiv'd his affairs to be desperate, and that he shou'd never be able to re-establish 'em: he therefore resolv'd to shut up the gates of the citadel, and to abandon his fortune and all his grandeur.

Timur defeats Hussein.

The victorious Timur sent to acquaint him, that if he desir'd his life, he must submit, and deliver up the fort. Hussein being now reduced to the last extremity, at this time aged with [illegible] sent his eldest son to Timur, with the Can whom he had set up: they submitted to him, besought him to spare their lives, and told him they shou'd account themselves happy in being subject to him. Hussein then sent his other son, and order'd him to tell [illegible] in the most submissive manner, that since [illegible] had forsaken him, he foresaw that the [illegible] wou'd be Timur's lot, and poverty his; [illegible] therefore he wou'd resign his crown, renounce the riches, grandeur, and other pleasures of this world, being resolv'd to lead a private life [illegible] whelm'd with griefs and misfortunes, and to request nothing of him but a free passage out of the citadel, in order to go a

pilgrimage

Book I. pilgrimage to Mecca. Timur granted his request, and order'd that no one shou'd molest him; but that he might depart in freedom at the time he propos'd, and retire whither he pleas'd.

The Emir Hussein sent again to satisfy Timur that he would go out the next day; and requested he would promise him that no one shou'd undertake any thing against his life. Timur granted it; but Hussein was so accustom'd to break his word, and therefore jealous that Timur wou'd not keep his promise, that he went out of the citadel the same night with two servants. His affliction indeed had so overwhelm'd him, and he was so full of indecision and under so much [illegible] that he was to go to; neither [illegible] enough to perform the pilgrimage he [illegible] wandering for some time [illegible] the suburbs of Balcs; and when morning was come, his fear of death, which he was conscious he had deserv'd, made him get upon the minaret [1] of the principal mosque, where he hid himself. By this were fulfill'd the words of Gelaleddin Roumi in his poems, "That a wa-"mel which got upon a minaret, cry'd out "*I am hid here, pray don't discover the place I am* "*in.*"

As the stars [illegible] by fate for the death Hussein was come, the honour he was in hide himself was in vain. A soldier, who by chance lost his horse, and [illegible] every where seek it, was advis'd to get upon the minaret to try if he could not perceive it

[1] A high steeple built near the mosques in Turkey, where the cryers with a loud voice proclaim the [illegible] prayers

thence

[illegible] and saw the Emir Hussein [illegible] this prince, who in his prosperity [illegible] the least generosity to a [illegible] the man a handful of [illegible] if he wou'd save him from the danger he was in, he wou'd not fail to requite him according to his power; he besought him with the greatest importunity, and made him swear he wou'd not discover him. The soldier promis'd he wou'd not, and went down the minaret; but immediately ran to Timur, to whom he told the adventure, not forgetting the circumstances of the [illegible] nor the intercession [illegible] had made; he asked pardon of Timur for the action, and told him, that because he had the honor to belong to him, he won'd not keep it secret, but was oblig'd to give him this important advice.

The Emirs and soldiers had no sooner heard of this, than they ran to the mosque. Hussein, who saw 'em from the top of the minaret, despair'd of his life; he came down very much affrighted [illegible] hole; but by chance the top [illegible] was seen; so that he was discover'd, and brought to Timur with his hands bound. This prince wou'd not break his promise, but said to the Emirs who were near him, "I renounce the right I have of taking away his life, and eraze the sentence of his death, by which I might revenge my self."

[illegible] he had dismiss'd him from his presence, [illegible] prince of Catlan complain'd of the wrong which had been done him, in that Hussein had put to death his brother Kei Cobad; he therefore besought Timur to deliver him into his hands, that justice might be done for the crime he had committed in taking away his brother's life. Timur, to appease Kai-Cosru,

[illegible] told him he ought to abandon this profession, for that his brother's blood wou'd be revenge'd without his having a hand in it; and on that occasion he cited a verse of the poet: *Leave him who hath offended you in the hands of time, for time and fortune will avenge you.*

Nevertheless the remembrance of the antient familiarity, as well as the alliance between Timur and Hussein by the marriage of the illustrious princess Turcan Aga, caus'd so great a sorrow in Timur's mind, that he melted into tears. Upon which the Emir Oladgia Ilon, a man of years and great experience, imagin'd that as Timur bore so great affection towards Hussein, he might escape from the danger he was in, and that an opportunity was once lost, they wou'd repent of it. He therefore made signs to prince Kei Cosru, and the Emir Mesaid, to go out of the assembly; which they did, without asking leave of Timur, and taking horse, they follow'd the Emir Hussein, soon overtook him and slew him: which punishment being due to him according to the strict rules of justice, the protection of Timur avail'd him nothing.

Death of Emir Hussein.

An. Dom. 1369. Heg. 771. Mog. The Dog.

The body of this prince was laid in the tomb of Santon Coja Ucache.

At length the army made themselves masters of the fortress of Hendouan; the two sons of Hussein, Consaid and Noroux Sultan, paid for their father's faithlessness, for they were burnt, and their ashes cast into the air; his two other sons, Gehan Mule and Caisi Sultan, fled into India, where they perish'd. The Can whom Hussein had set up was also put to death. They brought to Timur the ladys and domesticks of Hussein, as also all the treasure and riches he had amass'd with so much solicitude and

and avarice. Among the ladys of this prince's Chap. 26.
seraglio, Timur kept for himself the princess Serai Mulc Canum, daughter of Cazan Sultan Can, Olous Aga, daughter of Began Seldus, Islam Aga daughter of Kefer Yelouri, and Togi Turcan Catun. He gave to Behram Gelair the great queen, Sevendg Cotluc Aga daughter of Turmechirin Can, Hussein's first wife; he gave Dilchadaga to Zende Hacham, and the princess Adel Mulc, daughter of Kei Cobad prince of Catlan, to the Emir Yakou Berlas: he distributed the other ladys of Hussein's palace in the same manner, and gave the daughter of this prince to Elchi Beg, brother of Yaban Beladir.

Timur order'd that the inhabitants of the city of Balc, who had shut themselves up in the citadel of Hendouan with Hussein, should return to the old city, and rebuild it for their dwelling-place. The citadel, after it had been pillaged, as well as the palaces of Emir Hussein, were all raz'd even to the very foundations; and every thing that belong'd to him was so entirely destroy'd, that there [illegible] footsteps of him.

The end of the first book.

BOOK II.

The advancement of Timur Bec to the throne of the empire of Zagatai. The marriage and death of Mirza Gehangir his eldest son. Seven famous expeditions against the Getes. The conquest of the kingdoms of Octocenand Carasane, of the empire of Capchac, and principally of the establishment of Tocatmish Cam on the throne of Capchac. The birth of Mirza Charoc son of Timur. The conquests of this emperor in Mazendran, Azerbijana, the country of Fars, which is the true Persia, and in Irac Agemi.

CHAP. I.

The establishment of Timur on the throne of the empire of Zagatai.

AFTER the taking of the city of Balc, all the Emirs, princes and generals of the army of the empire of Zagatai, the Cans of Termed, and the prince of the Cherifs, Seid Bereke, (who, as we have related in the former book,

book, had predicted Timur's advancement to the throne; assembled in this city, and with unanimous consent chose Timur to fill the imperial seat of Zagatai. Nevertheless they waited for the proper season to perform the ceremony of his coronation; and as soon as that time came on, Timur ascended the throne, plac'd the crown of gold on his head, and girded himself with the imperial belt in presence of the princes of the royal blood and the Emirs, who all kneel'd down before him, and having wish'd him prosperity, made him sumptuous presents, sprinkled handfuls of gold and precious stones upon his head, according to custom[1], and gave him the title of Saheb Caran, which words signify, the emperor of the age and conqueror of the world; and from that time all the country was subject to his laws.

Chap. I.

This prince was then thirty four years old, being born in the year 736; this great action happening in the year of the Dog, one of the twelve years of the Mogul calendar, answering to the year of the Hegira 771. In the month of Ramazan, in which month the alcoran came down from heaven, according to the opinion of all our doctors.

An. Dom. 1335. Mog. The Mouse.

An. Dom. 1369.

This prince was at first named Timur by his father the Emir Tragai; which name signifying Iron, was given him because of his extraordinary strength; but he was afterwards called the Lion and Conqueror.

In short he hath almost always been invincible, and those who have hated him, or made war on him, have been only the instruments of aggrandizing the honor of his throne, and the glory of his triumphs.

[1] This custom continues to this day, not only at the coronation of princes, but also at the marriages of private persons.

Book II. He began his warlike actions in the city of Balc, which had belong'd to the Emir Hussein; the inhabitants of which place he treated with the utmost rigor, binding some in chains, and beheading others; he destroy'd their houses, and either rooted up or burnt the rest of the country; seiz'd on their riches, which he distributed among his officers, and made their wives and children slaves.

Thus there remain'd no more rebels in that country; the people enjoy'd peace, and there was nothing to be fear'd but from luxury and effeminacy.

As soon as Timur was upon the throne, he open'd the rich treasures of the Emir Hussein, which have been already mention'd, and was very liberal; he particularly distinguish'd himself by his civilitys towards the governors of towns, the generals of the army, the Emirs and principal men of the state; enlarging their commissions and honors: at length he dismiss'd 'em all, ordering 'em to the places of their residence, that they might administer justice to their subjects.

CHAP. II.

Timur returns from the city of Balc to Samarcand: the building of the castle and fortress of that metropolis.

AFTER the taking of Balc, Timur made prince Mourad, son of Tchougam Berlas, governor of it; and having a design to return home, he march'd towards Kech, after having built a bridge of boats over the Gihon*, which

* Oxus.

is

is but eight leagues distant from Balc; and which having happily cross'd, he arriv'd in the delicious residence of the country of Kech, and encamp'd in the plain of Coutchinich, on the banks of the fine river of Cochca. This prince, as he us'd all his authority to encrease the joy and pleasure of the great lords of this country, so he procur'd to the enemys of the kingdom all the disquietude and trouble he possibly cou'd, during the two months he staid in these delicious countrys. He there order'd carpets to be spread, and feasts prepar'd; giving himself up to pleasures, and sitting upon the throne in his native country, the city of Kech. Chap. 2.

The country being deliver'd from the scourge of war, the favorites and officers of the house of Timur, and all those who were attach'd to his interest, were loaded with gifts, and rais'd to considerable posts and honors. In short, this prince caress'd the army, and particularly the generals; these he cloth'd with robes of honor, after having enrich'd them, and confirm'd the princes in their Tomans, and the commanders of a thousand men in their Hezares.

The Emir Daoud was of this number, and to him was committed the post of Deroga, that is, governor of the city of Samarcand, and chief of the council, whom we commonly call Olave Imaret Divan, or chief of the Emirs of the Divan. The Emirs Yakou, Seifeddin, Ali, Eskender, Alemcheik, Alafe Coutchin, Ardachir Coutchin, Comari Einac brother of Temoulin Coutchin, had considerable commands assign'd them in the army, being made Tavatchis[1],

[1] Lands which furnish a thousand men.

[2] Tavatchis among the Tartars are lieutenant-generals.

Book II. which are the first posts under the crown among the Turks [4].

He made Sar Bouga, Hussein Berlas, Acbonga, Hadgi Mahmoudcha, Eltchi Behader, and Doletcha Behader, Emirs of the Divan, that is, counsellors of state.

He appointed the following brave men, Catai Behader, Cheik Ali Behader, Caban Behader, Deeue, Baetichah, Cerghine, Cudue, Apachi Kelte, Cazan Bouga Arlas, and Doura Behader, to be * captains and lieutenants in his army; and he constituted these illustrious persons, Catai, Cheik Ali, and Akitmur, to be chiefs over the others, making them also his own † lieutenants. And in this manner he fix'd every one of his courtiers in the employment which best suited him, and even the meanest officers had great estates, and were advanc'd to high dignitys.

* Mocaddem Sipah.

† Kelanter.

He then departed for the city of Samarcand, which for its charming situation, the freshness of its gardens, the strength and neatness of its buildings, and its delightful rivers, makes the finest citys in the world jealous of its beauty. This he made the seat of his empire, and the place of his residence.

Samarcand made the seat of the empire.

He caus'd the walls of the city to be repair'd, and a fortress to be erected; he built stately palaces and neat publick edifices, assigning the care of this great city to the Emirs of his court.

He appointed the Emir Acbonga superintendant of the buildings; and while the public affairs went on in a regular course, Timur-

[4] The author calls those Turks in this book which we in Europe call Tartars.

us'd

us'd all his care and application entirely to purge the empire from the disorders which had crept into it; insomuch that plenty soon flow'd in this city, and all the earth was charm'd with the justice of Timur's government. In short, the favors and immunitys he granted to the inhabitants, and the moderation and equity with which he govern'd 'em, caus'd so vast a number of people to settle there, that even Grand Cairo and Bagdad envy'd its prosperity and glory.

The Emir Moussa, who thro discontent had left the court, at the time when Timur departed for Delhi, and was return'd to his own country, having learnt that this city was conquer'd by our hero, fled to Turkestan *. Timur being inform'd of it, dispatch'd Genghi Coutchin in pursuit of him; and when this general was come up to him, he fought and overcame him, and oblig'd him to retire into the mountains. He there remain'd a vagabond, till the Emir Carlogach, brother of Hussein, having pursued him, constrain'd him to quit his retreat and to return to the southern countrys, whither being follow'd, he at length resolv'd to cross the Gihon with his two wives, and to fly for refuge to the prince Zendy Hacham at Cheburgan [1], in order to excite him to revolt. This unfortunate man listen'd to the rebel Moussa, which prov'd of ill consequence to him, for he soon after lost his life, and his principality of Cheburgan fell into the hands of another.

* The eastern Tartary.

[1] A city of Turkestan, near the Gihon and Balc; long. 100. lat. 36. 45.

CHAP. III.

The Couroultai, that is, the diet or assembly of the states, conven'd by Timur's orders.

IN the month of June, the same year, the emperor gave instructions for the Couroultai to be held. The Emirs of the Tomans and Hezares came before the throne, according to the orders they had receiv'd.

The princes and kings came also; Zende Hacham, son of Mehemed Coja Aperdi *, was the only person who did not obey the orders. Timur, by an express, threaten'd him with punishment if he did not come to the Couroultai. As soon as the envoy met him, he said, "You must come before the emperor's throne, if you won'd testify your fidelity." Zende Hacham was deceitful on this occasion, pretended submission, and answer'd him, "I glory in obeying the orders of the emperor: wherefoever he requires my presence, I shall be ever ready with my buckler and sword in my hand; and if he won'd put me to death, his will be done."

* Aperdi, a hord or tribe among the Zagataian Tartars.

He honor'd and caress'd the envoy, and promis'd immediately to follow him: but he did not keep his word; and a person who came from thence made appear to the emperor, that Zende Hacham was not obedient to him, by the following relation: The Emir Bairamcha Erlat †, and his son Yetlandgi had formerly sided with the Emir Hussein against Timur; but being sensible of their errors, they were pleas'd with the

† Erlat, a famous hord of Tartars.

the success of this prince; and having learnt the news of his victorys and coronation, were so over-joy'd that they departed immediately from Corassana [7], to render him their services. Chap. 3.

Zende Hacham having advice of it went to meet them; and having carry'd them to a place agreeable for its coolness call'd Dalbeiailac, he regal'd them magnificently; and when the fumes of the wine had got into their heads, seiz'd on both father and son, and binding their feet with irons, committed 'em to the care of his brother Pir Mehemed, whom he order'd in the presence of a great many persons to lay them at the foot of the throne of the emperor Timur, tho at the same time he had privately charg'd him to put them to death. Pir Mehemed carry'd them half a day's journy from the place where they had been entertained; and having murder'd them, return'd the same night to his brother Zende Hacham.

As soon as the emperor heard of these violences, he order'd the Emir Oladgia Itou, a relation of Hacham, to endeavor by his good counsel to bring him to his duty, threatning him else with a war, which might bring inevitable ruin upon him.

But as this old man had great experience in all affairs, and knew perfectly the humor of the princes of his blood, he remonstrated to the emperor that it would be in vain to give advice to this rebel, and that he cou'd not do it without being expos'd to an open affront, if his counsel should be despis'd by a rash young man, who ow'd respect to his age: but if his majesty approv'd of it, he wou'd give the commission to

[7] A province E. of Persia, and S. E. of the Ghon.

his

Book II. his son Coja Yousef. The emperor was satisfy'd with his excuse, and sent Taban Behader with Coja Yousef to Zende Hacham, to persuade him to return to his duty, and to bring him to court. But being arriv'd at Cheburgan, this presumptuous and proud prince, without considering the consequences of his proceedings, seiz'd and bound them in chains.

CHAP. IV.

Timur marches to Cheburgan at the head of an army.

TIMUR having advice of the imprudence and violence of Zende Hacham, was so enrag'd that he immediately caus'd the horse's tail, and imperial standard to be erected, and departed from Kech with an army to reduce him to obedience.

When he had cross'd the Gihon, Zende Hacham, who had fortify'd himself in a castle in those quarters named Sefiddez, that is, the white fort, thought at first to have continued his rebellion; but the army having invested him in that place, the sound of the Courke*, the noise of the kettle-drums, and the great trumpet Kerrena, join'd with the horrid cries of the soldiers, terrify'd him so much, that he cou'd find no other remedy, than supplications and groans. He therefore address'd himself to his relation, the Emir Oladgia Itou, and besought him to intercede for him. The Emir Oladgia

* A kettle-drum which is beat at the beginning of the fight.

Itou discover'd so much goodness and humanity, as to present himself before the imperial throne; where after having groan'd and wept, he meekly told the emperor, that Zende Hacham, sincerely repenting of his evil action, intreated him to pardon his crime; and he join'd his entreatys with those of that prince, that it might please the emperor to decamp and disband his army, so that Hacham being recover'd from his surprize, might come before the throne with a sword and handkerchief * in his hand, to be receiv'd into the number of Timur's servants.

Timur remembring the saying of Mahomet, that blessing always attends the words of old men, was pleas'd with the intercession of Oladgia Itou; he granted what he ask'd, and abstain'd from the blood of Zende Hacham, who came out of the citadel, deliver'd up the Emir Moussa, the author of this confusion, to the servants of the king, and sent Islam his younger brother to serve Timur.

After this happy success the Emperor took horse to return home, he disbanded his troops, and return'd to the city of Sebz [1], the place of his birth, where he not only pardon'd Moussa his faults, but also loaded him with favors; and to comfort him for the grief he seem'd to have for his fault, gave him a sumptuous banquet, and distinguish'd him from many others, by honoring him with magnificent vests, and the command of a hord and province.

---

* It was a custom among the Tartars to carry in their hand a naked sword and a handkerchief, when they appear'd before their prince, to signify that they were ready to fight in his defence, and to lay down their life if he requir'd it.

[1] Sebz is the same place as Kech.

CHAP.

CHAP. V.

Timur sends an army to Balc and Termed.

AS Zende Hachan was destin'd to a miserable end, the excess of his imprudence and pride prevented his reaping the benefit of the emperor's goodness towards him; insomuch that slighting his friendship, he relapsed into disloyalty and rebellion. He drew over to his side the prince Aboul Moali, tho all his friends, and even policy itself, counsell'd him not to be seduc'd: and these two princes concerted together how they shou'd pillage the countrys of Balc and Termed [2].

When Timur had notice of it, he dispach'd Catai Behader, and Argoun Chab, native of Bourdalie [3], with an army of valiant men, all greedy of honor, and foremost in the most dangerous actions, and whose leaders had help'd to advance Timur to the throne.

When the Emirs were arrived at Termed with the army, they found a bridge of boats built by the inhabitants of the country over the river Amouye [4]: but some of the enemys, having cross'd it in order to get away, had demolish'd one end of it during the night; so that the other rebels, who were dismay'd at the sight of the imperial troops, and fled with precipitation,

---

[2] A city in Transoxiana between the Gihon and the river of Saganian; long. 100½. lat. 37.

[3] A town of Transoxiana upon the bank of the Gihon, at the foot of a mountain of the same name, towards Cashgar.

[4] Amouye is the Gihon or Oxus, which takes the name while it passes to Amou.

being

being ignorant of the condition of the bridge, were overtaken by the troops who pursu'd them, and discharg'd a great number of arrows upon them: hereby the greatest part of these unfortunate rebels, threatned both before and behind with death, perish'd by the sword and waters. Nevertheless, as some were got over to the other side with Zende Hacham, this prince was accompany'd in his flight; and he gain'd entrance into Cheburgan, with design to defend himself in that fortress till the last extremity.

CHAP. VI.

Timur sends the Emir Yakou to besiege Cheburgan.

TIMUR having learnt that Zende Hacham had fortify'd himself in the citadel of Cheburgan, order'd the Emir Yakou to march and besiege it, which this general, having cross'd the Gihon with the army, did in form; he there passed the winter, and Zende Hacham dar'd not appear till spring; but then he came to himself again, and having had recourse to his friendship with the Emir Yakou, he went out of the fortress upon his promise of being civilly us'd; begg'd his protection, and ask'd pardon for his fault. His excuses made the Emir treat him handsomly, and promise to use all his interest with the emperor in his favor: he brought him to court, where the Emirs received him with all manner of civility. The Emir Yakou agreed with the princes to carry him to salute the emperor, and kiss the borders of the imperial carpet; they desir'd no other intercessor for the pardon of his crime than the love and clemency

Book II. mency which emperors usually have for their subjects.

The generous Timur vouchsaf'd him the honor to speak to him, and told him that he had forgotten his faults, and granted him his life; but it was his own province to preserve it, and not to desire what it was impossible for him to attain; because the crown which he had sought after is an honor which God grants out of his rich treasure to whomsoever he pleases; which is an effect of his bountiful mercy, and not to be attain'd by care or anxiety.

After Timur had assur'd Zende Hachaur of his protection, he honor'd him with his counsel; caress'd him, and made him a present of many curious pieces, as belts of gold, Arabian horses, camels, sets of mules, and an infinite number of cattle; and even encreas'd his former dignity. Then Zende Hacham wholly devoted himself to the service of Timur, and was listed among the officers of the court.

CHAP. VII.

Timur marches an army into the country of the Getes.

TIMUR proposed to march into the country of the Getes*, and in the year of the Hog, which answers to the year of the Hegira 772, and of Jesus Christ 1389, he departed at the head of his army.

* Gete a kingdom, which has on the East Turkestan; on the South the river Sihon; on the West Capchak, and on the North part of Turkestan. It fell to Zagatai Can the son of Genghiz Can, as his share.

As soon as he had cross'd the Sihon, the Emirs Comze and Orenkitmur submitted to him, so that their hords and countrys were entirely at the disposal of the Prince, who gave the government of them to Kepec Timur, and return'd victorious to his capital city. Chap. 7.

Some time after he had advice that Kepec Timur, full of ingratitude and pride, had revolted from him: wherefore as Behram Gelair *, after what had happen'd at Tachkunt, and his being check'd by this prince, became obedient to him, and had been enroll'd in the list of the officers of the imperial circle, he was order'd, as well as the Emir Abbas, Kitai Behader, and the Cheik Ali Behader, to make war on Kepec Timur, and by the sword to put an end to this rebellion.

* Gelair, a hord of Tartars.

All the Emirs and other brave warriors readily obey'd this order, and march'd with great resolution. When the armys were in view, the soldiers of the Toman of Behram Gelair, with the consent of their captain Beteredgi, an old enemy of Behram, endeav'd to betray him, and force on his fortune, but Behram, having advice of it, kept in the middle of his corps du garde, and hinder'd the execution of their design. In the mean while Catai Behader, having made some useful propositions with regard to the fight to Cheik Ali Behader, which he thought not fit to hearken to, imagin'd the Cheik dislik'd his proposal merely thro want of courage; he therefore in a passion drew his sword, and having cross'd the river Aiche Caden, alone attack'd the enemy's ranks, of whom he routed some; but as their number was very great, they had entirely defeated him, if the Cheik Ali Behader had not follow'd him, and sav'd him from the danger he was in; after which he reprimand'd

him

Book II. him for his rash action, and they join'd one another again. These actions deserve the greatest admiration, as they con'd never have happen'd but thro the good fortune of the invincible Timur, under whose conduct they carry'd on the war.

The Emirs made peace with the enemys on the bank of the same river, and then return'd home. They severly punish'd the soldiers of Gelair, who had form'd a design to betray Behram. But when they had the happiness to salute Timur, he was displeas'd at their return, and blam'd them for having made peace.

CHAP. VIII.

A second expedition of Timur against the Getes.

TIMUR, who was never pleas'd till he had finish'd what he had begun, was troubled at the Emirs making a peace with the enemy, by which they had lost the advantage of a battle.

To repair this fault, he resolv'd to go in perto the country of the Getes; for which reason he sent orders every where to levy a great number of soldiers; when that was done, he join'd them to the old troops, and all rendezvous'd near Samarcand. The emperor had scarce march'd by Seiram [1] and Penki, with his numerous and formidable army, but in less than a month he became

[1] At own on the frontiers of Gete, North of the Sihon, long. 99. 25. lat. 44. 45.

vic-

victorious; for the army of the enemys fled at the first rumor of his march. This prince went as far as Senghizi Agadge, leaving with his soldiers a vast number of slaves and great booty; and at length arriv'd at Aboun Couzi with the spoils he had gain'd. Chap. 8.

In the mean time the following accident happen'd: The Emir Moussa and Zende Hachim, notwithstanding the favors Timur had a thousand times bestow'd on 'em, form'd a fresh conspiracy against him with Abou Ishac, and swore upon the Alcoran, that as soon as they arriv'd at Gazan Sultan, they wou'd seize on him while he was hunting. Every thing seem'd to smile on 'em, and when they were pleasing themselves with the ridiculous thoughts of their shameful project, they did not reflect on the consequences of it.

The prince Aboulmoali, son of the Can of Termed, and Cheik Aboulleit Samarcandi, who had also conspir'd against Timur, were no sooner come into their measures, than a person who was privy to the design, presented a memorial of it to the emperor.

As soon as he had read it, he order'd the conspirators to appear before him: when they came, they were try'd and convicted of the crimes of treason and rebellion.

But because the queen Serai Mulc Canum [1] was the sister of the Emir Moussa, and the princess Akke Beghi [2] was betroth'd to one of his sons, the emperor said to him, "The crime "thou hast committed is great; but because we "are related, I pardon you, and will not re-

[1] Daughter of Gazan Sultan Can, and mother of Chamos: she was the great queen.

[2] Daughter of Timur.

"revenge my self: and thus you may say, it was "your alliance with me, and extreme old age "which saved your life; for had it not been for "that, I shou'd have order'd your head, which "intended evil against me, to have been sepa-"rated from your body."

Hendjo told prince Aboulmoali, that no harm shou'd come to him notwithstanding his follys, because he had the honor to be of the family of Mahomet; but it was necessary he should be banish'd this country. He also commanded Cheik Aboulleit to retire to Hendjaz [1]. But as to the son of Keder, as he was brother to the [illegible] Seifeddin Bertas, this lord had [illegible] to the emperor's [illegible] interceded for him, and sav'd him from all harm. After this Timur order'd that Zende Hachim should be bound, and carry'd to Samarcand, where he was kept close prisoner in a dungeon.

At length Timur return'd to Samarcand, the capital of his empire; and he had no sooner dismounted his horse, than he gave the government of Cheburgan, and the places Zende Hachim possessed, to Beyan Timur son of Aebotiga.

[1] Arabia Petræa, in which Mecca is situated.

CHAP.

CHAP. IX.

The embassy from Timur to Hussein Sofi, king of Carezem.

AS soon as Timur had deliver'd the empire of Zagatai from rebellion and tyranny, he employ'd his time in governing it according to justice; but having learnt that Hussein Sofi, son of Sangibai, of the Horde of Gonkegrat, had made himself master of the countrys of Cat and Kivac, he turn'd his thoughts to the setting of that affair: to which end he sent Alase Tavatchi with a handsom retinue to this prince, in quality of ambassador, to acquaint him that Cat and Kivac belong'd to the empire of Zagatai; that he did not act fairly in seizing on countrys he had done for these last five years, because they were without a prince; and that he must delivery up all the dependencies into the hands of the officers and commissioners of the state, that union and peace might be kept up between the two crowns, and he enjoy Timur's protection.

When the ambassador arriv'd at Carezem, he faithfully acquitted himself of his commission to Hussein, which he urg'd with the most forcible arguments: but this prince persisted in his resolution, and without considering the valor of the sodiers of Zagatai, the consequences of which he ought to have fear'd, he answer'd, That he had conquer'd these countrys with his sword,

* A kingdom on the east shore of the Caspian sea.

Book II. and that Timur might recover 'em the same way, if he cou'd.

The ambassador upon his return reported this answer to Timur, which appear'd so unreasonable, that he was exasperated, and at the same time resolv'd to march at the head of an army against Hussein Sofi. But the pious and learned Moulla Gelaleddin, native of Kech, who was Mufti * to our great prince, did not like that the vanity of a single man shou'd be the cause of a great empire's ruin; and thereupon having made his submission to Timur, he besought him to let him go to Hussein Sofi, to advertise him of his imprudent carriage, and to admonish him to spare the lives and fortunes of the mussulmans.

The emperor granted the petition of Moulla, and gave him leave to go to Carezem, to settle this affair. As soon as he arriv'd, during he began to give those general advices, which experienc'd and learned persons, the Imams, and other wise men, ordinarily use to appease seditions, and quench the fire of war; and he accompany'd 'em not only with arguments, but even with citations out of the Alcoran, and the sayings of Mahomet: yet all his eloquence, how sublime soever, did not succeed.

Hussein Sofi slighted his counsels, and had the boldness to imprison this virtuous Mufti in the citadel; upon which Timur order'd his troops immediately to rendezvous before Samarcand.

* Mufti is the chief priest, who decides the affairs of the law.

CHAP.

CHAP. X.

Timur departs from Samarcand, to make war on the king of Carezem.

IN the spring of the year of the Hegira 773, which answers to that of the Mouse, the emperor assembled his army, distributed his treasures, and made presents worthy of the greatest kings. Having done this, he departed from Samarcand, hunted in the plain of Carschi, and encamp'd at Cabamitan [1]. Malek Cayasseddin Pir Ali, son of Malek Azeddin Hussein, who, after the death of his father, in the month of Zilcade in the year 771. was proclaim'd prince of Herat, of the kingdom of Gour, Couhestan [2], and their dependences, sent hither Hadgi Vezir in quality of ambassador to Timur, with many presents of Arabian horses, [illegible] mules, and other mules for riding, a great [illegible], [illegible] and garments. Among the presents was a fine horse spotted like a tiger, call'd Conc Aglen, with a saddle of gold. An. Dom. 1371.

Hadgi Vezir, on his arrival, having had the honor to kiss the royal carpet, did in a very humble manner inform Timur with how much sincerity and affection Malek his master had always been attach'd to his interest. Timur was intirely satisfy'd with this declaration; and having presented the envoy with a vest and other

[1] A country famous for a victory Timur formerly had obtain'd over the Getes.

[2] A province in the middle of Persia.

Book II. things becoming his grandeur, he wrote a letter to Malek full of kindness and good nature, sending with it a vest of honor, as a mark of the great trust he repos'd in the prince of Herat: after this expedition he order'd the Emir Yakub Berlas to set out for Condoz, Bacalan [1], Cabul [2], and the neighbouring places, to govern all that country; he gave him the hord of Bogouldai, and appointed troops to conduct him thither.

The Emir Seifeddin Berlas was left with the government of Samarcand, and the direction of the affairs of that country. Then Timur march'd at the head of his army for Carezem, being excited to it, not only from a desire of acquiring glory by his arms, and dispensing justice to the people, but also by a rule of the Alcoran [3], which gave him hopes of succeeding.

When the standard had passed by Bocara [4], and was come to a place nam'd Sogaria, situated on the bank of the Oxus, they met with Usbeks scouts, whom they attack'd and vanquish'd; having bound their hands, they brought them to the camp, as the first fruits of the victory they wou'd probably obtain this campaign; and there they were all beheaded.

The troops continu'd their march, and arrived at the town of Cat. Behram Yesaoul * and the Cheik Muaid were at this place under Hussein Sofi; the one in quality of † governor, and the

* Yesaoul signifys exempt.

† Deroga.

[1] A mountain near the Gihon, in the kingdom of Balakchan.

[2] A frontier town, N. E. of India, long. 105. lat. 34 ½.

[3] The custom of the Mahometans, on undertaking any considerable affair, is to open the Alcoran, and read the first verse of the first page they meet with, whence they foretel their good or bad success; which usage is among them call'd Istiqara. The verse which Timur met with was, *The vistors mountain.*

[4] A town in Transoxiana, long. 97 ½. lat. 37.

other

other of † judge. They order'd the gates to be shut up and barricado'd, and having prepar'd the machines of war, they put themselves in the best posture of defence they were able. Chap. 10.

† Cadi.

The imperial troops having invested the town, assaulted it with their utmost vigor. And as the attacks were going forward, and both sides were hot, there was no time for treating of peace; arrows and stones fell from the town upon our army like rain, while we had not so much as one engineer in the camp. In the mean time Timur said it wou'd not be to his honor that the town should be taken without making himself master of the slaves of Hussein Sofi, who was commander of the town: he therefore immediately order'd the troops to fill up the ditch with faggots and other wood, and wou'd be present at this work himself. He commanded Coutchei Malek to go down into the ditch; but fear seizing him, Timur gave the same orders to the Chaoux * Comari, who immediately performed it.

Mubacher and Tacoja follow'd the Chaoux, and the soldiers did the same, advancing towards the breast-work. Cheik Ali Bahadur was the first who laid his hand on the said work, and wou'd have mounted it; but Mubacher envying him that honor, took hold on his foot, and both of 'em fell to the earth. However, Cheik Ali return'd, and had success: at which one of the enemy's came with his lance in his hand to repulse him; but this

* By this slave, he means Behram Yessoul, all the subjects of Asiatick princes, being called slaves.

* Chaoux signifys an aide-de-camp.

Book II. brave man snatching it from him broke it, and struck him upon the head with his sword. Then the soldiers having forc'd a passage on all sides, enter'd the town, seiz'd the governor and principal inhabitants; and put the greatest part of those who defended it to the sword, as also of the inhabitants, whose wives and children they carry'd away for slaves, after having pillag'd whatsoever they cou'd find.

The next day Timur taking compassion on the slaves, order'd 'em to be set at liberty. He then departed from the camp to Carezem. As he remembred the cowardice of Coutchei Malek, who was afraid to enter the ditch, he commanded him to be bastinado'd, according to the law of Genghiz Can, call'd Yasac [6]. He was then ty'd to the tail of an ass, and sent to Samarcand.

Cayaseddin Tercan [7], of the race of Cachlic, (who had been made a Tercan by the emperor Genghiz Can) was made a Mangalai by Timur, as also was Coja Yousef Oladgia Itou. The Mangalai are those who command the vanguard. Timur sent 'em before with some other brave men; and when they were arriv'd at Dgioui Corsan, they found Mangheli Coja and Calec with a troop of the enemys.

Our valiant men began the fight, and cary'd the victory as usual: they put the enemys to

---

[6] These laws are set down at length in *The history of Genghiz Can*. page 79.

[7] A Tercan is a person who for his good services is so highly advanc'd in the emperor's friendship, that whatsoever fault he commits, the emperor takes no notice of it; that is, he is permitted to do any thing the emperor does. Those only are made Tercans whose virtue has been approved, and their services great. See *The history of Genghiz Can*, p. 49.

Tercan is also the name of a hord in the country of Zagatai.

the rout, and pursu'd 'em with so much vigor, that they kill'd the greatest part of those who fled. At length the emperor commanded his army to decamp with expedition, and to make inroads on all sides; which was obey'd so punctually, that all the provinces of the kingdom of Carezem were ruin'd. Chap. 10.

Hussein Sofi not being in a condition to defend himself, thought only of securing his person; wherefore he enter'd into the city of Carezem, from whence he sent an express to demand quarter, and to beg pardon for himself. The envoy said it was a sense of his fault that had excited Hussein his master to try by all means to gain the friendship of the officers of the emperor, that so the fire of war might be quench'd. But the traiterous Kei Cosru Catlani sent a private messenger to Hussein, advising him to trust no body, nor make any propositions of peace, but to prepare his army for battel, and march out of the town, because he wou'd join him with his Toman, and abandon Timur. Hussein rely'd on the perfidious Kei Cosru; he march'd out of the city with his troops, follow'd by a great many of the inhabitants in arms; and after having beat the kettle-drums, they rais'd a great cry, call'd Souroun, which is the signal for the battel to begin.

The army was rang'd in order on the banks of the river Caoun, two leagues from the capital of the kingdom. As the greatest part of Timur's troops were gone out in partys to plunder the provinces, there remain'd but few near this prince. Nevertheless he drew up as many as he had in order of battel; and having commanded 'em to beat the kettle-drums and sound the trumpets, he march'd against the enemy.

When

Book II. When he came within sight of 'em, he encamp'd on the bank of the Caoun, which separated the two armys. When they were ready to fight, Apatchikelte, Pechai, and Socar Dgiorgatou rush'd with their horses into the water, and cross'd the river, and the enemys attack'd 'em briskly. Cheik Ali Behader, with five others, also cross'd the river: he fell furiously upon Coja Cheikzade, whom he put to flight. Catai Behader and Akitmur Behader did the same; and Eltchi Behader had follow'd their example, if he had not been drown'd in crossing the water.

Selduz, a famous hord of Tartars.

The invincible Timur wou'd also have pass'd the river, if the Cheik Mehemed Beyan Selduz had not oppos'd it, and spoke to him as follows: "Prince, it is now our business to "fight; your place is the throne, and it is "fit you shou'd take your rest." Immediately the Cheik spurr'd his horse into the water, from whence he got out again unhurt. The prince Aboulmoali, son of the Can of Termed, follow'd him; and these brave men who were skill'd in conquering, attack'd the enemy in several places, and repuls'd 'em even to the gate of the city, which they were constrain'd to enter. This oblig'd the victorious army to encamp round the walls; while the troops who had been making of inroads, return'd laden with spoils. Then the siege was resolv'd to be carry'd on in form, and all the passages of the town were block'd up against the enemy.

Hussein Sofi remain'd some time in the fortress, so full of remorse and chagrin, that finding no remedy for his ill fortune, he dy'd thro despair.

After his death his brother Yssouph Sofi was establish'd in his place.

CHAP.

CHAP. XI.

Timur makes peace with Yzouph Sofi, who succeeded Hussein; and demands in marriage the princess Canzade for the prince Gehanghir his eldest son.

YSOUPH[1] Sofi, not having committed those insolences which his brother Hussein had, on the princess of our prince, found the means of approaching him by supplication and obedience. His brother Ac Sofi, son of Yonghadai, had a daughter by his wife Chukur Bei, the daughter of an Usbec Can. The name of the young princess was Sevin Bei; but she was commonly call'd Canzade, that is, the daughter of a sovereign. The poets say, that since the time of Adam, there has not been born of the race of the Cans a virgin of so great a beauty, and that she had the genius of an angel, and the body of a fairy.

The great Timur believ'd so fine a lady the fittest match for his son Gehanghir[2], and that this marriage won'd be a certain omen of his future elevation to the sovereign power. This made him receive with pleasure those tokens of respect and submission which Yzouph Sofi gave him by his envoys.

Timur consented to the peace, on condition of the marriage. This Can esteem'd him-

[1] The same as Joseph. [2] That is, conqueror of the world, self

Book II. self fortunate; and as he accepted it with all imaginable satisfaction, he desir'd the emperor to prepare an equipage suitable to the grandeur of this princess, and told him he wou'd send her to his court as soon as the imperial orders shou'd be deliver'd him.

The affair being concluded in this manner, hatred and discord were chang'd into peace and perfect friendship. The imperial army march'd home out of the country of Yfouph Sofi; and as soon as Timur arriv'd at the place of his residence, he immediately order'd that Kei Cosru Catlani shou'd be apprehended, and brought before the tribunal of criminals, and that the Emirs shou'd demand his prosecution.

This order was executed, his crimes were proved, and his intrigues with Hussein Sofi examin'd into; and being convicted, he was carry'd bound to Samarcand, and delivered into the hands of the officers of the Emir Hussein, who put him to death, to revenge the murder of that prince: and the emperor gave the Toman of the province of Catlan[a] to Mehemed Mireke, son of Chir Behram, a relation of Kei Cosru.

Timur pass'd the winter in the enjoyment of honors and pleasures; and he particularly employ'd his time in rendring justice, and doing good to his subjects.

---

[a] Between the Gihon and the kingdom of Bedakchan. It has a city of the same name.

CHAP.

CHAP. XII.

Timur marches a second time into the kingdom of Carezem.

WE read in the last chapter of the Alcoran, call'd Souret Ennas, that we ought to beseech God to keep us from the conversation of malicious men, as much as from the temptation of the devil; because the company of wicked persons is the principal cause of the corruption of the world, as we see in the following relation.

When Kei Cosru Catlani was apprehended, his son Sultan Mahmoud departed from the court with Abou Ishac, son of Keder Yesouri *, and Mahmoucha Bocari; and retir'd to Ysouph Sofi at Carezem. They spoke publickly in an assembly, where he was to promote sedition, corrupt this prince, and make him break the union he had contracted with Timur, which they did with so much cunning, that Ysouph dar'd to violate the treaty he had enter'd into.

* Yesouri a hord of Tartars.

In autumn he made inroads into the country of Cat, which he laid waste, and dispers'd the greatest part of the inhabitants; but he did not consider the crime of which he was guilty, in breaking treatys so soon.

When the winter was over, in the month of Ramadan of the year 774. which answers to the year of the Ox, the emperor assembled all the troops of the countrys of Nakcheb, Kech, and without the city of Carschi [4]; and when

An. Dom. 1372.

[4] Carschi is a city, and Nakcheb is its country; which are often taken for one another; as is also Nesef.

they

Book II. they were ready, he march'd towards Carezem; and as soon as he had pass'd the sandy desart, Ysouph Sofi was overcome by his fear of Timur's approach. He then repented of the fault he had been guilty of, and sought all means imaginable to obtain pardon. He made use of intercessors to Timur; and at length, after having renew'd the treaty, consented to prepare a pompous and magnificent equipage, suitable to the grandeur of the princess Canzade, who had not the least hand in her uncle's crime, and promis'd to send her forthwith.

Timur, who was of a merciful temper, dispatch'd letters of pardon, and at the same time disbanded his army, and return'd to the city of Samarcand, which was the residence of the imperial throne. After which he gave orders that preparations shou'd be made for the marriage.

CHAP. XIII.

The famous embassy from Timur to the king of Carezem, to demand the princess Canzade.

An. Dom. 1373. IN the month of Chawal in the year 775, which answers to the year of the Leopard, spring being come, Timur sent to Carezm the illustrious prince Tadghiar Berlas his relation, and who sprang from Lala son of Carachar Noyan, and the Emirs Daond and Ozmin Olzdgid Ioun. These princes departed with presents worthy of their emperor, to demand the illustrious princess Canzade, and to conduct her to Samarcand.

Ysouph

Yſouph Soſi, at their arrival, gave 'em a magnificent reception, and paid 'em all imaginable civilitys; their entry was pompous, and he neglected nothing which might ſhew the reſpect he bore to 'em. Chap. 13.

They behav'd themſelves in like manner towards him, with all the kindneſs which con'd be expected from 'em: they offer'd the preſents they had brought, which where gold mony, rubys, musk, amber, velvet, gold and ſilver brocades, ſilk, China ſatins, and other curious ſtuffs; veſſels of the gold of Cathai adorn'd with precious ſtones, magnificent habits, women ſlaves, and the finest horſes.

Yſouph Soſi, after having made a magnificent feaſt, and treated the ambaſſadors like emperors, accompany'd Canzade a great part of the way, and ſent her to Timur with an attendance worthy the greateſt princeſs. He preſented her for her portion a very rich crown, and a throne of gold, bracelets, ear-rings, necklaces, girdles of gold, [illegible] ſtones, [illegible] rings, boxes and coffers full of emeralds, rubys, pearls, clothes and furniture in boxes, with locks of gold; beſides ſeveral magnificent beds, canopys, pavilions, tents with one and many pillars; and alſo with furniture of ſeveral ſorts, ſufficient to fill many caravans.

The ambaſſador ſent an expreſs poſt to Samarcand, to let the emperor know they were at ſome diſtance from the capital; who being informa'd of it, reſolv'd to give a magnificent reception to Canzade. For this reaſon he order'd Corthac Catoun, wife of Caidu Can, and all the other ladys, as well as the princes and Emirs, to receive her with all the honour usual on the like occaſion, and particularly to wait on her at her entry.

On

Book II. On this order all the great lords went to meet her, and shew'd an extraordinary joy, sprinkling on her head abundance of gold and precious stones.

The air was fill'd with the most odoriferous smells, and the ways cover'd with carpets and brocades. The Cherifs, Cadis, doctors or Moullas, and the Imams, with all the principal officers of the empire, went to pay their devoirs to her, while every one pray'd to God for her prosperity. Then they made their compliments, according to the orders given; and every day there were sumptuous feasts and fresh marks of magnificence.

She was every where entertain'd with plays, and had presents made her of perfumes: the ground was cover'd with the most beautiful flowers; and as the people were fill'd with pleasure, because of the peace and security they enjoy'd from the justice and clemency of the emperor, all imaginable grandeur and magnificence appear'd among 'em in token of the joy they receiv'd from the presence of so glorious a princess. But this scene of pleasures and grandeur shone with brighter lustre in Samarcand than in any other place, this imperial city being adorn'd with all imaginable pomp; in so much that every thing there was surprizing, and melancholy was entirely banish'd thence, as well as from all the other parts of the empire.

Plays and diversions reign'd thro all the city; every place partook of these pleasures, and musick charm'd the ears of all.

The princess's bed, as beautiful as that of Caidafa [5], the queen of the Amazons, was en-

[5] She resided at Berdaa, capital of the kingdom of Aran, sixty two leagues distant from Teflis, capital of Georgia.

rich'd

rich'd with celestial graces and blessings. In fine, the magnificence of this happy entry rais'd the city to so great a pitch of glory, that it caus'd a jealousy where the queen [illegible] had reign'd.

Chap. 13.

The marriage of the prince Gehanghir with the princess Sevin Bei, surnam'd Canzade.

THE officers of the emperor's houshold began to make all necessary preparations for celebrating the nuptials. An infinite number of canopys, tents, pavilions, curtains, carpets, magnificent beds were got ready; a particular pavilion was erected for the emperor, the favorites and great lords, the cieling of which, in form of a cupola, appear'd like a heaven full of shining stars; the outside seem'd cover'd with gold, and the inside was enrich'd with precious stones; the ring and ball at top [illegible] and surrounded with [illegible] wherein the marriage was to be consummated, was parted by a curtain of gold brocade.

The emperor sat on a rich throne, plac'd in the imperial tent, and was so magnificently dress'd that he resembled the sun. Several kings, princes, and Emirs of the army came to the porte[7], to partake of the general joy; and every one indulg'd himself in pleasures.

The emperor Timur appear'd further magnificent by his great liberality. He had order'd

[7] Porte in the oriental language signifys court.

[8] The name of the queen of Saba, who came to visit Solomon.

Book II. many apartments to be fill'd with curious pieces of gold, precious stones, vests, and other apparel: he made so great presents to all the court, that there was every day one of these apartments empty'd.

In the midst of all this pomp and pleasure the emperor commanded the most learned astrologers and expert philosophers to assemble together, and examine the state of the heavens. They punctually executed this order; and after having observ'd all the circumstances, and made choice of the happy moment, in a private apartment in presence of the great lords of the kingdom, they ty'd the nuptial knot *, and got ready the contract of marriage between the princess and the Mirza Gehanghir, according to the custom of the Mahometans; then they saluted the marry'd couple, and sprinkled over their heads abundance of pearls and precious stones: and when night was come, which resembled the night of Cadre †, and which was the most considerable and glorious that had happen'd for an hundred years before; the prince and princess retir'd into the secret chamber, where the marriage was happily consummated. This great feast was celebrated in the year of the Hegira 775.

* Nekiah.

An. Dom. 1373. Mog. The Leopard.

† The night of Cadre is that in which (as the Mahometans imagine) God sent to Mahomet the first chapter of the Alcoran by the angel Gabriel.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIV.

Timur marches a third time into the country of the Getes.

ON the first day of the month of Chaban, in the year of the Hegira 776, Timur march'd at the head of his army for Gete. When he was encamp'd at Rebat Caran, it was exceedingly cold, the sun disappear'd, and [illegible] snow fell, that the tempestuous weather made the soldiers unfit for service, so that they cou'd take no care of their horses, their own lives being in danger. This occasion'd the death of many of the men, as well as of the horses.

An. Dom. 1374. Mog. The Hare.

Timur sensibly afflicted at this misfortune, order'd his army to decamp from Rebat, and return to Samarcand, where he staid two months, [illegible]

In the month of [illegible] which was the beginning of the year of the Hare, he resolv'd to bring his army into the field, and march against the Getes.

He sent his son Mirza Gehanghir at the head of the vanguard, accompany'd by the Cheik Mehemed Beyan Selduz, who commanded the squadron of the prince's guard, and by Adel-Sah son of Behram Gelair, to whom he had given the hord of Gelair after his father's death.

When they had got beyond Seiram, and were arriv'd at Jarom[1], they seiz'd on a man whom

[1] A town of Gete.

Book II. they sent to Timur to be examin'd. They ask'd him where Camareddin, the prince of the hord of Ouglat, was. He told 'em he had rais'd an army, and was encamp'd in a place nam'd Gheuk Toupa, or the blue hill, where he waited for Hadgi Bei, not at all expecting Timur's army. Upon which the prince immediately order'd the vanguard to hasten their march thither, resolving himself to follow with all expedition.

Camareddin, on advice of it, retreated with his troops into an inaccessible place, thinking himself not safe where he was encamp'd. The place he had retir'd to was call'd Birkei Gouri*, where are three defiles of mountains extremely steep, and three great rapid rivers. Camareddin cross'd two of the defiles with his army, and encamp'd in the third, after having made entrenchments and barricades in the way.

* The basson of the Gouris.

But the prince Gehanghir, having an army compos'd of men who understood the art of war, resolutely march'd at their head, and at the sound of kettle-drums attack'd the enemy. When a great many of these unfortunate men were slain with arrows, they fell upon the rest, sword in hand, till night came on, when they fled. The next morning our brave men not finding any of the Gerés in the camp, vigorously pursu'd 'em; and at sun-rise Timur coming up with the rest of the army, sent the Emirs Daoud, Hussein, and Outchcara Behadur, to endeavor to overtake 'em. These captains swam along the stream of the river Abesse; but Hussein fell into the water, and was drown'd. When the others were got upon the enemys lands, they pillag'd their goods, par-

don'd the cantons, which submitted, took away their arms, and sent 'em to Samarcand. Chap. 14.

Timur went to Bairac, with design to destroy the enemy, and sent the Mirza his son with a great army to give Camareddin battel, and seize on his person. The prince departed, according to order, at the head of his troops, and rain'd the cantons of the Getes which were in Outch Ferman. They found Camareddin in the mountains, pursu'd him, drove him out of his country, and made him abandon his troops; they ravag'd all those parts, raz'd his palaces, and among other ladys, seiz'd on the wife of prince Chamseddin[1], nam'd Bouian Aga, and on his daughter Dilchadaga. Gehanghir sent an express to inform the emperor his father of it, who had staid fifty three days at Bairac.

When he receiv'd this news, he departed from the camp, and ascended a mountain call'd Cara Casmac, where Gehanghir, at his arrival, kiss'd the emperor's feet, and presented him with camels, horses, and a great quantity of other spoils; after which he procur'd for the princess Dilchadaga the honor of saluting the emperor.

Timur quitted this camp, went to Atbachi, and thence to the country of Arpaiazi, where he staid some days to refresh himself. Mobarekshah Mecrit[2], who commanded a thousand men in this country, and was one of Timur's oldest friends, testify'd his respect so much by divertisements and feasts, that he entirely gain'd

[1] Or rather Camareddin, king of the Getes or Moguls.

[2] Mecrit was one of the most antient nations of the Moguls in Genghiz Can's time.

Book II. the heart of this prince; and so truly attach'd himself to Timur's interest, that he gave to his son Codadad, as a particular favor, the government of Salar Aglen and of Hussein, who dy'd this campaign.

CHAP. XV.

Timur's marriage with the princess Dilchanda, daughter of Camareddin king of the Getes. Timur is in danger of losing his life by a conspiracy which he narrowly escap'd.

TIMUR, excited by a verse of the Alcoran, wherein God permits men to marry four wives, resolv'd to espouse the princess Dilchanda.

The officers of the court prepar'd entertainments and other diversions, that nothing might be wanting in the feast. Wine, concerts of musick, and whatever might contribute to the heightning the pleasure of so signal and happy an action, according to the exact observation of astrologers, were in abundance at the camp. There was a numerous assembly; and at length this great monarch, following the custom of his ancestors, took for his wife this charming and virtuous princess.

The time of rejoicing being ended, he decamp'd; having march'd by Yam Daban, he went to encamp at Uzkunt, whither the princess Cotluc Turcan Aga, Timur's eldest sister, came. She departed from Samarcand, accompany'd by the princes, Emirs and officers of her houshold: she had the honor to salute the em-

emperor, and make her presents to him: and then she partook of the diversions of the court. Chap. 15.

Adelchah son of Beiram Gelair, pretending himself a faithful servant to the prince, gave him a splendid entertainment, presented him with fine horses, and render'd him all imaginable civilitys. But these were only testimonys of a feign'd friendship; for he had another design in his heart, which was to have surpriz'd Timur during the solemnity of the feast: but this prince, who was under the divine protection, having observ'd many marks of his [illegible] found out the treason by the [illegible] of the conspirators. The strong conjectures he had of it, caus'd him to leave the assembly, and take horse to return to the camp.

Mehemed Beyan Selduz [a], Adelchah Gelair, and Turcan Erlat, had resolved to seize on his person; but as they cou'd find no opportunity of doing it, his good fortune turn'd the hate [illegible] into grief and despair; and this monarch [illegible] perfect health to his capital city.

Then he gave leave to the troops to retire to their quarters; and pass'd the winter at Zendgir Serai [b], two leagues west from Carschi.

During this winter, Adelchah and the other conspirators having a sense of their fault, came to court, and confess'd their crime. Timur having learnt the circumstances, politickly pretended to have known nothing of it, and at the same time highly caress'd Adelchah.

---

[a] The families of Selduz, Gelair, and Erlat, were the chief among the Mogals in Genghiz Can's time.

[b] A castle and pleasure house.

Book II.

Winter being past, the troops were commanded to get together, in order, as was pretended, to make war on Carezem. The princes and Emirs readily march'd out of all the provinces; and as soon as they were arriv'd at the imperial city, Timur order'd that the Cheik Mehemed Beyan Selduz shou'd be apprehended and prosecuted. And as at his examination his crime was fully prov'd, he was put into the hands of Herimulc Selduz his relation, whose brother he had unjustly slain; and this man reveng'd himself upon him, by putting him to death.

Death of Mehemed Beyan Selduz.

Ali Dervich and Mehemed Dervich, being equally guilty, were also put to death; and Timur gave the government of the Toman of Selduz, to the brave Kurbur Behader.

CHAP. XVI.

Timur marches a third time to Carezem, and returns on the revolt of Sar Bouga and Adelchah.

An. Dom. 1375.

IN the beginning of the spring of the year of the Hegira 777, which answers to that of the crocodile, Timur's good fortune, and his wise conduct in foreseeing the success of affairs, caus'd him to resolve on a journey to Carezem, his valor making him to prefer the fatigues of war before quiet and repose. He left the Emir Acbouga governor of Samarcand, and sent into the country of Gete the Emirs Sar Bouga, Adelchah Gelair, Catai Behader, Eltchi Bouga, and other commanders of thousands, with thirty thousand horse; and enjoin'd them to use all their efforts and care in search of Camereddin, with

with orders to put him to death wherever they shou'd find him. Chap. 26.

On the other hand, he march'd, with the imperial standard, [illegible] army towards Carezem; being at a place call'd Sepaye, situate on the bank of the Gihon, he saw Turcan Biriat, who came from the other side of this river at the head of his troops, and seem'd willing to join our camp; but having some apprehension and foresight of his death, he immediately return'd to his bond near Corcouan. Timur order'd a captain named Poulad to pursue him with some troops, [illegible] day and night; who having [illegible] by Andcoud, overtook him at [illegible], on the bank of the Sihon. Turcan and his brother Turmich won'd not give ground, but resisted 'em. Our men receiv'd 'em with bravery, and both sides fought like lions; but at length the enemys gave way, were defeated, and constrain'd to fly. The victorious army pursu'd 'em; Poulad alone overtook Turcan, who [illegible] cut off, and struck down [illegible] and as he was [illegible] to get up, but it went thro his cap without wounding him. Poulad rush'd on him with violence, so that they struggled a long time, till at length Poulad having flung Turcan on the ground, cut off his head, crying out, *Long live Timur*; and he answer'd with great joy. Aman Serbedal, who had been sent after Turmich the brother of Turcan, also fix'd on him and slew him. So the heads of these two brothers were laid at the foot of the throne.

---

[1] The same town as Otrar.

Among

Book II. Among the Emirs whom Timur had sent to Gete, Sar Bouga and Adelchah, finding the country not in a condition to resist them, form'd a design to revolt, and conspir'd with Cara-Beliader, Eltchi Bouga, and Hamdi, whom Timur had left governor of Antecan [a]. They got together their hords of Gelair and Capchac, and march'd towards Samarcand, which they besieg'd; but the inhabitants defended themselves so valiantly with their arrows and darts, that they were oblig'd to raise the siege. Acbouga governor of the place wrote to Timur, who had already march'd by the town of Cat, concerning the siege: this he was arriv'd at Khas when he receiv'd the news, he immediately return'd, and having given the command of the vanguard to his son the Mirza Gehanghir, whom he order'd to march'd with all expedition, he followed him with the rest of the army.

As soon as he was come to Bocara, he rang'd all the troops in order of battel, and went to encamp at Rebat Malek. Mirza Gehanghir overtook the enemy in a place call'd Kermina; each party put their troops in order, kettle-drums were heard on all sides, and the fight began. After a brave engagement the prince was victorious; the enemy run away in disorder; the confederates retir'd into the deserts of Capchac, and fled for refuge to [b] Ourous Can, and the officers who escap'd out of the battel listed themselves in his service.

Timur after this victory return'd to Samarcand, and divided the hord of Gelair, with his land

[a] A town of Zagatai on the frontiers of Turkestan, long. 103. lat. 43.

[b] Emperor of Capchac, descended from Toutchi Can, son of Genghiz Can.

and

and demesns, among the princes who remain'd faithful to him; and made the prince Omar Cheik his second for governing Andecan.

Sar Bouga and Adelchah remain'd in the service of Ourous Can; but the spirit of rebellion again exciting 'em. They laid hold on an opportunity when Ourous Can was gone to a pleasure-house, to fly from his court: and thro their natural ingratitude, slew Ourchibi lieutenant of this Can, and then came to the country of Gete to Camareddin, whom they persuaded to join 'em in [illegible]

CHAP. XVII.

Timur's fourth expedition to the kingdom of the Getes.

WHEN Sar Bouga and Adelchah had met [illegible] they did not cease to [illegible] having persuaded him to join them, he brought an army into the field, and march'd to the country of Andecan, where the Hezare of Coudac abandon'd prince Omar Cheik, and came over to the enemy. Omar Cheik fortify'd himself in the mountains, and sent a man nam'd Dachmend to the emperor, to inform him that the enemy with a great army had entirely ruin'd Andecan; and moreover he gave him an account of all that had happened. This news so incens'd Timur, that he immediately march'd towards Gete; of which Camareddin having advice, retir'd from the place he was in, and commanded his houshold and horde to leave Atbachi, whilst he remain'd in ambuscade with four thousand horse.

Timur

 Timur coming to that place, ignorant of the snare Camareddin had laid, sent his Emirs with all the army in pursuit of the enemys. Five thousand of the most valiant men were conducted by the Emirs Muaid, Catai Behader, and Cheik Ali Behader, who consulted how they shou'd proceed in the destruction of the enemys, and concluded only to perform actions of bravery. Upon which they march'd, and so there remain'd no more than two hundred men with the emperor.

Camareddin being inform'd of this, laid hold on the opportunity, and briskly sally'd out of the ambuscade with his four thousand men sword in hand, and fell upon Timur; but Timur remembring the passage of the Alcoran, *How often have few troops vanquish'd great armies thro the assistance of God?* was neither troubled nor afraid; but on the contrary encourag'd his soldiers by this short speech: "Victory is the gift of God, "and a multitude of soldiers don't always gain "the advantage: my friends, we must fight like "brave men; the least cowardice on our side "will make us lose the day, for in the present "conjuncture we are oblig'd to risque every "thing."

He had no sooner ended his speech, than he spur'd his horse against the enemys; he enter'd into the field of battel, and on every side laid about him with his sword and battle-ax, turning himself wherever occasion presented; every attack he overthrew those who oppos'd him, and spilt abundance of blood: he penetrated even into the heart of the army. Thus this valiant emperor, with his lance, war-club, sabre and net, defeated many of the enemys, and led captive their generals.

In

In short, this prince, being oblig'd to expose his person, behav'd himself with so much bravery, that nothing [illegible] resistance cou'd excite such [illegible] his soldiers bravely [illegible] him, and in that battel did all that could be expected from the consummate valor of the most dauntless heroes: in fine, notwithstanding their small number, they defeated four thousand valiant men, who were fill'd with a desire of revenge; which cou'd not have been accomplish'd by human strength alone, but by God himself, who was pleas'd to give the victory to this great prince.

Chapter [illegible]

Prophetic visions of 46 sorts, according to the Mahometans.

Timur imagin'd one night in a dream he saw the face of Cheik Burhaneddin Clitch, in one of those visions which are esteem'd prophetic, and are of forty six kinds. He dreamt, that being in the presence of this holy man, with great respect he humbly beg'd of him to pray to God for his dear son the Mirza Gehanghir, whom he had left sick: and the Cheik answer'd him, *Be with God*; [illegible] his son. [illegible] not so well as he wishes, [illegible] he was so disquieted that he order'd his secretary of state, nam'd Poul Coliac, to depart with all haste from Sencghul to bring him word how he was. When this man was departed, Timur had another strange dream relating to his son, which very much encreas'd his melancholy: he thereupon said to the Emirs and officers, "I believe I [illegible] entirely parted from my son, hide not from me the condition he is in." They all fell on their faces, and swore they knew nothing concerning him.

In the mean time he decamp'd, and met Cazaredin at Senghezgange; gave him battel, and the latter was again defeated and constrain'd

Book II. strain'd to fly. The Emir Outchcara pursu'd him closely, and after a long pursuit oblig'd him to return immediately with eight men only. Being surrounded by many of our soldiers, his horse was kill'd by their arrows, and himself wounded in divers places, insomuch that he cou'd scarcely get away on foot. Poulad also in the fight had an arrow shot into his hand; and in their return a place was by chance set on fire, this lord fatigu'd himself so much in endeavouring to extinguish it, that the sickness occasion'd by his wound encreasing, procur'd his death.

CHAP. XVIII.

The death of Mirza Gehanghir, Timur's eldest son.

TIMUR, being return'd from Aracania and having cross'd the Sihon, that is, the Jaxartes, arriv'd at his imperial city of Samarcand, where all the great lords of the empire, the Cheriffs and others, were cloth'd in black and blue garments; they wept bitterly, cover'd their heads with dust in token of sorrow, beat their breasts, and rent themselves according to custom, and then went to meet the emperor in great haste.

All the inhabitants with their heads uncover'd, and with sackcloth and black felt about their necks, and their eyes bedew'd with tears, came out of the city, filling the air with crys and lamentations. "What a pity is it, say they, "that the pious and just conqueror Gehanghir, "appear'd only as a rose, which is blown away "by the wind! What pity is it that death hath

"thus cast into the grave this prince, who Chap. II.
"cou'd so easily bring his designs to perfec-
"tion!"

As soon as [illegible] had observ'd the general consternation, he no longer doubted of the death of his son, which his imagination had already represented to him.

Every thing then became melancholy and disagreeable to him, and his cheeks were almost always bath'd in tears; he cloth'd himself with mourning, and his life became uneasy to him. The whole kingdom, which us'd to be overjoy'd at the arrival of the great emperor, was turn'd into a place of sorrow and weeping.*

All the army, cloth'd in black and blue, sat down in token of their grief; the greatest lords cover'd their heads with dust, their eyes flow'd, if one may so say, with tears of blood, and their hearts were pierc'd with the deepest grief.

Tho the emperor was affected in an extraordinary manner with the loss of his son; yet when he [illegible] the destruction of all beings [illegible] man of eternal duration, and that every thing which belong'd to God must return to him again, he found some consolation in his grief, and at the same time perform'd several acts of piety for the repose of his son's soul, as endowments and publick works: he prepar'd, as usual, funeral repasts and banquets, in which the poor were treated; and he distributed other alms among 'em.

The body of the deceas'd prince was carry'd to Kech, where he was bury'd, and a magnificent mausoleum erected for him. He lived twenty years, and left two sons, one of whom was call'd the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, born of

Book II. of the princess Canrade; and the other, the Mirza Mir Mahomed son of the princess Bactimulki Aga, daughter of Elias Yesouri, born forty days after the death of the prince Gehanghir, which happen'd in the year of the Hegira 777, which answers to the year of the Crocodile.

An. Dom. 1375.

Seifeddin Berlas had no sooner heard of this misfortune, than he became averse to all worldly things, and besought the emperor to permit him to pass the remainder of his life at Hudgeaz *, in the sacred place of Mecca.

CHAP. XIX.

Timur's fifth expedition against the Getes.

THE emperor was so affected at the death of his son, that he laid aside all thoughts of public affairs; but the principal Emirs and princes of the blood assembled before the throne, and kiss'd the ground. They represented to him, that as the wisdom of God had made the good order of the world dependent on the absolute power he had given to sovereigns, to maintain their people in peace; so, if his great heart was resolv'd to please the Divine being, he cou'd think on no better means of doing it, than by rendring justice to his subjects, since the wisest of men, Mahomet, hath said, "That he prefer'd the fruits of one hour employ'd in rendring justice, to sixty or seventy years spent in divine worship."

---

* A province of Arabia.

Timur gave serious attention to what these princes said, being fully persuaded that it flow'd from a sincere affection to him; he therefore began to [illegible] to the affairs of the empire, and immediately order'd the army to get ready to march. Chap. 19.

At the same time advice was brought that Adelchah Gelair was in the mountains of Caradgic, accompany'd with few persons: which caus'd Timur to send Berat Coja Kukeltach, and Eltchi Fouga, with fifteen horse only, to endeavor to find him. They departed from Samarcand in the evening, and continu'd their march every night till they arriv'd at the town of Ketrac, where they chose the fittest men to go into the mountain in search of this rebel, whom they found in a place nam'd Acfouma, where they seiz'd on him, and put him to death according to law. Death of Adelchah Gelair.

Acfouma is a tower built on the top of the mount Caradgic, a place design'd for a guard to the country, because one may observe from [illegible] the plains of Capchac. Sir Bonga, who had also been disobedient and revolted, repented of his faults, and return'd to court after two years absence. The emperor pardon'd him, and gave him the government of his own people, that is, the hord of Gelair.

Soon after Mirza Omar Cheik, Emir Acfouma, Catai Behader, and the other Emirs received orders to march against Camareddin, and to use all their efforts to subdue him. These Emirs departed from court, and made

[1] Formerly call'd Farab, upon the Sihon, long. 98 [illegible] lat. 44. a frontier town between Zagatai and Capchac.

Book II. such haste that they met him at the borders of the country of Couraton[a], where they gave him battel, and struck such terror into his troops, that they fled in disorder, after the example of their general; and soon after the victorious army return'd laden with spoils and slaves, as usual.

CHAP. XII.

Timur's fifth expedition to the country of the Getes against Camareddin. Tocatmich Aglen, descended from Touschi, son of Genghiz Can, arrives at court, and puts himself under the protection of Timur.

THE troops were hardly upon their return, than Timur resolv'd to march in person into that country[b], the same year; and for this purpose Mehemed Bei, son of the Emir Moussa, a confident of the emperor, gave the command of the vanguard of the army to the Emir Abbas and Akitmur Behader, and sent 'em away according to the prince's orders.

These captains march'd day and night, and were so fortunate as to come up with Camareddin at Bougam Asigheul, where they put him to flight after a furious battel, and then ravag'd his country, and reduc'd his subjects to

[a] In the country of the Getes.

[b] Capchac, call'd by the Europeans the Grand Tartary, which contains all the country situate between lesser or Grim Tartary and Turkestan. This empire was given to Touschi Can, by his father Genghiz Can the conqueror of it, as his share.

obe-

obedience, and Timur himself afterwards pur-
su'd him as far as Cantchar.

At this place the emperor had advice that Tocatmich Aglen, nephew of Tojrous Can, had withdrawn himself from under his protection, and was coming over to him. Timur gave orders to Toumen Timur Uzbec [1], to take care of the ceremonys of his entry, to go and meet him, and load him with all the honors and caresses imaginable: which was punctually executed.

Timur then march'd towards Ouagoe, in order to return home: from thence he came to Ismaël, and continued his march towards Bucharia, where at length he fortunately arrived.

Toumen Timur brought thither Tocatmich Aglen, who was presented to Timur by the principal lords of his court. He shew'd abundance of joy at his return, and did not forget any of the ceremonys and honors which a prince of Timur's birth could expect; for [illegible] which all sorts of [illegible] as well as his officers, so many presents, that it would be difficult to number 'em. They consisted of gold, precious stones, arms, habits, magnificent beds, rich stuffs, and a great deal of furniture, horses, camels, tents and pavilions, kettle-drums, standards, mares and slaves; and then he did him the honor of calling him his son.

[1] Uzbec land of Tartary.

[2] A town on the Sihon, frontier between Turkestan and Zagatai, long [illegible] in [illegible] call'd in the Arabian of Nubia, Adarcand and Udiana.

CHAP. XXI.

Timur gives Tocatmich Aglen the principality of Ortar and Sabran, and assists him in making himself master of the empire of Capchac, which he claim'd as his right; tho Ourous Can, descended from Genghiz Can, was in possession of it.

THE generous emperor gave the government of Sibiran, Orrar, and Saganac, Beltan, Sonj, and other towns of the empire of Capchac, to prince Tocatmich, who was no sooner establish'd there than Cotluc Bouga, family Ourous Can, [illegible] brought an army [illegible] against him. The desire which these princes had for signalizing was the reason that the armys were not long before they came to blows, and fought as if they were resolv'd to conquer or die.

Death of Cotluc Bouga. Defeat of Tocatmich Aglen.

Cotluc Bouga was kill'd by an arrow in the fight, nevertheless Tocatmich Aglen was defeated: the enemys plunder'd his country, and constrain'd him to quit his government, and to retire towards Timur, who receiv'd him with greater honor than at first, and after having order'd a new equipage to be made for him, and given him fresh troops, sent him away.

When Touctai Caya, eldest son of Ourous Can, heard that this prince was on his return

[1] Ourous Can gave the name to all Russia, of which he was sovereign.

to Sabran, he join'd many other princes of the race of Tonschi * Can, son of Genghiz Can, as also Ali Bei, and several Emirs, who resolv'd to retreat [illegible] Coclue Bouga on Tocatmich Aglen; the army they brought into the field was very numerous, and compar'd to pismires and grashoppers. In short, when Tocatmich Aglen had rang'd his army in order of battel in view of the enemy, the fight began, and the troops of this prince were put to flight: he himself fled to the banks of the river Sihon, where he threw himself into the water to save himself. He was pursued by Cazandgi Bolchmanbe, who shot an arrow wherewith he wounded his hand. When he had cross'd the river, he alone enter'd into a wood naked and wounded, and cast himself on the ground to get some rest: but he was soon relieved by Ardecou Berlas, an old expert captain, whom Timur had sent to give him his advice in the enterprize he was carrying on, and to instruct him [illegible] his own country.

[illegible] also as enter the wood, [illegible] which very much affected him: he sought for the person who was lamenting; and at length found Tocatmich naked and wounded, who was recover'd from a swoon he had a little before fallen into. After he had got off his horse, he comforted him as well as he was able; told him how much he was concern'd for his misfortune, and gave him somewhat to eat and drink, [illegible] a garment, such a one as scouts commonly carry, to serve on occasion in a jour-

Chap. 22.

Tocatmich Aglen, a second time defeated.

* Some authors call him Dgiondgi.

Book II. ny; he then took all possible care of him, and conducted him to Timur, who was encamp'd without Bocara when they arriv'd.

When Timur knew the condition Tocatmich was reduc'd to, he receiv'd him with all the clemency which so great an emperor was capable of shewing; and order'd another equipage to be made for him, as magnificent as either of the former.

In the mean while an Emir of the country of Toushi, nam'd Aideccou, of the tribe of Mangour, came from the court of Ourous Can to that of Timur, and brought advice that this prince had drawn his troops into the field, and was marching against the invincible emperor, and fought every where for Tocatmich. About this time also Emir Mangour and Touloudgian came to court in quality of ambassadors from Ourous Can, and made an harangue to the emperor, the substance whereof was as follows:

"Tocatmich has kill'd my son, and is fled "for refuge to you: you ought to deliver up "this prince, who is my enemy; if you re- "fuse to do it, I declare war against you, "and there remains nothing for us to do but "to meet in the field of battel."

Timur made this answer: "Tocatmich has "put himself under my protection, and I will "defend him. Return to Ourous Can, and tell "him, that I not only accept his challenge, but "my preparations are already begun, and my "valiant soldiers have no other employ than the "trade of war; they are lions, who instead "of living in forests, have their residence in "camps and armys."

CHAP.

CHAP. XXII.

Preparations for war. Timur brings an army into the field against Ourous Can, emperor of Capchac and Grand Russia.

As soon as the emperor Timur had dismiss'd the ambassadors of Ourous Can, he order'd the Emir Ali to make preparations for war, and to bring an army into the field; and the Emir Yakub to take care of the government of the royal city of Samarcand, during his absence.

War between the empires of Touchi and Zagatai.

The troops of the empire of Zagatai were soon got together, and Timur at their head, march'd to attack Ourous Can, towards the end of the same year of the Crocodile. They cross'd the Sihon, and encamp'd in the vast plain of Otrar.

Ourous Can, on his side, assembled all the troops of the empire of Touchi, march'd to Samarcand, twenty four leagues distant from Otrar. These vast armys being in sight, were ready to make great havock, when a prodigious cloud overshadow'd 'em, and shower'd down a prodigious quantity of rain and snow, which was follow'd with so excessive a cold, that the horses of the men and beasts lost all motion. This weather continu'd thus almost three months, during which time the armys were in view, and neither capable of action.

Timur could not quell the impetuosity of his courage; he was desirous to be in action, and commanded Caraï Behader and Mehemed Sultan Chah, who were retir'd from the court of

Book II. of the prince of Herat, and were attach'd to him, to march with all haste to attack the enemy during the night. Following this order, they took five hundred men with 'em to make inroads. They met Timur Melik Aglen, son of Ourous Can, with about three thousand horse. This rencounter happen'd late at night; but morning approaching, the battel began. Fear and valor had each of 'em a great share in this action, and the victory was a long time in suspence; but at length the troops of Timur gain'd it, as they were accustom'd; and the enemy was put to the rout. Eltchi Bouga was wounded in the hand, and the prince Timur Melik Aglen in the foot by an arrow; and two Yacek Timur and Catai Behader were both slain, the victorious troops return'd to the camp in triumph.

Defeat of the troops of Ourous Can.

Mehemed Sultan Chah had orders from the emperor to depart, that he might gain intelligence of the enemys, which he did; and brought to Timur a man whom he had seiz'd: the Emir Moubacher, who had receiv'd the like order, also brought another he had taken. Timur learnt from both of 'em, that the enemy had sent two of their bravest men, one nam'd Olough[3] Satkin, and the other Kutchuk[3] Satkin, with a hundred horse, to learn news of the state of our army. They were by chance met by Akitmur Behader and Alahdad, who came from Otrar, where they had distributed the victuals for the army. Akitmur, excited by the good fortune which never abandon'd the great Timur, march'd vigorously against 'em,

[3] Olough signifys eldest, and Kutchuk youngest.

and

and in the mean while to deceive them, made use of a warlike stratagem: he pretended to fly; and this motion of Timur gave fresh courage to the enemy, who were already advanc'd, but Akitmur soon after returning to the charge with his men, beat back their soldiers, who thought themselves conquerors, and entirely broke their ranks. Those who were not slain, fled, and hid themselves in pits and caverns of water. Kepektchi Wtchi, Akitmur's nephew, kill'd the young Satkin; and Indouchah seiz'd the eldest, whom he brought to Timur, who, for his services distinguish'd Indouchah from the other captives by particular favors. They had then advice that Ourous Can, despairing of his projects, was return'd home, and had left Karakesel in his place; which oblig'd Timur to march in person against the enemy; but as he found that Karakesel was also retir'd with his troops, he finish'd the campain, and return'd with his army to his camp near the city of Kech, where he died soon after.

Chap. 23.

CHAP. XXIII.

Timur's irruption into the country of Ourous Can: Tocatmich Aglen plac'd on the throne of the empire of Capchac, otherwise call'd the empire of Touchi Can.

As soon as the season wou'd permit the armies to be brought into the field, the invincible Timur took horse to make war on Ourous Can. He gave the conduct of his vanguard to Tocatmich, who likewise serv'd as a guide, and march'd day and night with so much expedition

Book II. dition, that in fifteen days and nights they arriv'd at Geiran Camich * a town of Capchac, the inhabitants of which he found asleep, having no notice of the march of our army. The town was pillag'd, and the soldiers brought away a great number of horses, camels, sheep and slaves; and, what was a further mark of Timur's good fortune, before this action Ourous Can died, as soon after did Touctа Caya his eldest son.

* That is, the reeds for deers.

Death of Ourous Can, and his son Touctа Caya, in 1376.

Timur immediately furnish'd Tocatmich Aglen with every thing requisite for government; and establish'd him sovereign in Capchac and the rest of the empire of Touchi: and after having prepar'd him an equipage worthy of an emperor, he left him in that kingdom. He also made him a present of the famous spotted horse named Conc Aglen, a horse of the finest metal and spirit, and which he greatly esteem'd for his extraordinary swiftness. And on making this present, he thus address'd him:

Elogium on Timur's favorite horse.

"This horse will serve you on several occasions: for you may easily overtake the enemy "when you pursue him; and no one will be "able to overtake you if you are oblig'd to "fly."

After this expedition, the emperor resolv'd to return to Samarcand; whereupon he left Capchac, and fortunately arriv'd at the heart of his empire, in the beginning of the year of the Serpent, and of the Hegira 778.

An. Dom. 1376.

But the affairs of Capchac did not long continue so quiet as he had left 'em: for soon after his return, he receiv'd advice that Timur Melik Aglen, son of Ourous Can, having fix'd himself on the throne of Touchi, had brought a powerful army into the field to make war on Tocatmich: in short, their armys came in view, and after several skirmishes, Tocatmich was

Timur Melik ascends the throne of Touchi, and defeats Tocatmich.

again

again intirely vanquish'd. Nevertheless, he sav'd himself from all dangers by means of the horse the emperor had presented him; yet all his troops were defeated, and he alone came to the court.

Timur, after his wonted goodness, again recruited his losses, and in the end of the year 778 sent him back to Saganac, guarded by several great Emirs, among whom were Toumen Uzbec, and his son Balti Ceja, Ozunkitmur, Cayaseddin Tercan, and Beski Gontchin, whom he order'd to re-establish him on the throne of the Cans. An. Dom. 1376.

These orders being obey'd, and plac'd Tocatmich Kans upon the throne in the city of Saganac, with all the ceremonys observ'd at the coronation of Cans; and according to custom they sprinkled upon him gold and precious stones.

CHAP. XXIV.

The birth of prince Charis, son and heir to the emperor Timur.

IN the middle of the same year of the Serpent, when the government of Timur seem'd to have arriv'd at the summit of its felicity, many of his officers bearing the titles of kings and Cans, there were compos'd several poems and other pieces on his prosperity. Some observ'd that this conqueror had for his courtiers none but kings; while others related to what a high degree God had gratify'd his desires, and how favorable fortune had been to him.

They

Book II. They read several passages of the Alcoran [a], which perfectly agreed with his good fortune; they thence foretold the birth of the son whom God wou'd give him, because of his virtues, and the justice with which he govern'd his subjects.

This charming infant was born in the city of Samarcand, the seat of his empire, on thursday the fourteenth of the month Rabilaker, in the year of the Hegira 779: and what most pleas'd the emperor was, that he saw in this beautiful and happy prince the continuation of his family, which shou'd remain in the possession of the empire to the end of time.

An. Dom. 1377.

In short, he discover'd an extraordinary joy at the moment Melrebane [b] his mother brought him into the world; and when he was presented to him, he knew by examining the features of his countenance, that the sun of his good fortune had already cast his rays upon this beloved infant.

He was brought up with great nicenels and care by the ladys of the seraglio; his body by degrees became of a proper size: they adorn'd his clothes with the finest oriental stones, and he had always held over his head a canopy of rich embroider'd velvet.

There is a prayer in the Mesnevi [c], which was made use of to beseech God that he wou'd be pleas'd to make the throne of Timur happy under the government of this young prince, that

[a] The Mahometans read the Alcoran as a book of prophecy, and pretend to find predictions in it.

[b] The surname of Serai Mulc, which signifies a well-doer.

[c] A celebrated book of Mahometan theology in verse, composed by Moullei Roum, chief of the sect of Derwishes, who always carry this book in their hands.

he wou'd render tributary to him the seven climates of the universe, and that at length he might become emperor of the whole world. Chap. 2.

The most learned astrologers, observing the situation of the heaven at the time of his birth, declar'd that this prince shou'd accomplish all his desires, and arrive without opposition to the highest pitch of grandeur and sovereignty. They explain'd in his favor all that astrology was able to teach men upon the horoscope and birth of a great prince: they reason'd on every thing which concern'd the planets and other stars, on their conjunctions and aspects, as far as they related to him, and laid stress on the agreement between their predictions and those of the Alcoran; the detail of which wou'd be too long and troublesom to the reader. This chapter having been compos'd only as an account of the august birth of the prince Charoc, we shall make no mention of his actions till the third book.

CHAP. II.

Timur sends Tocatmich Can to attack Timur Melik Can, emperor of Capchac.

THE first time that Tocatmich Aglen, after [illegible] having abandon'd Ourous Can, came to [illegible] himself under the protection of Timur, he was accompany'd by Orkitmur, to whom this emperor, in reward for his services, shew'd many favors, because in his absence Ourous Can had pillag'd his goods, and given his revenue to another. And when Tocatmich was defeated by Timur Melik, Orkitmur was made prisoner of war, and carry'd to Timur Melik, who gave him

Book II. him his life, and even his liberty. But some circumstances, this captain being in misery, cast himself at the feet of Timur Melik, and besought him to restore to him his lordship and troops, that he might be in a condition to serve him. Timur Melik refus'd it, and told him, he did not care whether he remain'd in his service or not. Then Orhitmur fled, tho it was winter, and came to seek protection from the great Timur: he had the honour to sit on the carpet of his throne at Samarcand, and to receive from him many peculiar favors; he gave him an account of Timur Melik's manner of living; that he spent both night and day in debauches; that he never rose till ten a-clock in the morning, when he allotted the one daytime to wake him whatever affairs of importance requir'd it; that his subjects had no longer any hopes of obtaining favor or protection from him; and that all their people of the empire of Tocatmich Can were very desirous of Tocatmich for their sovereign. The emperor therefore sent messengers to Tocatmich at Saganac, to advise him to march with all expedition to attack Timur Melik, who had pass'd the winter at Caratal. Tocatmich, in obedience to this order, brought an army into the field, and march'd against the enemy.

As soon as he came near Caratal, the armies were rang'd in order of battel; they fought, and thro the usual good fortune of our emperor, the Can Timur Melik was defeated, and Tocatmich Aglen at the same time took possession of the throne of his ancestors in the empire of Capchac, and immediately sent Ourous Ceja to carry the news of the victory to the great Timur.

This prince was so pleas'd at this news, that he spent many days in rejoyings, and to render the

the joy universal, he releas'd those who were in chains. He honor'd Ourous Coja with a vest and a gilt belt, and having made him a present of several jewels, sent him back to Tocatmich, furnishing him with horses and money for his journey.

Tocatmich Can return'd to Saganac, where he dwelt during winter, and as soon as the spring appear'd, rais'd a great army, and march'd towards the kingdom of Serar[1] and the country of Memac, which he again conquer'd.

His power encreas'd so considerably, that, thro the [illegible] which Timur had inspir'd in him, all the kingdom of Tocatmich Can was reduc'd to his obedience; and thus he follow'd this politick maxim, That he who is ambitious of greatness, shou'd associate himself with fortunate men, because prosperity is not to be acquir'd but from the star of them who enjoy it.

Embassy from the emperor Timur to Joseph Sofi king of Carazem.

WHILST Timur past the winter at Otrar, to observe Ourous Can, Yseph Sofi, king of Carazem, taking advantage of the absence of this prince, sent an army to Bocara, which ravag'd the country, and carry'd away all they cou'd find, without considering what might be the consequences of this irruption. This action oblig'd Timur to send Dgelaren to

---

[1] In Capdac, upon the Volga.

him

Book II. him in quality of ambassador, to acquaint him, that after having contracted an alliance with him, he thought it very strange that he shou'd commit hostilitys in the country of Bocara without any cause given.

The ambassador acquitted himself of his commission; but Yssouph Sofi gave orders that he shou'd be seiz'd, and put into prison; of which Timur being inform'd, order'd one of his secretarys to write to him about it.

This officer instead of ink used Gall-stone, to make the characters of the letter which was of silk, look more noble: he began with praising God, and with some considerations on the ordinary conduct of his providence with regard to princes. Then he let him know the maxim of princes, which was, to esteem the person of ambassadors sacred; which was the reason they were always exempt from death, and execution, if the sovereign, to whom they were sent, had any regard to the law of nations, and the ambassador had the prudence not to commit any considerable faults, and shou'd behave himself inoffensively: moreover, that whoever shall have a contrary opinion, fails in judgment; since it is remark'd in the Alcoran, that ambassadors are sacred, and only oblig'd to execute their masters orders: in short, that he shou'd rather have sent back the ambassador without abusing him; which if he did not, he wou'd soon be brought to repentance, and feel the effects of the most cruel vengeance ever mention'd in history.

When he had seal'd the letter, it was sent to Yssouph Sofi, who without consulting whether 'twas reasonable, put the messenger in irons; and was again so imprudent as to endeavor to kindle the war; for he sent Toui Bogai, surnam'd the robber, with a company of men of

his

his own stamp, to carry away the camels of the Turcomans, which he knew were then about Bocara.

During this year of the horse, the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin Berlas return'd from his journy to Mecca, and had the honor to salute the emperor, to whom he represented the state of the kingdoms of Iran [*], the governors of which had acted like absolute sovereigns.

In the same year also Timur was marry'd, according to the law of the prophet, to the princess Touman Aga, daughter of the Emir Moussa; and the sincere love he had for her was the reason that at her desire he adorn'd the city of Samarcand with many fine monuments; among the rest he built a pleasure-house without Samarcand towards the west; he also destroy'd the twelve gardens which were built in imitation of the twelve signs of the zodiac, in order to make them one. He order'd a magnificent pavilion, embellish'd with all possible ornaments, to be erected; insomuch that thinking this the most pleasant place in the world, he knew of no name which wou'd suit it better than that of Bagh-Behicht, the garden of paradise. Timur then went to pass the winter at Zendgir Serai.

---

* All the country between the rivers Oxus and Tigris; i. e. Persia and the neighbouring countrys.

CHAP. XXVII.

Timur's fourth war in Carezem: death of Joseph Sofi: conquest of that kingdom.

JOSEPH, or Youseph Sofi, Can of Carezem, excited by his pride, won'd keep no correspondence with Timur, but imprudently committed several rash actions. This boldness gave cause to Timur to revenge himself, and get ready an army to make war on Carezem; which happen'd in the month of Chawal in the year of the Hegira 780, which answers to the beginning of the year of the Sheep, when the sun enters into Pisces. Thus having passed the winter in the quarters of Zendgir Seral, he began his march, and arriv'd at the frontiers of Carizme or Carezem.

An. Dom. 1376.

His army invested the town of Eskiskiz. The general at the same time caus'd the kettle-drums to be beat, and the soldiers made the usual cry which is call'd Souroun: they built a fortress over-against the town for greater security; made entrenchments on all sides, and fortify'd 'em, and every morning fail'd not of making the great cry.

Partys went out, according to the orders given 'em, to pillage the territory of Carezem on every side, from whence they brought away all sorts of booty: they ravish'd the handsomest virgins in the country, made many slaves, and carry'd away all the horses, camels and sheep they cou'd meet with.

In the mean time Joseph Sofi thought proper to write the following letter to the emperor:

"How

"How long shall the world suffer persecution Chapter.
"and ruin for the sake of two men only? and
"how many thousands of Musulmans shall pe-
"rish thro' their quarrel? It would be better
"that we met alone in a particular field, and
"prove our valor; for then trusting in the di-
"vine assistance, we shall know in whose favor
"fortune and heaven will declare."

Timur was pleas'd in that Joseph Sofi had sent such a letter to him; and said it was what he most earnestly desir'd. He therefore order'd his arms immediately to be brought him: he put on his light cuirass which he had made, girded on his sword, hung his buckler on his arm; and in this posture, with the imperial helmet on his head, march'd towards the town. The princes and Emirs of the court cast themselves at his feet, and told him it was not reasonable so great a monarch shou'd fight a duel: but he had no regard to their speeches, and continu'd his way. Hadgi Seifeddin Berlas, full of affection to him, which transported him beyond all bounds, took hold of the horse's bridle, to drive it towards the apartments of the emperor: he cast himself at his knees, and told him he ought not to be guilty of exposing his royal person, and fighting as a private man, when he had so many officers. "If the emperor, said he, shou'd fight duels, what need is there of so many brave warriors?" Timur wrathfully reprimanded Seifeddin, and drew his sword to strike him: but the Emir quitted the bridle, and retir'd. The prince trusting entirely in God, went alone to the borders of the ditch of the city: he cried with a loud voice, that Joseph Sofi might know he was come, to answer the challenge, and keep his promise; and that he ought to meet him,

Book II. that he might see to whom God wou'd give the victory. Fear seized Joseph Sofi, who repented; and was not as good as his word. Timur cried out again; and to excite Joseph, told him that death rather than life was his due, who broke his word; he said many other things to shame him, and oblige him to come into the field: but Joseph prefer'd life before his honor, and was so abash'd that he cou'd make no answer. Timur waited a long time; but at length having no answer, return'd to his camp, where the bravest admir'd his intrepidity.

About this time there were brought from Termed to Timur the first melons of the year: his natural goodness made him resolve to send some of 'em to Joseph Sofi, supposing it wou'd be thought uncivil if he did not let that prince partake of 'em, seeing he was so near him; wherefore he order'd some of 'em to be carry'd to him in a bason of gold. The Emirs told him a bason of wood might serve; but the emperor wou'd not suffer it, and they were carry'd in a bason of gold to the borders of the ditch. They demanded from the wall what there was in the bason; the bearer answer'd that there were some new melons which the emperor had sent to Joseph Sofi, and then he return'd: some of the besieg'd took the bason, and carry'd it to the Can, who thro his want of sense, order'd the melons to be cast into the ditch, and gave the bason to the porter of the town.

After this action one of his generals nam'd Hadgi sally'd out at the head of a good number of troops, who were of the bravest warriors of Carezem; but the Mirza Omar, with his officers and soldiers, fell upon 'em with their swords drawn,

drawn, and swam over the water. This action kindled the war on all sides: at length there was a general fight; all the field of battel was cover'd with deadbodies, and look'd like a mountain of slaughter'd men, as well on one side as the other, and the combat did not end till night: in it we saw perform'd actions of the utmost valor; but at length the army of Carezem tir'd with fighting, thought it advisable to fly and enter the town.

Eltchi Bouga, and Anoucherouan son of Acbouga, having distinguish'd themselves by an extraordinary valor, were wounded; of whom the former was heal'd, and the latter died.

Timur gave orders for the siege to begin; the army was employ'd in placing the battering rams, and playing them against the walls; and the machines design'd to cast millstones and other stones, were made use of with such success, that the castle of Joseph Sofi was nearly ruin'd: and fear seizing him he was oblig'd to go for shelter to some other place.

The siege continu'd three months and sixteen days, during which time the marks of victory daily appear'd on Timur's side; and the distempers of the mind, which are astonishment, fear, inquietude, affliction, anger and envy, seiz'd on Joseph Sofi with so great violence, that at length falling sick, he lost all courage and died, bewailing his misfortune.

This event was esteem'd the most considerable of any that had happen'd to Timur, since the prediction was fulfill'd which he spake when he went alone to the walls of the town to invite this Can to the duel which he had propos'd, and afterwards refus'd to answer by not appearing; by which it was manifest that he deserv'd

Book II. death rather than life, as the emperor had predicted[a].

At the same time they briskly attack'd the town on every side, and at length enter'd it by the breaches they made, notwithstanding the brave resistance of the besieg'd, who defended themselves to the last.

Taking of the capital of Carezem.

A treasure of pearls and precious stones, which belong'd to the brave Eskendge, were taken away, tho not without opposition, by the soldiers whom Timur's good fortune assisted: the other troops pillag'd all the riches of the town, and kill'd many of the inhabitants with their swords and arrows; and the publick edifices were ruin'd.

All the Cherifs, doctors, and learned men were sent to the city of Kech, as also the tradesmen; together with a vast number of women and children.

This noted victory happen'd in the year of the Sheep, and of the Hegira 781; the same whereof was dispers'd thro all parts of the universe: The conqueror Timur, accompany'd with victory and triumph, return'd to the seat of his empire, and some time after went to pass the winter at Zendgir Serai, where all sorts of diversions were prepar'd for him.

An. Dom. 1379.

---

[a] The author in several passages insinuates as if Timur had the spirit of prophecy.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Foundation of the walls of Kech, the country of Timur: the building of the palace of Aferai.

HISTORIANS report that the city of Kech was formerly the place where the most learned doctors of the Mahometan law assembled, and that three venerable Imams, celebrated by the sects of which they were the chief, and for the new opinions they had introduc'd, dwelt in this country: one of 'em was Abou Mehemed Abdai, native of Kech; another was Abdalla, native of Samarcand; and the third Abou Abdalla Mehemed, of Bocara. Description of Kech.

At the same time men of learning came from all parts to this city, for the improvement of their knowledge. Abool Hussein Muslem of Nishabour came according to the example of other virtuous men, and advanc'd his studys under the famous Abdai. The learned Moullas came thither in great numbers; and as the study of the sciences was then brought to perfection, they sirnam'd this city Coubbet Elilmi Veledeb, that is, the dome of science and virtue: it had also the name of Cheber Sebz, the green city, because of the verdure and freshness of its gardens, and a meadow famous for its rare and curious plants.

At the end of the year 781, which answers to that of the Monkey, the emperor charm'd with the beautys of this city, the purity of the air in its plains, the deliciousness of its gardens, and the goodness of the waters, made it his ordinary An. Dom. 1379.

Book II. dinary residence in summer, and declar'd it the second seat of his empire; wherefore he built there new walls, and a new palace which he nam'd Acserai, because the walls of it were exceeding white and very high. The foundation of these buildings was laid in an hour fitted for the most fortunate horoscope; and the palace was built so exquisitely fine and beautiful, that no other cou'd compare with it. Timur then divided the city among his Emirs, and the troops of his houshold.

Building of the palace of Acserai.

CHAP. XXIX.

The Emir Hadgi Seifeddin sent ambassador to Herat, to Malek Cayaseddin Pir Ali, king of Corassana.

THE emperor being in his winter-quarters, sent a messenger to Malek Cayaseddin Pir Ali, prince of Herat, to let him know that at the beginning of the spring, the Emirs and other princes of the empire were to be present at the Couroultai, or diet, to which he had summon'd 'em; and that his presence there was also requir'd. The messenger at his arrival at He- was us'd with all imaginable civility and respect by the prince Pir Ali, who told him, that if the Emir Seifeddin wou'd do him the honor to come thither, he being a servant of the emperor, and friend to the Emir, wou'd confide in his protection, and the friendship between them, and depart with him immediately to testify his obedience. He spoke to the messenger after this manner, because he stood in fear of Timur; but the emperor granted what he desir'd, and in

in the year 781. sent Seifeddin Berlas to Herat, where he was receiv'd by Pir Ali with all imaginable honor. Pir Ali kept him a long time on pretence of putting in order the presents he shou'd carry, and to make preparations for the journy; but his design was only to furnish the city with victuals and other necessarys, and to finish the fortifications of Herat, which he had caus'd to be encompass'd the preceding year by a wall of two leagues circumference, and which consequently enclos'd the suburbs and gardens without the wall of the old city. Pir Ali persuaded himself, that thro the care and precaution he had taken he shou'd be secur'd against all events. The Emir knowing this prince's designs by his conduct, press'd him no more, but put himself in a condition to return to court; where as soon as he arriv'd, he represented to Timur what he was able to find out of the designs of Pir Ali by his manner of acting.

Chap. 29. An. Dom. 1379. Mog. The Monkey.

At the same time Ali Bei, son of Argoun Chah Joun Garbani, return'd to his obedience, according to the orders he had receiv'd, and came to the foot of the throne. The emperor pardon'd all his past faults, gave him a handsom reception, and distinguish'd him from his equals by particular favors; he even consented to the marriage of the daughter of this Bei with Mirza Mehemed Sultan [1]: he was entertain'd with feasts, and had presents made him of vests and other things; and Timur had several conferences with him in relation to his design upon Herat.

It was concluded that Ali Bei shou'd be in readiness to go thither in the beginning of the spring; which he gave assurance of by his pro-

[1] Son of Gehanghir, son of Timur.

mises

Book II. nesses and oaths: after which the bounteous emperor, having again honor'd him with his kindnesses, permitted him to return to the place of his residence.

CHAP. XXX.

Mirza Miran Chah, son of Timur, marches into Corassana, to make war on Malek Gayaseddin Pir Ali, prince of Herat.

THAT it was Timur's ambition of universal monarchy, which caus'd him to undertake such glorious actions, is unquestionable; and as he cou'd not find his equal in valor and conduct, among all the princes his contemporarys, he rais'd his empire to as high a degre of power and glory, as it was possible for any to attain to.

He has been often heard to say, what highly savor'd of this ambition, that it was neither agreable nor decent, that the habitable world shou'd be govern'd by two kings; acording to the words of the poet, *As there is but one God, there ought to be but one king; all the earth being very small in comparison of the ambition of a great prince.*

About this time many rebels had seiz'd on several provinces of Iran *; and every one setting up for monarch, had declar'd himself sovereign of the country he possess'd, and fortify'd it, that he might become wholly independent. These unaccountable enterprizes exceedingly displeas'd Timur, whose power visibly encreas'd; and

* All the country between the Oxus and Tigris; that is, Persia and the neighbouring countrys.

after

after having brought into subjection the countrys and kingdoms of Turan[1], which Genghiz Can had formerly divided between his two sons, Touchi Can and Zagatai Can, he left him in the care of his lieutenants, and resolv'd to conquer the empire of Iran or Persia. Chap. XIII.

In the autumn of the year of the Hen, and of the Hegira 782, he constituted governor of Corassana his dear son the Mirza Miran Chah, who was then but fourteen years of age: he gave him, to be near his royal person in quality of officers, the Emir Gehanghir brother of the Emir Hadgi Berlas, the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin, the Emir Acbouga, the Emir Osman Abbas, Mehemed Sultan Chah, Comari brother of Temouke, Taban Behader, Orous Bouga brother of Sarbouga, Pir Hussein Berlas, Hamza son of the Emir Moussa, Mehemed Cazagan, Sarac Eteke, and Muzaffer son of Ouchcara, and other Emirs, with fifty companys of horse, whom he chose out of his imperial army, and ordered them marching for Corassana. An. Dom. 1380. Mirza Miran Chah made governor of Corassana.

The army moved with an extraordinary shift, which darken'd the air, arriv'd at the bank of the Gihon or Oxus; over which by order of the prince, a skilful engineer, who was in his train, built a regular bridge of boats.

The Tartar troops cross'd the bridge, and pass'd the autumn and greatest part of the winter at Balc and Cheburgan, where they rested themselves; but towards the end of the winter they took from Malek the town of Badghiz, where the soldiers had as a reward for their conquest a great many horses, furniture, and

[1] What is call'd the Grand Tartary from the Oxus, to Muscovy, Siberia and China.

other

Book II. other riches, which were pillag'd thro the valor of the young prince, insomuch that the army became rich with the spoil of the enemy, equip'd it self, and provided every thing necessary.

When the sun was come to the middle of Pisces, Ali Bei sent an express to Timur, that if the victorious standard shou'd march to Herat, he wou'd be so gracious as to permit him, his faithful servant, to attend him in quality of guide.

CHAP. XXXI.

Timur's army marches to make war in Persia, and the rest of the empire of Iran.

An. Dom. 1380. TOWARDS the end of the year of the Hegira 782, which was the beginning of that of the Dog, the emperor Timur perceiving the agreable season of the spring drawing near, sent orders to all parts to raise troops, that he might execute his design to pass into Iran; and he departed from his camp in a happy moment, before all the army was got together.

The troops came one after another to the imperial army, which consisted of the brave Tartars of Touran, as well as the skilful Turks, and the choicest soldiers of the east, Catlan, Termed, and Visagherd; and Timur cross'd the Gihon with all the army.

He order'd a bridge to be built over the river Dizac [4]; and all these motions, which were made with extraordinary dispatch, caus'd an in-

[4] It falls into the Gihon or Oxus, and passes by Corassans.

expressible

inexpressible terror in Corassana; for the desart and plains were entirely cover'd with tents, standards, foot and horse, arms and baggage. Chap. 20.

When Timur was arriv'd at Andecoud, his devotion prompted him to visit the illustrious Sainton Babasencou, who was of the number of those Dervises, who make profession of folly [1]. This person, in an enthusiastick fit, flung a breast of mutton at the emperor's head; who imagining this a good augury, said, "I am assur'd that "God will grant me the conquest of Corassana, "because this kingdom has always been call'd "the breast or middle of the habitable world." This prediction had its effect: the prince departed from Ancoud, accompany'd by good fortune and prosperity; and in the encamping and decamping of this vast army, the noise of kettle-drums, the sound of the great trumpet Kerrena, of the cymbals and Gourca, and the din of bells, struck such terror into the inhabitants of this great country, [2] that every one was in a consternation.

Malek Mehemedy brother of Malek Gaiatheddin, was then in the fortress of Serasc: as soon as he had advice of the march of the army, he so much confided in the emperor's good nature, that he came before the throne, where he had the honor to kiss the imperial carpet, and to re-

[1] The east is full of this kind of Santons who are natural fools or blockheads, or at least pretend to be so: the Mahometans have an extraordinary veneration for 'em, esteeming 'em saints. They say that God loved 'em before their creation, and on that account did not endue 'em with reason, so that they are incapable of offending.

[2] The author says, this noise was so terrible, that it seem'd as if the day of judgment was come.

ceive

Book II. ceive many caresses and presents. When after a long march the army had pass'd by Meroreoud, commonly call'd Morgab [7], they at length encamp'd at Tchekedalic, eleven leagues from Herat.

The emperor sent an express to Ali Beii to desire him to raise troops, and forthwith to join his army, according to the league made between 'em; but he refus'd to obey, and not only did not come, but, by a shameful treason and pride, which prompted him to attempt what he was not able to perform, he caus'd the envoy to be seiz'd. As Malek Cayaseddin Pir Ali had that day taken the town of Nichabour from the Serbedals, and had part of his army in that country, Timur march'd to Jam and Gousoupa, that the troops which were there might not be able to join Malek. When the emperor was at Gousoupa, Pehlevan Mehdi, the governor of it, went to meet him, and had the honor to kiss the carpet; which was the reason the inhabitants of this province receiv'd no molestation from the army.

Timur, who always highly esteem'd those who profess'd the true religion in its purity, went to Taibad to visit the learned and virtuous doctor Zeineddin Aboubekre Taibadi, who at that time was famous for the strictness of his morality and great austerity. The prince had a long conversation with this Moulla, who was the most pious man of his time: he receiv'd good advice relating to his conduct, and at length took leave of him, and march'd with the army to Herat.

[7] A town of Gousana, long. 97. lat. 36 ½.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXII.

Reduction of Fouchendge, a town of Corassan.

WHEN the imperial standard arriv'd at Fouchendge *, the troops had orders to besiege this town; the soldiers accordingly invested it; and tho it had abundance of water in its ditches, they were not discourag'd, but spent three days in preparing their arms, and building the machines necessary for the siege. The fourth day in the morning, Timur order'd all the army to march towards this place, and vigorously to assault it, and strive to reduce the enemy. The soldiers prepar'd themselves for strange actions, and as soon as the Gourghe † was sounded, they made the terrible cry call'd Souroun, and every one [illegible] the emperor's orders; they cross'd the [illegible] on planks and rafts, came to the foot of the wall, and discharg'd their arrows against the enemys, of whom they made a terrible slaughter.

Timur often march'd round the town without his cuirass, having only a vest on, to excite the soldiers to fight, who at the sight of the prince were recruited with fresh vigor.

Stones and arrows were shot from the top of the wall like rain, and Timur was struck with two arrows.

* Long. 94. Lat. 34.
† The same as Gourghe.

Book II. Mirza Ali, son of Emir Muaid Erlas, who resembled Timur, Aicoutmur Belcout, Omar son of Abbas, Mubacher and other brave men, march'd with unparallel'd valor and intrepidity towards the ramparts, which they overturn'd; they got upon the wall, and the arrows and stones, which rain'd upon our soldiers, did not lessen their courage.

The valiant Cheik Ali Behader, and his younger brother Cosru Buquet, with Mirek son of Eltchi, and other warriors, cross'd the ditch, and assaulted the gate of the town; they came to blows with the enemy, and fought with so much vigor that they vanquish'd them, and found means to open the gate: on the other hand, the vast army, having made breaches on all sides, enter'd the place, and put to the sword all those who had escap'd out of the hands of the others. Then they pillag'd the town, and carry'd away whatsoever was valuable.

This action gave extraordinary pleasure to the officers of Timur; because it was the first conquest they had made in Iran.

This town of Fouchendge was very much esteem'd for its strength, being surrounded with high walls and a good rampart: its other fortifications were so strong, that no traveller had ever seen any citadel comparable to it: its outer parts were guarded with a deep ditch full of water: it was furnish'd with a great many men arms, and machines, and had plenty of victuals. Yet notwithstanding all these advantages, it was taken by our victorious soldiers at the first assault; which seem'd to foretel that all the kingdoms of the empire of Iran shou'd in a short time be brought in subjection to the invincible Timur. But that this good fortune might not pass unmixt with some adversity, Elias and several

several soldiers fell into the ditch, and were drown'd.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Reduction of Herat, capital of Corassana.

WHEN Timur had taken Fouchendge, he march'd toward Herat, tho Malek Cayaseddin in his pride, and by reason of the strength of the walls which surrounded his capital, the many friends he had, and the succors he expected, had prepar'd arms and all things necessary for his defence.

The victorious army was no sooner arriv'd, than the troops began to ruin the gardens, after having beat down the walls: they then invested the city on all sides; and as so on as the signal was given by the drums beating, and the soldiers had made the great cry Souroun, it was order'd for precaution that entrenchments shou'd be made over against the walls of the city. This order was immediately obey'd, and Timur, accompany'd by his ordinary good fortune, mounted his horse, and rode several times round the city, to examine the out-parts, and observe the strongest and weakest walls.

The enemy, who were ready to fight, open'd their gate; and at the same the troop of Gouris, chosen'd the strongest and most valiant men of Iran, made a sally upon our soldiers, but after a bloody conflict retir'd.

The inhabitants had no sooner heard of this, than preferring the safety of their houses, which were adorn'd with fine porcelane earth of Cachan[1], to the fatigues of war, they no longer de-

[1] A town N. of Ispahan, and four days journy from this city.

Book II. defended themselves, but thought only of saving their lives.

When Malek re-enter'd the city, he endeavor'd to change this resolution of the inhabitants: he resolv'd to make a second sally; and sent the Dellals, that is, the public cryers, into all the quarters of Herat, to order all the inhabitants to repair forthwith to the breast-works of the walls, and to take particular care of the city; but notwithstanding the cry they made in the markets and streets, every one was deaf, and wou'd not obey 'em.

Malek seeing he had no other refuge to fly to than that of submission, sent to the emperor the Sultana Catoun, daughter of Taghitmur Can his mother, with his eldest son the Emir Pir Mehemed, accompany'd by Eskender Cheiki, who was reported to have been of the race of Bigen *; to acquaint Timur with his submission, and to beg pardon.

The merciful prince receiv'd 'em handsomely; he presented Malek's son with a robe of honor and a rich belt; and having comforted 'em sent back the mother and son, with order to Malek he must depart out of Herat; for if he shou'd be so presumptuous as to defend himself and the city shou'd be taken, he wou'd be the cause of the ruin of the kingdom, and the death of the inhabitants, and repent his so doing. Timur kept with him Eskender Cheiki, that he might inform himself of the affairs of the country, and of what had happen'd in the city; and at the same time this prince went to dwell in

* A prince of the antient Persians, the son of Kion and of the sister of Roustem.

Kiochk[1] of the garden call'd Bagzogoun, that is to say, the garden of the crows. Chap. 32.

Malek Cayasseddin the next day made preparations for his departure; and the day after, having laid aside his pride, he went out of the city to seek Timur: he kiss'd the imperial carpet upon his knees, as a token of his sincere submission, and beg'd pardon for his fault.

Timur pardon'd and caress'd him; gave him a vest of honor, and a belt set with precious stones, and then dismiss'd him.

The day after, the Cherifs, antient Moullas and Imams, accompany'd with the greatest lords of the kingdom, came out of the city: they had the honor to kiss the carpet, and made the accustom'd vows for the emperor's prosperity.

This great conquest happen'd in the month of Muharrem, in the year of the Hegira 783; which was that of the Dog with the Moguls; and the victorious standard was carry'd from the imperial town to the meadow of Kehdestan, where it remain'd some days: during which time, Timur ordered treasures and other riches which the Courtiers had amass'd for several years, shou'd be carry'd away. It is remarkable that there were in this city all sorts of treasures, as silver money, unpolish'd precious stones, the richest thrones, crowns of gold, silver vessels, gold and silver brocades, and curiosities of all kinds. The soldiers, according to the imperial order, carry'd away all these riches upon camels. An. Dom. 1381.

Timur then order'd the old walls of Herat to be raz'd, as also the new walls which Malek had built; which was accordingly executed.

[1] A pavillion in the gardens in form of a cupola, built of wood handsomly gilt, and sometimes of marble.

Book II. A tax was laid on the inhabitants of the city, in consideration of their being sav'd, and in acknowledgment of the good treatment us'd towards 'em; which was paid in four days.

Moulla Cotbeddin, son of Moulla Nezameddin, who was chief of the Imams and doctors of this kingdom, had orders to quit Herat, and to dwell in the town of Sebz, with two hundred considerable old men: and Timur Tach, nephew of Acbouga, governor of Tarmed, was order'd to accompany and settle 'em there with their families.

The gates of the city, which were cover'd with plates of iron, adorn'd with sculptures and many learned inscriptions, were carry'd to Kech, where they remain to this day.

Malek had in possession another place, which he thought impregnable; it was call'd Echkilgo, and sometimes Amaranth; the government of which he had given to Emir Gouri, the youngest of his sons, who was accounted in Herat the bravest, wisest and most experienc'd lord of the kingdom. The emperor order'd Malek to bring him to court, and at the same time prohibited his entring into the citadel, and threaten'd to make him repent it if he did so. The prince went to the walls of Echkilgo, as he was order'd; and having resolv'd to comply with this difficult proposal, he had recourse to his prudence, and conducted himself so well in this affair, that by his fine speeches he persuaded his son to come out, and he brought him to court, where he had the honor to kiss the imperial carpet. Timur gave him a handsom reception, highly favor'd him, and presented him with a royal vest.

CHAP. XXXIV.

The army marches to Tous and Kelat.

TIMUR being highly pleas'd with his success at Herat, sent Gehanchah Yakou with troops, to conquer the towns of Nichabour and Sebzuar; but as the affair of Ali Bei disquieted him, he march'd in person to Kelat and Tous; and when he was arrived at the tomb of Abou Moslem* Beroui, he got off his horse to make a visit to it, according to the custom of pious men, besought God to assist him, and to give him strength sufficient to conquer his enemys.

The news of the emperor's march troubled Ali Bei: his heart was a long time divided between hope and fear; but at length, notwithstanding his confusion he was in, he resolv'd to [illegible] with supplication to Timur's [illegible] and [illegible] kissing the carpet of the throne. Lots Ali Mahed & Sabedal, who was governor of Sebzuar, during the advice of the army's march, came also immediately to court. The emperor receiv'd 'em with his ordinary clemency, and after having loaded 'em with favors, gave them a belt and sword, as [illegible] robe of honor: and thus these two princes were treated in a more obliging manner than they [illegible] d'd to hope for.

* General of the armys of Aboul Abbas, first Caliph of the house of the Abassides, and to whom these princes ow'd their advancement to the Caliphate.

Book II. Timur at the same time took horse to march to Esferain[1], which was in the hands of the lieutenants of the Emir Veli, prince of Mazendran. As soon as he arriv'd there, he gave orders for dispatching the siege of this town; the soldiers had no sooner fix'd their stations in the camp where they design'd to prepare their machines of war, than hanging their bucklers upon their necks, they march'd forth with to the walls, in which they made considerable breaches, and enter'd the town: they put the sword a great number of people, and ruin'd all their houses, the most considerable as well as those of less value; so that there remain'd to that great town only the name of Esferain, which it cou'd not be depriv'd of.

Timur sent an ambassador into Mazendran to the Emir Veli, to tell this prince, that if he came before him without resistance and with expedition, to obtain the honor of kissing the carpet of his throne, he wou'd distinguish him from his equals by imperial favors, and raise him above 'em; but if, thro his stubborness he shou'd refuse to appear, he wou'd by that means become very unfortunate.

This prince treated the ambassador with all manner of civility, gave him a handsome reception, kiss'd the letter which was presented him, laid it upon his head, profess'd his submission, and promis'd to come to the throne in a short time, and employ all his care in writing to be of the number of the emperor's servants.

[1] Otherwise call'd Elmehredgan, a town in Corassan, between Nichabour and Jorjan, dependent on Nichabour: long. 81. 4. lat. 36. 44.

When

When the ambassador was upon his return, Timur went to a pleasure-house nam'd Ogoul Yaton Yailac, an agreeable place for the summer, where he staid some days to give time to his soldiers to bring up their horses, and to refresh themselves in a delicious meadow there, after the fatigue they had undergone. Chap. 35.

During these transactions they put to death the band of robbers, inhabitants of Courache, of whom we have before spoken, who were so bold as to kill the Emir Hadgi Berlas, and his brother Aidecou, very near relations of Timur. This emperor gave the principality of this country to Mehemed Dervich son of Aidecou, and to Ali Dervich grand-son of the Emir Hadgi: and at present it belongs to their family.

CHAP. XXXV.

[illegible] Samarcand.

THE emperor having made several regulations as to the policy of the kingdom of Corassana, which he had reduc'd to obedience; he dismiss'd Malek Cayaseddin prince of Herat, and the other princes and governors, [illegible] whom he confirm'd in their respective governments. Emir Cheik Sebzuari, who before the conquest of Corassana had quitted Malek, and put himself under the protection of the emperor, having had the good fortune for some years to serve this prince, was honor'd with the highest post in the town of Sebzuar; and Taban Behader was made governor of that coun-

Book II. country; after which the emperor happily return'd to his capital city.

This monarch being on his return thither, went to pass the winter in the proud city of Bocara, where loaded with grandeur and glory, he pass'd his days in pleasure; and the Mirza Miran Chah his son, who by his order was gone to Serais, having seiz'd on Mahomed brother of Malek Cayasseddin, came hither to Samarcand, where he remain'd during winter.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Death of Akia Beghi, daughter of Timur, and wife of the Emir Bei, son of the Emir Moussa.

TO verify what is said in the Alcoran, that there is no joy without sorrow, nor marriage without mourning; Timur, in the midst of his prosperity, was afflicted by the death of Tagi Can his daughter, also call'd Akia Beghi.

This princess was marry'd to Mahomed Bei son of the Emir Moussa: she had scarce her equal in beauty and virtue; her mind was adorn'd with the brightest graces, and her behavior attracted the love of all: in short, she was endu'd with such charming qualities, that the emperor her father lov'd her tenderly. Nevertheless her constitution decaying, she was seized with a pining sickness, by which she wasted away; insomuch that the fatal moment arriv'd, in which princes as well as peasants, the powerful as well

with mortal wounds, are oblig'd to submit to the decrees of fate; all the care that was taken to relieve her was useless, and she gave up to the angel Israel * her life, which she had only in trust, leaving behind her a son nam'd Sultan Husein.

The emperor Timur, who boasted that he was able to withstand the shock of misfortunes, was so afflicted at her death, that he forbad every one his presence; so that grief having seiz'd the hearts of the people, they rent their cloths, cover'd their heads with dust, and tied black felt about their necks.

The funeral obsequys were perform'd according to the maxims of the Mahometan law; her body was wash'd upon a table of gold, enrich'd with pearls and precious stones; they then laid her in a coffin of aloes-wood, and recommended her soul to God. The coffin was carry'd to the city of Kech, where it was laid in a magnificent tomb. The emperor, after this ceremony, during seven days received the formal compliments of the quality, distributed victuals and alms, giving the poor in great abundance.

In the mean while advice was brought from Corassana, that Ali Boi, in conjunction with the Emir Veli, had brought his troops into the field against Ali Muaid, and besieg'd him in the town of Sebzuar.

Timur, highly afflicted at the decease of his dear daughter, had no regard to the affairs of this world, notwithstanding the ambition he had formerly shewn; wherefore he took no notice of this advice, nor seem'd any way af-

* The Mahometans believe the angel Israel carys away the souls of those who die.

fected

Book II. fested with it; in short, he continu'd in this mood, till the princess Cotluc Turcan Aga his sister, who cou'd not bear the thoughts of his spending his time after this manner, came to him: she profess'd how much she sympathiz'd with him in his grief; but at the same time she gave him some agreeable advice, and told him, That since there was no remedy for the misfortune which caus'd his sorrow, he ought not entirely to abandon the care of the affairs of the empire; that this neglect wou'd bring disorder into his towns, and make the poor people despair; that it was better to free his mind from inquietude, which was prejudicial to him, and to shew that his zeal had no other aim than that of well-governing the empire, and remedying the necessitys of the state.

"March, says she, towards Mazendran[7] and "Kelat[8], to chastise those presumptuous, who "have had the insolence to depart from their "obedience: treat 'em in such a manner, "that it may serve for an example to others; "spare not their lives; pillage their houses, "and in short, let 'em receive a punishment "adequate to their crimes, that the innocent "fall not into misfortune and trouble, by de-"parting from their duty at the instigation of "the wicked."

The words of this princess had the desir'd effect on the emperor's mind, who knew they proceeded only from pure friendship; they rous'd and animated his virtue; and at the same time he resolv'd on his march to Corasana and Mazendran.

[7] A province S. E. of the Caspian sea.
[8] A town S. of Mazendran, between Macan and Tous.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Timur's second expedition into the kingdom of Iran or Persia.

THE emperor order'd his troops to be got together, tho it was the middle of winter; and his army being in a readiness, he march'd from Bocara towards Iran. He pass'd the Sihon, before the engineers had no sooner built a bridge of boats, than this conqueror cross'd the river at the head of all his troops, entering a second time upon the territorys of Iran or Persia. It is said, that at that time Asia trembled from China even to the borders of Greece.

[illegible] passed by the country of Macan [a], [illegible] in the neighbourhood of [illegible] [illegible] and Malek Cayesedidin also join'd in with the troops he brought from Herat. But Ali Bei, instead of following their example, got the start of the army, and shut up all the inhabitants with his family and effects in the fortress [illegible].

[illegible] the emperor was indulgent to him, and in consideration of the alliance between 'em, would not immediately take occasion from his fault to be angry with him; but sent a mes-

[a] A town of Corassan, long. 95½. lat. 37½.
[b] A town of Corassan, long. 94½. lat. 36½.

senger

Book II. senger to him to know the cause of his fear, and to tell him he might come to court with full assurance that no act of hostility shou'd be us'd against him; but if he wou'd not obey, he must acknowledg himself the occasion of all the misfortunes which shou'd happen to him; and that he shou'd be blameable for it. But as the time was come when the prosperity of Ali Bei must have an end, he did not consult his reason, but despis'd the comfort with which the emperor, thro his clemency, honoured him; and had recourse to this passage of the Alcoran, *I will fly to a mountain, which will save me*: and thus relying on the mountain of Kelat, which he imagin'd inaccessible, he did not come to the imperial camp to offer his service to the emperor.

Timur decamp'd in the territorys of Kelat, and went down to Coran, which was dependent on Abiverd[2], and order'd it to be proclaim'd in his army that he was about to march to Mazendran against Veli: notwithstanding which he took a different road, and turn'd to Kelat, imitating in that king Behmen, whom the author of Chah Name[3] mentions in his verses, who designing to march to the country of Zabul to conquer it, gave out that he shou'd go to the left hand, but at the same time went to the right.

Ali Bei and his men obtain'd fresh vigor, on advice that the imperial army wou'd march to Mazendran; whereupon he sent out of the fortress into the meadows the horses, flocks of

[2] A town formerly call'd Bayerd, N. of Corasana and Tous, in the desart of Kivac; long. 93. lat. 37. 40.

[3] A general history of Persia, written in ancient Persian.

sheep,

sheep, and other beasts which had been shut up in it.

But Timur, instead of going to Mazendran, return'd to Kelat with the army, which ravag'd all the country; and over-against the gate of Kelat, call'd the gate of the four villages, a dome was rais'd, under which was fix'd the emperor's throne, and the standard was erected near it.

The army, almost assur'd of the conquest, invested Kelat on all sides: the Mirza Miran Chah encamp'd over-against the gate of Dehia; the Mirza Ali, son of the Emir Mouaid Erlat, in the passage of Johna; the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin posted himself in the defile of Argoun Chah; and the Mirza Omar Cheik planted his standard at another gate. Fear seiz'd on Ali Bei, who being in an ill posture of defence, was oblig'd to have recourse again to the goodness of the emperor; to whom he represented by a submissive letter, which he got to be laid before him, That being confounded at his bad fortune, he dar'd not come to cast himself at his feet, to implore his clemency before he had beg'd pardon; but if thro his royal goodness he wou'd forgive him, and take the trouble to come to the gate of the town, accompany'd only by a few men, he wou'd come out as his slave, to cast himself at his feet, and ask pardon for his faults. Timur granted the petition of Ali Bei, and having appointed a day to go to the gate of the town, he did not fail to be there with five horsemen only.

The walls of Kelat were built upon the brink of a high mountain, in which there was a narrow passage by the side of the walls among the rocks; which way was shut in by a gate, and join'd to that of the town.

Ali

Book II. Ali Bei having notice that Timur was come to the appointed place with but a few men, his malice, or rather his ill fortune, excited him to betray him, and to surprize him by some villains who lay in ambuscade in the way, and whom he had order'd to kill the prince, if they shou'd have an opportunity.

In the mean while the traitor did not keep his word, not imagining that he whom God protects can receive no damage from any one, whatever artifice shou'd be made use of to destroy him. In short, as if the villains had been blind, they cou'd not come out of their ambuscade, nor even hold open the door of the place, by which they must have put in execution the orders given 'em; so that Timur having staid a long time at the place appointed, return'd to his camp without receiving any harm.

As soon as Timur was come down from the mountain, all the generals flock'd to salute him; and every one paid his compliments to him upon the danger he had escap'd.

When the treason and faithlesness of Ali Bei was fully known by his breach of promise; the emperor was enrag'd, and commanded a general assault to be given, and the bravest men in the army to mount the walls of Kelat in those places which shou'd be mark'd out for 'em. The troops advanc'd, and without fear of death, did all that cou'd be expected from courage and resolution.

An. Do. 1382. In the beginning of the month of Rabiulawal Heg. 784. which answers to the year of the Ho the emperor order'd that the soldiers troops of Mecrit * and Bedakchan, the mo able men in the world to march over moun tains, and surmount the difficultys of narrow passages, shou'd scale the walls. The first night

* Eastern Tartars.

Chap. 22.

night they obey'd, and got on the top of the mountain, and at the sound of kettle-drums and trumpets came to the gates of the town. Timur hasted thither also with a troop of his most valiant officers who march'd before him, among whom were the celebrated Akitmur Behader, and the brave Aicoutmur, who briskly repuls'd the enemy they met, and got upon the mountain. Omar Abbas and Mobacher, who were got up before the others, expected their comrades under a kind of vault, where the soldiers of the town attack'd them; but Timur immediately sent thither [illegible] of the army, who [illegible] put them to the rout: the victorious troops, after having intirely beat the enemy, return'd from the mountain, and the vanquish'd demanded quarter.

Ali Bei, reduc'd to the last extremity, sent to Timur to beseech him that the soldiers might give over the slaughter, on condition he shou'd come out the next day to make his submission, and assure him of his obedience. He promis'd that in an agreement which he sign'd, and confirm'd by an oath; and as a security for his fidelity sent Nicrouz and Mehemed Cheik Hadgi, who were the principal Emirs of the hord of Youn Garbani [1], with his sister Can Sultan, who had been promis'd in marriage to Mirza Mehemed Sultan.

These envoys cast themselves at the feet of Timur with the greatest humility, and interceded for Ali Bei: the emperor, thro his clemency, granted them what they desir'd, and being willing to lay hold on the agreement of

[1] The same as the province of Youn, in Corassana, near Azadvar; mention'd by Abulfeda.

Ali

Book II. Ali Bei, and give credit to it, he at the same time sent orders to his troops to cease the slaughter, and to Nicrouz and Mehemed to follow him to his camp, which they obey'd.

The next morning, at sun-rising, Timur took horse, and went to the gate of the town; Ali Bei was then constrain'd to come out and submit: he confess'd his faults, and begg'd his life. Timur was again so generous as to pardon him, and even to grant him the favor he requested, which was to exempt him from coming to court that day, on his promising not to fail coming the next, to have the honor to kiss the carpet of the throne.

But as the end of Pir Ali's good fortune was near, despair wou'd not permit him to act with reason, nor shew any honor in his conduct. This unfortunate prince again built castles in the air, and intended only base actions: he employ'd the night in fortifying and barricading the passage Lohra, and some other passages, by which the troops of Timur had scal'd the mountain; and he shut himself up in this inclosure of rocks, that he might avoid keeping his promise.

Timur departed fourteen days after, and went to the fortress of Cahcaha, between Beverd and Kelat; the emperor gave orders to rebuild it, and the soldiers so industriously apply'd themselves to it, that in two days and nights it was entirely rebuilt: he gave the government of it to Hadgi Coja, and fortify'd it with a strong garison. He sent to the other side of the country Siorgatmich Can, Mirza Ali, and the brave Cheik Ali, with the troops of their Toman, to guard the road to Kelat, and to block up the passages with so much precaution, that this place shou'd be a

fort

sort of a prison, from whence no one cou'd go Chap. 38.
in or come out, to carry any refreshment to the prince.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Reduction of the town of Terchiz [1] *in Corassana.*

TIMUR, by his good conduct, having in [illegible] frontiers to his [illegible] to reduce Terchiz, [illegible] thenceforth march'd thither with his army; he pass'd by Yassi Dapan, and arriv'd at Cabouchan [2], from whence he sent to Samarcand the princess Dilchadaga, who was indispos'd. As soon as the conqueror was come to Terchiz, the troops rang'd themselves round the place. This famous fortress being among mountains, was almost inaccessible, and said to have been impregnable, because of the extraordinary height of its walls, and the [illegible] breadth and depth of its ditches.

The garison of Terchiz was at that time compos'd of Sedidians, so call'd, because the Emir Cayaseddin had given the care of this place to the Emir Ali Sedidi, who had brought them in; and these Sedidians were for the most part Gouris, men famous for their valor and skill in defending places. This town, by their good conduct, was furnish'd with all sorts of arms and machines, great store of victuals, and a

[1] Long. 92. lat. 35.
[2] A town dependent on Nichabour in Corassana.

Book II. a great number of soldiers, who were resolv'd to defend themselves to the last. When Timur had seen 'em in action, he complain'd to Malek Cayafeddin of their resistance; and told him, that these men whom he had put into this place, being under his command, he wonder'd they shou'd continue in rebellion, since himself had submitted to his orders and obey'd him.

Cayafeddin said, they did it for ignorance and want of good sense, and therefore he wou'd go and confer with 'em: in short, he went to the foot of the walls to command 'em to submit; but notwithstanding his injunctions and counsels, they wou'd neither obey him nor depart out of the place: so that the emperor was obliged to besiege it in form. When he had sent out his orders, and the army, the officers caus'd it to be invested on all sides: the Tomans and Hezaras repair'd to their posts, and fortify'd their camp, and at the same time began the attack.

Every day Timur rid round the place, and examin'd the out-parts: the engineers with all expedition rais'd battering rams and other machines necessary for the siege, and presently got 'em in a readiness: the miners and pioneers drain'd the ditch, and at length undermin'd the walls, while our warriors assaulted 'em on every side, and perform'd many glorious actions. The besieged bravely withstood, and shew'd so much courage, that it is impossible to imagine such fury in warriors. The attack, and the defence were sustain'd with equal resolution; but at length our soldiers, receiving every day fresh succours, so far ruin'd the walls and breast-works by the stones which were cast, and by the battering rams and other machines, that the place was almost destroy'd.

And

And as the prosperity of Timur was the Chap. XXXIX.
care of heaven, which humane strength and the most heroic valor are not able to resist, the Sedidians, being terrify'd by seeing their affairs reduc'd so low, lost all courage, and begg'd for quarter. The ever-merciful emperor granted what they ask'd, and even us'd good words to encourage 'em; yet they went out of the town very much afraid, tho they had the honor to kiss the imperial carpet: they were enroll'd in Timur's service, and acquitted themselves in a very becoming manner.

This [illegible] carcs'd [illegible] and made [illegible] governors [illegible] and other places on the frontiers of Tankestan. As soon as they were gone out of Terchiz, Mirza Miran Chah confer'd on Sarek Ereke the government of the place.

CHAP. XXXIX.

The arrival of an ambassador from Fars, or the true Persia, at the court of Timur.

GHelaleddin Chah Choja was at this time sovereign of the country of Fars, that is, of the province of Chiraz and Persepolis. He was the flower and glory of the family of Mouzaffer, who us'd to be mediator in public treatys. This wise prince, thro the inspiration of his good fortune, made haste to testify his friendship to the officers of the emperor; and sent to court Omar Chah, who was one of the principal Emirs, with a letter, which, after the usual complements, assur'd Timur of his services and sincere friendship. He loaded this am-

Book II. bassador with presents; which were curious precious stones, as also pearls worthy to be presented to emperors; gold rings, gold money, rich stuffs, raritys of great price, Arabian horses, excellent mules for running, cover'd with saddles of gold; and many sets of mules, six in a set, with harnesses of great price, cuirasses adorn'd with silk stuffs, choice furniture, a great scarlet canopy, a royal pavilion, a tent, and a great umbrella, which were of rich and sumptuous stuffs, with divers ornaments.

Omar Chah, being arriv'd at court, had the happiness at his audience to kiss the carpet. After having made the usual compliments, he presented to the emperor the letter, and presents from his master, which he distributed among the officers. This prince receiv'd him with the greatest respect, and confer'd several favors upon him: he presented him with pieces of gold, vests of honor, and horses; and after having answer'd Gelaleddin's letter, sent him back very well satisfy'd with his negotiation, and with the obliging expressions he had receiv'd. Timur commanded one of his officers to accompany him, whom he loaded with curious presents for the king of Persia; and he order'd this envoy to demand in marriage of Gelaleddin the princess his daughter for his grandson, Mirza Pir Mehemed, son of Mirza Gehanghir, to perpetuate and strengthen their friendship and alliance.

CHAP. XI.

Timur marches into the province of Mazendran.

WHEN the imperial officers had got Terchiz register'd in the roll of conquests, and Timur had plac'd his governors there, he caus'd his army to march to Mazendran.

He pass'd by the road of Roughi, and order'd his forces to march to Kehoud Jaeme, and to Chamlan. The Emir Veli, prince of Mazendran, surpriz'd at this news, sent the Emir Hadgi, and others of his greatest favorites, to the imperial camp, with several horses, whose harnesses were new; as also curiositys of several sorts.

His letter was presented to the emperor, whom he besought to excuse him from waiting on him that day, and to order his army to leave his country, that so his poor servant finding himself in security, might again rejoice in his good fortune, come to court with expedition, and have the honor of spending the remainder of his life in his interest and service. Timur, thro an excess of goodness, granted the demands of his letter; and dismiss'd his envoy with satisfaction.

In the mean while advice was brought from Kehoud, that Cheik Ali Behader, having diligently examin'd the passages of that place, had mounted the walls in the night, accompany'd only with a few faithful domesticks, without mentioning it to the Emir Ali Bei; but that he had mistaken his way thro the darkness of the night; that he had met with a high arch from

Book II. whence he was perceiv'd by the enemy, who sally'd out with all diligence, and getting possession of the passages, put themselves in a condition to repulse him. Cheik Ali bravely attack'd 'em, and the two partys made the great cry, the usual signal for a battel. The fight was bloody, and the soldiers were so animated against one another, that they wou'd listen to no other words than those which encourag'd the slaughter of the enemy. In short, many warriors on both sides were kill'd; but as the quivers were empty'd, some persons, thro' a religious motive, labour'd at an accommodation, in which, thro the goodness of God, they succeeded; and Ali Bei spoke to the Cheik Ali Behader: they embrac'd one another in token of peace and friendship, and Ali Bei oblig'd the other to stay with him, where he receiv'd all imaginable civilitys and handsome entertainment: they convers'd together for many days, Ali Bei hoping, thro the intercession of the Cheik, the emperor wou'd pardon his past faults.

Timur having agreed to the prince of Mazendran's request, because he had voluntarily submitted, march'd towards his capital. He pass'd by Chamlagan and Tcharmagan, and encamp'd in the meadow of Radecan. At this place the Cheik Ali Behader, and those who accompany'd him, join'd the imperial camp; and this general procur'd for Ali Bei the honor of kissing the imperial carpet, having a sword and a handkerchief * in his hand. The Cheik knelt down, and bethought the emperor to grant his pardon to Ali Bei. Timur did so, and afterwards caress'd and made him several presents.

* See Ch. 4. of this book in the note.

This action of the Cheik very much pleas'd Timur, and encreas'd his reputation at c[illegible]

he gave him Radecan, in quality of a lordship, and Siorgal[*]. Chap. XI.

This monarch also gave Sohrnar to Ali Muaid Serbedal, and [illegible] to that Malek Cayaseddin, and his children, as well as Ali Bei, and his men, shou'd be conducted to Samarcand. He then distributed all the country of Youn Garbani to his Emirs, but he order'd the inhabitants and families in it to be conducted to Transoxiana.

CHAP. XI.

Timur marches to Samarcand. Death of the empress Dilchadaga, and of the princess Cotluc Turcan Aga, Timur's sister.

TIMUR having no more enemys to fear in the kingdom of Corassana, and the lieutenants of Mirza Miran Chah being establish'd in the possession of the towns and other places of the country, he gave leave to the troops to march to their quarters, and departed with expedition for the capital city of his empire.

When the inhabitants of Samarcand saw the court, which was finer than ever it had been before, in their city, they were exceedingly over-joy'd.

They bound Ali Bei, prince of Kelat, as well as Emir Gouri son of Malek Cayaseddin, and Malek Mehemed his brother, and sent 'em to Aksaraia, to Mirza Omar Cheik. The hord of Youn Garbani was also sent to Tach-

[*] Siorgal is a gift the king makes to any one of a lordship, which he and his heirs enjoy for ever.

Book II. kunt, and Malek Cayaseddin, with his eldest son Pir Mehemed, were kept at Samarcand.

During the winter the following affair happen'd at Herat. The two sons of Malek Fazreddin and of his brother, making no figure in Herat, when this country was taken, nor during the government of Malek Hussein, or of his son Malek Cayaseddin, liv'd in extreme poverty; but when Timur conquer'd Herat, these princes represented to him their misery, and told him, that having the honor to be his servants, they took the liberty to let him know that they were cousins-german to Malek Hussein, father of Malek Cayaseddin; that these two princes had made themselves masters of their effects, and that they cou'd have no hopes of recovering 'em but thro his protection. The emperor was touch'd with their misfortune, and gave the government of Gour to the eldest, nam'd Malek Mehemed. About the same time a Gouri, nam'd Abousaid Espahbed, a man of dauntless courage, who had been put in irons by the order of Malek Cayaseddin, and remain'd in prison ten years, was releas'd by the favor of Timur.

An. Dom. 1380. Towards the end of the year of the Hegir 782, the Mirza Miran Chah, having passed th' winter with the Emirs upon the bank of the river of Morgab in a place nam'd Yendi, which the Persians call Pentchdeh, that is, the five villages; it happen'd that Malek Mehemed governor of Gour, thro his folly and ignorance, with a troop of Gouris more ignorant than himself, march'd to Herat, and was join'd in the way by Abousaid Espahbed; and when they were arriv'd in the city, another band of rascally fellows, highwaymen, and vagabonds also join'd 'em; and being assembl'd together, the

they committed great disorders and unheard-of acts of injustice, cruelty and abomination. The governor, intendants, and officers of the Emirs retir'd of their own accord into the fortress of Eskiar-Eddin, the gate of which the rebels burnt; which so much astonish'd the garison of the Turks, that without taking care of any thing, they flung themselves off the walls, to endeavour to save their lives: but there was no quarter granted 'em, and no one cou'd save himself from the hands of the rebels.

The Mirza Miran Chah having advice of these disorders, sent with all expedition the Emirs Seifeddin and Arbouga with some troops to Herat, and himself march'd thither afterwards with an army.

When the Emirs arriv'd, the Gouris advanc'd to repulse 'em, and gave 'em battel at the end of the street of Khiavan; but they were defeated, and many of 'em slain. Some of 'em fled into the city, and dispers'd themselves during night: and as the Mirza Miran Chah arriv'd about that time, his troops drew their swords to chastise this rabble, and slew so great a number of 'em, that they built a very high tower with their heads, as an example for the future to seditious persons [5].

When the emperor heard of this news, which was brought him by the Mirza Miran Chah, he gave orders that Malek Cayaseddin, who was imprison'd in the fortress of Samarcand, his brother Malek Mehemed, his grandson the Emir Gouri, and Ali Bei Youn Garbani, shou'd be all put to death.

[5] This circumstance ought not to surprize the reader, nor appear to him incredible, there actually being till this day at Ispahan, capital of Persia, such an edifice built of the skulls of wild beasts.

In

Book III. An. Dom. 1383.

In the year of the Hegira 785, which was that of the Mouse, the most illustrious princess Dilchadaga, wife of Timur, pass'd from this world into the other; and some days after her decease, dy'd also Cotluc Turcan Aga, Timur's eldest sister, famous among the princesses in her time for her piety and charity, which consisted in founding of hospitals, mosques, colleges, and many other publick works for the assistance of the people, who all by this means partook of her bountys.

She was bury'd near prince Cotsam son of Elabbas. The emperor was highly afflicted at this loss for a long time. Every one paid his complements of condoleance with the usual ceremonys; and he did several charitable things for the repose of the souls of the decea's'd, and gave abundance of alms to the poor who deserv'd 'em: but because his natural good nature caused in him an extraordinary sorrow, which kept him too long from the care of the affairs of state, the Cheriffs, doctors, old men and religious, among whom were Seid Bereke, Coja Abdelmalek, and Cheik Zade Saghezdgi, presented themselves before him, and comforted him by an agreeable conversation drawn from the tradition and discourses of Mahomet, from the Alcoran it self, and from many pious historians; who excited in him the desire of taking upon him the care of the people and army, and of rendring justice. In short, he approv'd of this maxim, as he had done before, that an hour only employ'd by a prince in executing justice, was of more importance than the worship given to God, and the prayers made during one's whole life: so that being at last comforted by the verse of the Alcoran, which tells us, *That we must return to God, because we are his*

he

he for the future employ'd all his zeal in the regulation of the state and religion.

Chap. XLII.

CHAP. XLII.

Timur sends a sixth army into the country of the Getes.

THE emperor having learnt that there were disorders committed in some places of the country of the Getes, commanded Mirza Ali to march thither with an army, to destroy the seditious people of that country, the greatest part of whom were not Mahometans; he recommended to him principally to pursue Camareddin, the author of those troubles: and then he went to Kech. On advice of Mirza Ali's departing with his army, the people of Behrin laid an ambuscade to surprize him, and succeeded so well in it, that they plunder'd all his baggage, vanquish'd, and oblig'd him to return to the emperor.

The emperor at the same time, to revenge himself on these rash people, sent the Cheik Ali Behader, Seif Elmuloue, Atilmich, and Argoun Chah Ectachi, with troops to make war on 'em: and as he heard no news from 'em so soon as he expected, he sent after 'em the Emir Gofandeh Yakou, Eltchi Bouga, Chamseddin, Outelmaa, and Saintemaure Behader, with ten thousand horse: but these Emirs were scarcely come to Atacom, when they met those upon upon their return who were sent before 'em, and had overtaken the people of Behrin, of whom they had kill'd a great number, pillag'd their country, and made many slaves. But as the

Book II. the Emir Gehanchah had orders to seek out Camareddin; he oblig'd the former Emirs to return with him to that expedition. They went together to Issigheul, and from thence as far as Gheuctopa, in search of Camareddin; but not being able to find him, they return'd to Samarcand in autumn, and had the honor to salute the emperor.

CHAP. XLIII.

Timur marches to Mazendran, and thence to Sistan.

TIMUR having resolv'd to march in that season to Mazendran, gave orders for the raising of fresh troops, to render his army more formidable. When all was ready, he took horse at the happy moment, according to the observations which were made; and having reviewed all the troops, and displayd his standard, he march'd towards Mazendran. After having encamp'd and decamp'd many times, he arriv'd at Termed; and order'd that the victuals for his army shou'd be brought thither. This prince caus'd a bridge to be built in a narrow passage, where having cross'd the river of Morgab, he encamp'd on its banks: the Emir Yakou, governor of Cabulestan [a], had the honor to kiss the carpet in the camp, where he gave an account of the affairs he had in charge, and at the

[a] This province, whose capital city is Cabul, hath on the S. Zabulestan, on the N. Bedakchan, on the E. the kingdoms of China and Cotan, and on the W. those of Bamjan, Gour and Raver.

same

same time desir'd orders from the emperor, relating to the government of his frontiers. Chap. 48

During these transactions, advice was brought that the Toman of Mazendari, which inhabited a place fit for the summer season, design'd to revolt; and that Cheik Daoud Sebzuari, whom Timur had honour'd by making him chief of Sebzuar, had been guilty of so much ingratitude and insolence, as to kill Taban Behader governor of that town, by which action he declar'd himself a rebel: that the Mirza Miran Chah having notice of it, had sent the Emir Acbouga of Herat at the head of an army to Sebzuar, and the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin and follow'd him with fresh assistance; that they had besieg'd Sebzuar, and put abundance of the rebels to the sword, after having taken this town; that the Cheik Daoud fled, and retir'd into the fortress of Bedrabad, situate on the ridge of a mountain, where he had fortifyd himself; but that the Emirs Hadgi Seifeddin, and Acbouga, had actually besieg'd it. Timur had no sooner heard of this rebellion, and that of the country of Sistan, than he sent the Cheik Ali Beteki and Outchcara Behader, at the head of a great army, against the Emir Veli prince of Mazendran, that they might encamp near him, and reduce his frontiers to obedience; and himself march'd towards Sistan.

His army encamp'd at the beginning of the month of Ramadan in the year of the Hegira 785, before the town of Herat, the inhabitants of which, as we said before, were join'd with the Gouri rebels; and the emperor himself march'd to Sebzuar, where he encamp'd. This fortress was attack'd according to his orders, and many breaches were made; the Cheik Yahia Corasani being appointed to direct the miners, the

An. Dom. 1383.

Book II. the place was so ruin'd, that the greatest part of those within perish'd, and the Cheik Yahia was crush'd to pieces under a wall which fell down.

Strange punishment of the rebels.

There were near two thousand slaves taken, who were pil'd alive one upon the other with mortar and bricks, so that these miserable wretches might serve as a monument to deter others from revolting, who knowing the vengeance of this conqueror, shou'd not bring themselves into this inevitable misfortune, which their pride might tempt 'em to.

When the emperor was satisfy'd with this revenge on the inhabitants of Sebzuar, he regulated his troops, and sent the vanguard to Sistan; whither he afterwards march'd with the rest of his army, which consisted of a hundred thousand warriors compleat.

The prince Ghiab Gelaleddin of Fersh having a design to come to Timur's court, but no sooner advice of the march of this monarch than he sent out of his towns, and came with diligence before the imperial standard, with a spirit of sincerity and submission: he made presents to Timur, which indeed were but mean, considering the prince to whom they were presented; for no one was able to make those which were worthy of him: but they were suitable to the ability of Gelaleddin, who well knowing it was his interest to be in favor at court, acquainted the emperor with the resolution he had taken of sacrificing his life to his service.

Timur order'd Akitmur Behader, and other captains, to make incursions in the neighbourhood of the town of Sistan, and pillage that country. They executed this order with expedition, and so much vigor, that the gates of the town were beaten to pieces; and as soon as the army had pass'd

pass'd the mountain nam'd Ouc, and was come to the fortress of Zarg[1]; these brave warriors assaulted it accordingly, and gain'd the victory; the [illegible] had no thoughts of [illegible] quit'd, fought [illegible] hand to hand, [illegible] greatest part were [illegible] with arrows; [illegible] our soldiers made a mountain of the dead bodies, and with their heads erected a tower [illegible]

Chap. 46.

CHAP. XLIV.

[illegible]

THE emperor having rang'd his army in form of a crown round the place, advanc'd to the gate of the town with a troop of chosen men, in whom he cou'd confide, and got upon a hill of sand. Chahchahan Tageddin Sistani, with many others, came out from Chah [illegible] to meet the emperor, whom they [illegible] with [illegible] assurances of their obedience [illegible] they besought Timur to permit 'em to pay him a tribute and the ordinary customs: but during this conference with the emperor, the besieg'd sally'd out in multitudes with good troops, and prepar'd themselves for the fight. Timur, [illegible] knew of their design, plac'd two thousand [illegible] ambush, and order'd Mehemed Sultan

[1] [illegible] to Sistan, to which it gives its name.

[2] A town and province. The town, otherwise call'd Zarange, is [illegible] long. 97. lat. 32. 20. on the river Senarood, which is a branch of the Hendmend, which discharges it self into the lake of Zare. This province, which is part of Cophassana, is otherwise call'd Sedgestan and Nimrouz.

Chah

Book II. Chah advance with a few men, and begin the fight; but at length, on pretence of flying, to retreat to the right with what cavalry he had. This order was executed: and the enemys, who were only foot, growing presumptuous on this flight, said not to pursue 'em vigorously as far as the place where the ambush was laid; but the ambushes fell on 'em unexpectedly, and there was a bloody battel. The enemys infantry wounded many of the horses with their swords, and abundance were slain; but the [illegible] rout'd a great number of the enemy, and the rest were closely pursu'd even to the gates of the town. The approach of night put a stop to the battel; but the next morning, the crys and trumpets were heard on all sides. The emperor in person commanded the main body; and under him Mirza Miran Chah the right wing, being assisted by the great Emirs [illegible] whom were [illegible] and other [illegible] royal blood; and the left wing was led by the Emir Sar Bouga, who had near him Codadad the son of Hussein. Our troops march'd round the place, and having in a manner block'd it up, beat their kettle-drums, to signify that it was time to begin the attack; they contin'd to sound the trumpet, and having made the great cry, dug a ditch before 'em, and there fix'd palisados, and did many other things till night came on.

Then two thousand of the enemy sally'd out to surprize the besiegers; and having agreed to attack the quarter of the Emir Chamseddin Abbas and Behrat Coja, they cross'd the ditch, being favor'd by the night, and advanc'd as far as the tents, and even to the middle of the camp, where they slew some horses and camels. But our captains, who were willing to engage these

these rash fellows, suffer'd them to cross the ditch, and discharg'd so many arrows on 'em, that they kill'd a great number, and wounded the rest, who with great difficulty retreated into the town. Chap. 44

The army march'd the next day to the place, and attack'd it on all sides. The attack was answer'd by those who sally'd out to repulse the besiegers; but the standard of the prophet being display'd, the Mirza Ali with five hundred horse fell upon the enemy, and repuls'd 'em as far as the town, which he enter'd with his battalion: nevertheless he was resisted by the brave men of the country of Zabul, who having no longer any thoughts of saving their lives, but only of performing heroic actions, not only resisted him with extreme valor, but being succour'd by a troop of others who follow'd 'em, shut the gate upon our warriors, and kept 'em close in the town. This action rekindled the fury of both partys, and reviv'd in the Zabulians the memory of the history of the son of Dastan[a].

Akirmur Behader, having advice that the gate of the town was shut upon the Mirza Ali, ran thither full speed with a thousand horse, the most valiant soldiers of the army. They cut the gate to pieces with their swords, slew the guards, and dispers'd the soldiers who had shut the gate on our men: by which means the Mirza Ali went out of Sistan in triumph, with those who were under his command, and came to the imperial camp.

---

[a] Roustem, the son of Zal, sirnam'd Dastan, born at Zabul, of which place he was king; the greatest hero the history of Persia ever mention'd.

Book II. Chah Coubedan, king of this country, not being able to defend himself against an army so numerous and formidable as that of Timur, found himself oblig'd to submit; he came out of the town to ask pardon of the emperor, and made the following speech: "Great prince, in "vain I strive to defend my self against you, "while mighty and so able, if I may so say, "as hand mountains. Of what use will it be "to me to tempt fortune, which has raised you "to such a height, that you seem able to com-"mand even her? No, my lord, I see no other "means of saving my life than by flight. But "what place is there for me to retire to, where "I may shelter my self from your vengeance; "since every one obeys your power? There is "no asylum under heaven in which I can better "trust, than your royal clemency. Yes, my "lord, I have fled to save my self from you; "but it is to you I have fled."

The emperor not only pardon'd him, but even distinguish'd him from the other princes by his favors.

After this action, Timur having on a plain cuirass without sleeves, mounted his bay horse; and with fifteen men only rode to the left wing of the army to review it; but at the same time he had advice that between twenty and thirty thousand of the populace of Sistan, tho their prince was gone out of the town, and had presented himself before the imperial throne, being arm'd with bows and arrows, had slid down the walls, holding by one another's hands, and had the boldness to march against the victorious army: which oblig'd Timur to turn towards the body of his army to command 'em; but as the enemy let fly a great number of arrows, Timur's

Timur's horse wounded.

Chap. 4.

mur's horse was wounded. The emperor was no sooner come to his tent, than he put Chah Corobeddin in irons; and having rang'd his army in order, he was about to march in person to the fight; but the most affectionate Emirs took hold on his horse's bridle, and on their knees represented to him, that he had many years to live under his auspicious fortune, and as long as any of them remain'd, he ought to undertake no action, in which the least danger might be suspected. Timur, at the pressing instances of his officers, had no sooner turn'd his horse, but all the Emirs fell to furiously upon the enemy, with their arrows and swords, that they cut them in pieces, crush'd a great number of em under their horses feet, and wounded others, who with difficulty retir'd into the city, the gate of which they shut with the utmost expedition. The victorious soldiers pursu'd their victory, gave a second assault, mounted the breast-works; and having made many breaches, entered the place, of which they made themselves masters, burnt the houses and public edifices, put to the sword those, who were not slain in the fight, and in short raz'd the walls of this fine city, the inhabitants of which they kill'd, both men, women and children, from persons of a hundred years old, to infants in the cradle.

The emperor staid there some days, during which time they carry'd away the treasures of the King of Sistan, and all the precious stones, other riches, and curious pieces of great price. The soldiers took even the very nails of the gates, and burnt every thing which cou'd be consum'd with fire.

Some fabulous authors report, that in the country of Zabulestan a voice was heard, which

Book II. advertiz'd the soul of Roustem * of all these disorders in these words; "Lift up thy head, "behold the condition of thy country of Per-"sia, which is at length reduc'd by the power of "the Tartars."

An. Dom. 1383. This conquest was made in the month of Chawal in the year of the Hegira 785, which was that of the mouse; the sun being in capricorn.

They then sent the Chah, that is, the king of Siftan, Cotobeddin, to Samarcand, as also the generals of the army, and governors of the provinces. The town of Ferah was the place of the retreat of the Cadis, doctors, and other lawyers. The brave soldiers who had a share in gaining the victory, enjoy'd the emperor's favors above others; and the government of this province was given to Chachahan.

* Roustem had always conquer'd the Tartars, and they could never make themselves masters of any town of Iran when he was alive. He was general of the Persians, king of Zabul under Cyrus and other emperors; and he slew Esfendiar, who is thought to have been the same with Xerxes. He liv'd very long, and in four or five reigns. See in the *Chah Nami*.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLV.

Timur marches to Bost.

AFTER the taking of Siftan, the royal ſtandard was carry'd to Boſt [1]; and the troops in their paſſage conquer'd the fortreſs of Tak, which they raz'd to the ground.

And when they were encamp'd on the banks of the river of Hirmen [2], they deſtroy'd an edifice call'd the bank of Rouſtem; and left no footſteps of that antient monument.

The army paſs'd by Kuke Cala, where they had advice that Toumen Nicoudari, was advanc'd to the quarters of Kidge [4] and Mecran, which he cloſely beſieg'd. Timur judging it convenient to oblige Toumen to return, the Mirza Miran Chah was nam'd for that purpoſe; and to deſtroy this rebel, Mireke Mehemed, ſon of Chir Berlas, the emperor's favorite, ſent to accompany the prince the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin, Cheik Ali Argoui Berlas, Sevindgic Behader, and other Emirs. They march'd day and night; and when they had paſs'd the deſart, they found Toumen with his men of the hord of Nicoudari, encamp'd in the meadow of Coran.

Toumen no ſooner had advice that the imperial troops were arriv'd, than he mounted his

[1] A town of the kingdom of Siftan, on the frontiers of Zabul; long. 100. lat. 33.
[2] The ſame as Hendmend.
[4] A town in the kingdom of Mecran, long. 99. lat. 27. 50.

Book II. horse, and came into the field ready for battel. The Emir Seifeddin his old friend, considering his great age, entertain'd him with all possible respect and civility: he enquir'd of him the state of his health, and strove by the most obliging expressions to bring him over to his duty, assuring him he had nothing to fear from the emperor, but might come with courage to the foot of the throne; and he pray'd him to use no hostility. But fate was wholly set against Toumen; he had no regard to his friend's advice, but began the fight, where he was soon kill'd by a lance, and his head was sent to the emperor.

Timur with the army march'd by the upper part of the river of Hirmen; and as it was for the advancement and honor of monarchy, that whosoever shou'd be guilty of disrespect, or commit any insolence against Timur, should receive a punishment suitable to his [illegible] it happen'd that the prince of Mam Caton, who had wounded Timur in the hand with an arrow, when he return'd from Siftan accompany'd by the Emir Hussein, at this time came to the court with presents: but at his arrival, he being known to Timur, whose anger was excited, and who wou'd never let treason go unpunish'd, as soon as he was gone out from his presence, he commanded him to be seiz'd, and shot to death with arrows: which punishment appear'd too mild for so great a crime. The victorious troops in their march made themselves masters of the town of Mam Caton, and of Calasure, which signifys the red fortress.

There were three thousand of Toumen's subjects got together in the town of Hezarpen, the residence of the Sede[1] of Toukai, who had [illegible]

[1] A company of a hundred men.

up

up the passages of the mountain, and fortify'd themselves. As they did not observe the Mussulman laws, they committed so many disorders, that the Mahometans were weary of their insults, and resolv'd to besiege the town. Chap. 45

The troops on their arrival began to attack it; and at length our valiant soldiers, seconded by the good fortune of the emperor, took it by assault, tho it was thought impregnable. The rebels were chastis'd; some were cast headlong from the top of the mountain, others were slain, and their heads serv'd to build towers, as usual.

Timur marched from thence to the citadel of Sistan, of which the hord of Fagatchi had made itself master. The men of this hord guarded it with a great deal of care; but their measures were broken by the strength and valor of our troops, who did some memorable exploits at this place. They carry'd it by assault, put all the garison to the sword, and built towers with their heads, to strike terror into other [illegible]

CHAP. XLVI.

War against the Ouganians, inhabitants of the mountains, south of Candahar.

THE Ouganians had sent some time ago a [illegible] of the mountain of Coub Solyman, to give notice that they were willing to submit themselves to the emperor, and to desire from him a Deroga; which was granted: but as some time after news was brought that they had revolted, the army march'd towards their country, with order to fight 'em. This order was

Book II. obey'd; and there was a bloody battel. The Mirza Ali Aicoutmur, and some of the troops were wounded; and Nikepei Chah, in losing his life against these infidels, obtain'd the glory of martyrdom [6]. These sad accidents excited the courage of the valiant Akitmur; he cast himself at the emperor's feet, to beg leave of him to permit him to return against the enemys, that he might continue to employ his life in his service, which he had entirely consecrated to that use.

Timur, who knew his intrepidity, fearing lest he shou'd run headlong into too great dangers, refus'd what he demanded, tho many regiments, which had not had the boldness to withstand the enemy, had left the field of battel. In the mean while, Ramadan Coja, who thought it a crime to turn his back upon the enemy, kept firm in his post; and made a brave resistance. Timur commanded Baki Coja Uzbec and Chamseddin to fall upon 'em; and as they executed this order, Aid Coja, a young man, who had laid in ambuscade on the ridge of rock, dexterously took hold on one of the enemys by the hair of the head, dragg'd him to the ground, and cut off his head, which he carry'd to the emperor: this was look'd upon as an heroic action from so young a man.

At length, all our brave soldiers fell upon the enemys on every side with so much courage and resolution, that thro the assistance of heaven and Timur's good fortune, they made themselves masters of the fortress [7], and oblig'd

[6] The Mahometans make it an article of their faith, that those who are kill'd in the wars against the infidels are martyrs.

[7] The fortress of Couh Solyman built upon this mountain.

the

the perfidious Ouganians to come out of it, who were deliver'd to the soldiers, and according to the laws of Genghiz Can, put to death. Chap. 28.

From thence the emperor began his march to Candahar, to which place he had already sent Gehan Chah Behader [8], Moubacher, and Eskender Cheiki with troops. Those lieutenants had seiz'd on the avenues of the place at their arrival, and begun the siege; but having had an opportunity to fight, by an effect of the good fortune of our prince, they carry'd the town by assault, seiz'd on the governor of the province, and having put him in irons, sent him to court, where he was hang'd.

Timur being come to Candahar, gave a handsom reception to Gehan Chah Yakou: he honor'd him with several presents, and at length sent him to the town of Calat [9] at the head of an army. When he was arriv'd there, he besieg'd it, and made several assaults, in which the enemys had sometimes the worse, and sometimes the better; but they cou'd by no means defend themselves against the cunning of the engineers, who, by undermining ruin'd the walls and breast-works on all sides; and by this means the general made himself master of the town, the walls and buildings of which he order'd to be raz'd; and then rejoin'd the imperial camp, at the same time that Mirza Miran Chah, returning from Custar and the Rebat [1] of Sultan Mahmoud, came before the throne.

---

[8] Also call'd Gehan Chah Yakou, son of the Emir Yakou.

[9] A town in the kingdom of Coran near Candahar, different from Kelat in Corassane and Kelat in Armenia.

[1] Rebat signifys a park.

CHAP. XLVII.

Timur returns to Samarcand.

SISTAN, Zabulestan, and their dependences, being brought into subjection to Timur, there remain'd no more enemys in these provinces, every one obeying him, which made this monarch desirous, since the charming season was come, to return to the capital city of his empire. He gave both the military and civil government of Candahar to Saifel Berlas Candahari: and he presented Saifel Nicoudari with the Toman of that country; and as the Emir Yakou dy'd in the winter, he gave his place to his son Gehan Chah; and at the same time disbanded the Emirs, officers and troops; and leaving the army, departed with all expedition to Samarcand, where he arriv'd in fourteen days.

The princes and princesses of the blood, accompany'd with the other ladys, and all the great lords, Emirs, Cheriffs, and other principal persons of the empire, perform'd the ceremony of kissing the earth, and wishing the emperor joy upon his conquests. They also made the usual presents, and sprinkled upon his head pearl-seeds, precious stones, and gold dust; and gave thanks to God for his happy return, and distributed alms. All these demonstrations of zeal and respect were soon after renewed on the birth of a prince, who about this time was born to the emperor; and who was nam'd Ibrahim Sultan: and the Emirs distributed among the people a great deal of money, testify'd their joy by magnificent entertainments and publick feasts; and

and in the assemblys of pleasure they serv'd up wine to encrease the joy and diversions. But this prince dy'd very young, and his death caus'd in the emperor a sorrow natural to a father. Chap. 48.

CHAP. XLVIII.

Timur marches into the province of Mazendran.

AFTER the emperor had staid three months at Samarcand, he resolv'd to march to Mazendran; but first prepar'd to enter Iran: The army during its march us'd extraordinary expedition to get to Termed; the engineers built a bridge upon the Gihon, which the imperial troops had no sooner cross'd, than all the kingdoms of Iran were in a consternation.

Timur encamp'd at Balc, and staid there some time, expecting to be join'd by the troops of the provinces, pursuant to an order he had before given; and his army was soon considerably increas'd, by the arrival of about a hundred thousand horse, whose commanders were arm'd with cuirasses and bucklers.

We have above *related that the daughter of Gelaleddin Chah, prince of Fars, had been demanded in marriage for the Mirza Pir Mahomed, son of Gehanghir, son of Timur: whereupon in the beginning of the year 785, the emperor sent Oladgia Itou and Hadgi Coja, his ambassadors to Fars, to conduct this great princess to court, which they did accordingly about this time. *Chap. 39. An. Dom. 1383.

The

The princess Serai Mulc Canum, and Touman Aga, accompany'd with many other ladys, went to meet her, and receiv'd her with all imaginable ceremonys and pomp; they sprinkled over her precious stones, pearl-seed, and gold-dust; they prepar'd marriage-feasts; and in short, nothing was wanting that was usual in public rejoicings. After the marriage-feast was finish'd, Hadgi Coja was accus'd before the throne of many crimes committed in the last campain, with design to raise himself above his quality: he was question'd upon these accusations, convicted, and being condemn'd, was put to death.

Timur then review'd his army, which he had assembled from all parts of his dominions, and began his march as soon as it was ready. When the court was come near the river Morgab, the princess Canzade, wife of Mirza Miran Chah, met 'em, coming from Herat, to receive her spouse; and the Mirza Calil Sultan was committed to her care, in order to be educated by her. Timur left the princess Touman Aga at the camp, and sent the empress Serai Mulc Canum, and the other ladys, to Samarcand. He decamp'd at the same time, and taking the road to Burkei Tach, came down from Seracs, from whence he went to Baverd [a], and arriv'd at Nesa [b], where he learnt that the Emir Veli having fortify'd the citadel of Dourom, had shut himself up in it, and furnish'd it with a good number of soldiers. Then the Cheik Ali Behader, Sevindgik Behader, Mobacher, and other Emirs, who commanded the

[a] The same as Abiverd.

[b] A town in the desart of Kivac, between Corassana and Carezem, long. 93. 20. lat. 48. 45.

van-

vanguard of the army, met that of the Emir Veli, in a place nam'd Ghiaoukerch. Each party was rang'd in order of battel, and at the same time advanc'd. Mobacher began the attack with vigor: an arrow which was shot at him hit him on the face, near the teeth, and went out by his neck; but this brave warrior, notwithstanding his wound, rush'd a second time upon the enemy, whose head he cut off, and flung into the middle of the field. This action astonish'd the enemys, and put 'em to flight; and Timur, that he might recompense Mobacher for this heroic action, made these places of Ghiaoukerch and Hourberl, Siorgals, and gave 'em to him, that he might enjoy the revenue of these lordships for ever. From this place they departed for Douroun: our men besieg'd this castle, and made several assaults; and at length having taken it, put the governor and the troops of Veli to the sword. Chap. 48.

The court having quitted Douroun, went to Tchiaoun, a country full of villages; and having crossed the river at Joriana, encamp'd at Chaluman, where the Hezares and Sades had express orders not to separate from their squadrons without leave, on pain of death; that they might employ themselves in building bridges on rivulets and rivers, and doing other useful works, as cutting down trees in forests, making causeways, and clearing the roads.

The vanguard of the two armys meeting, engag'd in a bloody fight. Hadgi Mahmoud Chah Tesouri gave marks of an extraordinary valor and strength; but he was wounded in the hand with a sword. Akitmur, and his son Cheik Timur, fought like brave men, and made the enemy's ranks give way. These skirmishes continu'd twenty days: but on the twentieth, as

Book II. as the army of Timur was passing the bridge of Derbiché, the Emir Veli advanc'd, and fought with heroic valor and resolution. But because the power God gives to armys, to whom he designs the victory, is more than human, this unfortunate prince was vanquish'd, and oblig'd to fly. Our soldiers closely pursu'd him, took several of the bravest of his army, whom they put to death, as also many others, who not finding means to escape, serv'd to fill the country with the dead and wounded.

The troops, after this compleat victory, entrench'd the camp, and then that all necessary precautions for their security might be observ'd, the colonels and captains had orders to cause fair entrenchments of earth to be cast up round their own regiments, to make a sort of ramparts with their bucklers, and before those ramparts to fix stakes, which might serve as palisadoes.

The Emir Veli attacks the army during night.

The day being almost gone, Timur, who thro' his great experience always foresaw danger, order'd thirty of the best companys of his army to lie in ambuscade in a certain place. When night was come, the Emir Veli, accompany'd by a great number of soldiers of Mazendran, sally'd out of the fortress to attack the camp. For which purpose his men made the great cry on the side of the right wing of the army, where the prince Miran Chah was encamp'd. Veli was marching to fall on him, and being arriv'd at the trenches, they struck with their swords and lances against the pavilions and palisadoes which had been fix'd there, tho not without the loss of many of their men who fell one upon another in the ditches.

Then the prince Miran Chah march'd against them in person, and order'd that all the troops he commanded shou'd let fly a shower of arrows

rows together; and at same time the thirty companys all prepar'd to fight with sword in hand, and rushing with fury out of the ambuscade, fell upon the enemys; and as the Emir Veli, among other artifices had caus'd a great many pits to be dug in those roads, in which they had drove stakes before they fill'd 'em with water, part of his army, in the flight, fell into these wells, and there miserably perish'd. Chap. 18.

The emperor finding the Emir Alcoutmur absent, demanded where he was; he was answer'd, that he was gone to pursue those of the enemy's army who had fled. In the mean while the army, which march'd all the rest of the night, found themselves in the morning at the town of Ester Abad, capital of Mazendran, where they burnt and destroy'd every thing, without sparing either old men, women, or children, or even sucking infants.

This war happen'd in the month of Chawal in the year of the Hegira 786. Fear seiz'd the Emir Veli, who the same night, carrying with him his wives and children, and guarded by some soldiers, went to Damgan by the way of Langaru; he left 'em in the fortress of Chirdecoph, and at length march'd to Rei. The invincible Timur sent troops under the command of Godadad Husseini, Cheik Ali Behadir, Omar Abbas, Comari Einac, and other captains, to pursue him; and they made such haste, that they almost overtook him at Rei. This prince was so afraid of losing his life, that he went into the woods of the country of Rusheindan, which were inaccessible, because of their thickness, and the height of some mountains which were near; and at length escap'd from his enemys who pursu'd him. An. Dom. 1384.

The

Book II. The Emir Veli was son of Cheik Ali Bisoud, one of the Emirs of Taghitmur Can; and at the time that the Serbedals were so daring as to bathe their hands in the blood of this king, Veli, who was present at the assembly, fled to Nesa, and his father was massacred with his master. This young lord having found means to make himself powerful in this town, at length went to Ester Abad, of which he made himself master; insomuch that Locman Padichah, son of king Taghitmur, being frighten'd by Veli, fled, and wander'd about as a vagabond from country to country, till at length listing himself in the service of Timur, (who conquer'd Ester Abad) he receiv'd from his liberal hands the government of this town.

CHAP. XLIX.

Timur marches into the province of Irac Agemi.

THE emperor order'd the Emirs Acbouga and Outchcara Behader to pass the winter at Ester Abad with the ammunition of the army; and out of every ten men he chose three to accompany him. He march'd towards the kingdom of Rei, and his troops were no sooner arriv'd in that country, than Sultan Ahmet Cheik Avis Gelair[4], who was at Sultania, astonish'd at the march of the emperor, fortify'd the castle of this town, and garison'd

[4] The grandson of Sultan Avis, son of Buzurk Hassan, whose wife Bagdadcatun, daughter of the Emir Tchoubak, Sultan Abousaid had espous'd. Buzurk Hassan was the first of the Ilkanians.

it

it with his best soldiers under the command of his son, nam'd Acbouga; and then fled towards Tauris. In the mean while Omar Abbas, at the head of sixty horse, march'd to Sultania, to gain intelligence of the state of the place; and his journy was so successful, that he got there, notwithstanding the terrible snows and excessive cold. Some days before, the enemy having news of his march, resolv'd to fly; whereupon they took with 'em their young prince Acbouga, and departed with all expedition for Tauris: but they were not all gone out of the fortress when Omar Abbas arriv'd with his sixty soldiers; who with intrepid courage, enter'd the place sword in hand, and made himself master of it. He employ'd all his industry to preserve it, till he shou'd receive orders from the emperor who was at Rei, to whom he sent Irmakchi to advertise him of this happy conquest. Chap. 50.

CHAP. L.

The emperor Timur marches to Sultania.

AT the beginning of the spring Timur set out for Sultania; and in the mean while Sarek Adel, one of the greatest lords of the court of Cheik Avis, whom Chah Chuja had heretofore brought from Sultania, was summon'd by the emperor to court, being then in the service of Sultan Zein Elabeddin, son of Chah Chuja, who died in the year of the Hegira 786, which number was compos'd out of the letters of the epitaph made on him, which was, An. Dom. 1384.

Book II. *Haifez Chah Chuja:* It is pity so great a man as Chah Chuja shou'd die.

Timur, as a singular favor, order'd this lord to be near his person; who to obey this order, departed from Chiraz with expedition, to have the honor to kiss the carpet of the throne; where he was no sooner arriv'd, than he was distinguish'd by the emperor's goodness, and favor'd with many presents; besides which Timur gave him the government of the province of Sultania, and the countrys dependent upon it, after having order'd Mehemed Sultan Chah to leave him in those quarters with an army, that he might make himself master of the neighbouring countrys.

An. Dom. 1385. After this expedition, which was in the year of the Hegira 787, and in the year of the Leopard, Timur returning from Sultania, laden with the glory he had acquir'd by his victory, enter'd into the mountains of Rusteindar. The princes of this country not only had not strength to resist him, nor prudence enough to come before Timur; but they sought safety by flight before the army arriv'd there. By this means the country was brought in subjection to Timur, and his officers easily made themselves masters of it; the troops pillag'd it on all sides, and the soldiers were enrich'd with the booty.

The Emir Veli, who was retir'd into a place nam'd Yalous, was so terrify'd at this action, that he fled; and our victorious emperor turn'd upon the towns of Amol and Sarye, with design to make himself master of them, as soon as he con'd come at 'em by the way of the mountains of Couhestan. But Seid Kemaleddin and Seid Razieddin, who were the princes of these places, to save themselves from the evil which threaten'd 'em, sent their Naibes,

bes, that is, their lieutenants, with presents of precious stones and gold dust, to lay at the feet of the emperor, with a considerable tribute to be paid him: so that by their lieutenants being admitted to take an oath of fidelity to the emperor, they coin'd gold mony which they honor'd with the name and sirname of the invincible Timur; and to raise his glory as high as they were able, they made prayers for him in all the mosques of their country. At length Timur commanded 'em to obey Locman Padicha, to whom he had given the principality of Ester Abad, that so he might oblige 'em to preserve their fidelity and obedience, and not undertake any thing which this prince shou'd not approve.

CHAP. LI.

Timur returns to Samarcand, the capital of his empire.

WHEN the officers of Timur had got full possession of the provinces of Mazendran, Rei, and Rustembar, as far as Sultania, the imperial standard march'd to the seat of the empire. When the Court had cross'd the Gihon, and were arriv'd at Samarcand, the inhabitants wish'd all happiness and prosperity to the emperor at his arrival; he there pass'd the summer in the pleasures of the season, and the winter at Zendgir Serai, in the delights of conversation and entertainments. During this winter, Tocatmich Can sent to Tauris, by the way of Derbend, an army of near ninety thousand men, who were for the most part infidels, of a cruel and mercileſs nature, and who had

Book II. been so inur'd to war, that they were almost cover'd over with wounds and scars. In this army were twelve Aglens [1], princes of the royal blood of Touchi, the chief of whom was Bic Poulad; there were also several Emirs, as Aifa Bei, Yagli Bei, Cazanchi, and others: they march'd to Chirouan, and being arriv'd in Azerbijana, block'd up Tauris.

The governor of this city was not able to manage his affairs in such a conjuncture; whereupon the inhabitants, thro the counsel of the Emir Veli, who after his defeat retir'd into this town with Mahmoud Calcali, fortify'd the walls of this and some other neighbouring places. They repuls'd our troops with vigor, and defended themselves courageously for eight days: but at length the army of Tocatmich Can, being more numerous than that of the besieg'd, made it self master of the town; and the Emir Veli, with Mahmoud Calcali, fled to the country of Calcal. The Can's army pillag'd the place, and exercis'd all imaginable cruelty and abominations: the desolation was universal, and all the riches, treasures, and rarity, which had been amass'd there during a great many years, were consum'd in less than six days in this dreadful pillage. After the army had entirely seiz'd on this booty, and bound all the slaves, it return'd before the winter was past, by the way it came.

The emperor having advice of this devastation, was incens'd at the violence and tyranny which had been exercis'd against the Mussulmans; in the mean time, he resolv'd to conquer the kingdoms of Iran, which he was oblig'd to by his laws, because this great country

[1] All the princes of the blood of Touchi are sirnam'd Aglens.

not

not being at that time govern'd by any prince who was powerful enough to execute his orders there, every thing was in confusion, by reason of the different sentiments of those who commanded. Chap. 52.

And as the ambition of neighbouring princes daily encreas'd, he was expos'd to the like evils with those which, as we just now mention'd, happen'd to Tauris.

CHAP. LII.

Timur enters the kingdom of Iran, where he stays three years successively.

IN the year of the Hegira 788, which answers to that of the Hare; Timur having resolv'd to make war in Iran, caus'd orders to be publish'd, that the Tavachis [6] shou'd get together, with all expedition, the troops of the army, and that the soldiers of all the provinces, with their officers, should come immediately to court. An. Dom. 1386.

This royal order was every where executed, and the army being in a condition to depart, Timur nam'd the Emir Solyman Chah, the son of Daoud, and the Emir Abbas, with two others, whom he left at Samarcand, to govern the empire of Transoxiana in his absence.

The emperor having cross'd the Gihon, happily arriv'd at Firoz Couh, after many days march; and then Seid Kemaleddin, prince of Sari, sent his son Seid Cayaseddin to court, with

---

[6] A kind of commissarys for levying the troops, like the Chaoux among the Turks.

Book II. many soldiers to guard him, to be enroll'd among the other officers. About this time also our monarch, who was able to discover the most secret affairs of state, and understood the carriage of the princes and governors of countries, had advice of the actions of Malek Azzeddin, prince of the little country of Lor, of the great crimes his insolent people had been guilty of, and of the robberys he had committed on the highways with impunity, it not being long since his subjects had beat and plunder'd a caravan, which was going thro their country in pilgrimage to Mecca.

Timur had no sooner heard of this abominable action, than he resolv'd at the same time to revenge the pilgrims on these robbers; and when he had advice of the new effects of their further malice, he thought himself oblig'd to chastise these villains, and to deliver the Mahometans from their tyranny: upon which he order'd that of every ten men of his army, two of the bravest shou'd be chosen, and arm'd to the best advantage; which being executed, this prince quitted his camp, and mounted his horse at the head of his flying camp, compos'd of his most valiant soldiers, and march'd with all expedition to Lorestan. As soon as he was arriv'd there, he caus'd Ouroudgurd and the neighbouring places to be plunder'd; and at length he made himself master of Corram Abad, a fortress almost impregnable, whither the robbers of that country were retir'd. He caus'd it entirely to be raz'd, and the greatest part of 'em being taken, they were flung headlong from the tops of the mountains.

At the same time Akitmur Behader, Omar Abbas, and Mehemed son of Sultan Chah, fell sick

sick thro the intemperateness of the air, or rather by the decree of providence which sent 'em from this world into the other; and Coja Ali Muaid Serbedal, who was wounded in battel, died also some time after. Chap. 53.

As soon as Timur had brought into subjection this little country of Lor, and deliver'd it from the disorders of these robbers, he decamp'd, and rejoin'd his army, which came to meet him in the plain of Nehavend.

CHAP. LIII.

Timur marches to Azerbijana, or the country of the antient Medes.

THIS monarch having advice, that the Sultan Ahmed Gelair, who had rais'd troops, was departed from Bagdad to Tauris, again left his camp with some troops under the conduct of Cheik Ali Behader, and the same day march'd with expedition at the head of his army to that city.

But Sultan Ahmed hearing of his march, was not willing to wait his coming, but fled, and made haste to Bagdad.

Timur sent Seifeddin, with the other Emirs, and troops to pursue Ahmed. When they had overtaken his army, he was so terrify'd, that abandoning his led-horses, baggage, and all his furniture, he fled; and as soon as our soldiers had sufficiently pillag'd his baggage, they made the great cry Sonroun, and return'd.

In the mean while Elias Coja, son of Cheik Ali Behader, having march'd by Nakchivan with a small number of horse; found Ahmed in

Book II. the salt-pits of Nemeczar, where this sultan, guarded by several troops, made a brave resistence, by which many were wounded on both sides. Elias Coja himself receiv'd a wound, which disabled him; and this accident saved Ahmed from the danger his life was in. This captain's wound, join'd with his bad constitution, caus'd in him a violent distemper, which had kill'd him, if the good fortune which always attends Timur's officers, had not favor'd his recovery; and at length he was heal'd, except that he remain'd lame, the distemper being got into his foot.

On this occasion there were many massacres and pillagings at [7] Nâkchivan. Comari Einac having receiv'd some displeasure from the government, set fire to the great dome of the palace of Ziaelmulc, to revenge himself; and in it there perish'd, in a miserable manner, fifteen persons, who were choak'd by the smoke of the straw which was brought thither.

Timur having entirely brought into subjection the kingdom of Azerbijana, went to encamp in the neighbourhood of Chenob Gazane, were Seid Razi Coja, Hadgi Mehemed, Bendghir Cattat, Cadi Cayaseddin, Cadi Abdellatif, and other great lords and Cherifs of this country, came to make their submissions to him; and afterwards a sum of mony was impos'd on the inhabitants of Tauris [8], as usual, for having saved their lives; which the receivers collected.

The court and army staid at Tauris, and the neighbouring places during the summer. Timur

[7] A town of Azerbijana, long. 81. 15. lat. 38. 40.
[8] Capital of Azerbijana, long. 82. lat. 38.

com-

commanded Sarek Adel [9] to be put to death, whom they cast down from a wall, after having pillag'd his house; and then the most skilful masters in every art and science were sent to Samarcand. Chap. 13.

In the mean time Mahmoud Calcali seiz'd in the province of Calcal on the Emir Veli, who, flying to save his life, wander'd from country to country. He was deliver'd to Comari Einac, who put him to death, in conformity to the laws of Genghiz Can; and his head was laid at the foot of the throne. Death of Emir Veli.

In autumn, the government of Tauris was given to Mehemed Sultan Chah, and the imperial standard was carry'd to Nakchiran. The army then march'd to Merend [1], and to the defile of mountains nam'd Dez; then it cross'd the river Ourous* on the bridge of Ziaulmulc, and encamp'd on its banks. There is not a more magnificent bridge in the world than this; it is in the territory of Nakchivan near the town of Youlaba, where the Ourous run at the foot of a mountain. The bridge is built of stone, and is of vast strength: it is flat at top: the stones are so well join'd, and all the building is so just and perfect, that the most skilful architect can't view it without admiration. Among the arches of this bridg there are two so high and broad, that the breadth of one is more than sixty Ghez [3], and of the other more than fifty five; they having been measur'd at low water: and because when the waters are highest the stream of this river

* Araxes.

[9] Adel fled for refuge from the court of the Ilkanian kings to that of Timur.

[1] A town of Azerbijana, long. 80. 45. lat. 37. 50.

[3] Ghez in Persian signifys a cubit.

runs

Book II. runs thro the great arch, which is contiguous to the mountain, the lower part being empty, they have there made a Caravansera. At the two ends of the bridge there are gates made out of the same rock, of unparallel'd beauty.

The army having decamp'd from this post, arriv'd at the citadel of Corni, which they immediately attack'd, and took by assault. They seiz'd on Cheik Hassan the governor, and brought him, with a chain about his neck, to the emperor.

They afterwards came to the town of Surmalu, situate on the bank of the Ourous: and having invested it on all sides, they took it by storm sword in hand. They immediately raz'd it, and seiz'd on Toutan Turcoman, the leader of this people, whom they bound with cords, and laid before the throne.

From Surmalu the army came to Cars, a town strongly built with stone, and which in that country was thought impregnable. A certain Turcoman, nam'd Pirouz Bact, was governor of this country: The strength of the place, and the difficulty of coming at it, because of its situation, made him proud; insomuch that after having well fortify'd the citadel and walls of the town, he imagin'd himself able to resist the army of the emperor, who order'd all the machines to be got ready, and that as soon as the Gourghe shou'd be beat in all the quarters, and the great cry Souroun made, the place shou'd be invested on every side.

The enemy wanted not courage and resolution to defend himself: tho he was briskly assaulted, yet he gave marks of his intrepidity and valor; but at length perceiving that victory declar'd her self by degrees for the imperial army, Pirouz Bact submitted with a thousand

testimonys of his obedience, tho the wrath of the victorious troops cou'd not be appeas'd but by the pillage of the town, which was at length raz'd to the very foundations. Chap. 54.

CHAP. LIV.

Timur enters Georgia at the head of his army. The description of the Persian way of hunting; as also of the Gerke and Nerke.

GOD hath recommended to Mahomet to excite the Mussulmans to make war on the enemys of their religion, because it is the most excellent of all actions; and the Alcoran praises above all others, those who risk their fortunes and lives in such a war.

This was Timur's only aim, from the beginning of his rise to his death; but he particularly executed it at this time by beginning a war which he had a long while projected.

His zeal exciting him to march to Teflis[1], when he was decamp'd from before Cars, he mounted his horse in a rising ground nam'd Ac Bogra, at a time when the violenc of the cold was extraordinary, and the air was full of ice and frost.

He continued his march by Kitou, and at length arriv'd at Teflis. The strength of the walls of this town had render'd the Georgians proud and insolent, in imitation of the other infidels; insomuch that confiding in the citadel, which they had very well fortify'd, they prepar'd for a vigorous defence.

[1] Capital of the kingdom of Georgia, long. 83. lat. 43.

The

Book II. The emperor gave orders for the siege. The Emirs and other officers prepar'd with all expedition the arms and machines necessary for assaulting the place. After having put in order the wings, the body, and other parts of the army, they invested the town; and at the same time cry'd out, *Allahou Ecber*, God is great, which is the cry call'd Souroun, already spoken of. Then the emperor took his sword in his hand, and our soldiers cover'd with their great bucklers made a general assault on the town. All the brave men of the army gave marks of an extraordinary valor; and apply'd themselves so briskly to their duty, that thro the assistance of heaven this royal town was conquer'd, and prince Malek Ipocrates [4] taken prisoner, and brought to the emperor: he was bound in chains, and carefully secur'd.

After this conquest, the emperor departed from Teflis, and resolv'd to follow the diversion of hunting: so the Emirs receiv'd his orders, and the troops form'd the Nerke, that is, being rang'd in a circle to hinder the passage of the beasts, they surrounded a great space of ground full of plains and hills; and some time after was the Gerke, that is, the men who form'd this circle, constantly approaching one another, the stags, deers, lions and other wild beasts of all sorts, were shut up and brought into a narrow compass.

Explication of the Gerke and Nerke, in the Persians hunting.

When the emperor, the princes his sons, and other princes of the royal blood, were enter'd into the circle according to the customary rules of the chase, and had taken their diversion in killing many wild beasts, the soldiers who enter'd in

[4] King of Georgia, a Christian, who afterwards turn'd Mahometan.

their

their turn into the inclosure, took all they cou'd with their hands, of which they kill'd the best, and let go the others: in short, there was more game kill'd than the troops cou'd carry away, and they were oblig'd to abandon a great part to the mercy of the birds of prey, and other savage beasts *.

CHAP. LV.

Timur returns to Carabagh.

TIMUR departed from this country with such good fortune, that thro the divine assistance, his troops in the road, and the neighbouring places, made themselves masters of many towns and castles, which were in the hands of the infidels: they releas'd the country from their tyranny; and having pillag'd all the places which these men had with so much difficulty conquer'd, they enrich'd themselves with a vast booty.

The victorious army encamp'd at Cheki, from whence the emperor sent several bodys of troops against the infidels. The Emir Gehan Chah had orders to fall upon the Lekezians, who were entirely pillag'd and the major part slain.

The Emir Mehemed Dervich Berlas enter'd with a body of troops into the mountains of Cheki, where he took many fugitive rebels, whom he put in irons, making 'em slaves; and the soldiers seiz'd on every thing they had.

* A more compleat account of this way of hunting practis'd among the Eastern nations, may be seen in the history of Genghiz Can. Book III. ch. 7. p. 260.—266.

Ar-

Book II. Argoun Chah, and Ramadan Chah, with other troops march'd with expedition to the province of Tencgout, where they perform'd several warlike exploits: they kill'd a great many men, plunder'd all the places, and carry'd away so many captives, that all the country was surpris'd.

The Emir Mehemed Bei, and the Emir Moussa, also brought their troops into the country of Acdgeb, and made themselves masters of it: and Timur at the head of a victorious army caus'd the standard of the holy war which he undertook, to be fix'd at the foot of mount Alburz, where he made known the purity of his intentions, and the strength of his faith, by hymns and psalms, which he sung to the praise of God, in token of the triumphs of the mussalman religion, and the destruction of that of the infidels.

The Emirs at length return'd, after they had fully executed their commission, by the conquest of the castles and towns of the infidels, the greatest part of which were razed, for the chastisement of their disorders, and by the booty which they brought away. These generals join'd the imperial camp in a place nam'd Cabale, or Cambale. They also made themselves masters of the red castle, and razed it: from thence they came to Carabagh Surcab *, from whence the army march'd to encamp on the banks of the river Cor †, over which they built a bridge, which was carry'd on by the means of floats of reeds and little sticks, which the emperor had order'd to be made. He cross'd this bridge at the head of the army, and march'd to Berda [s], the inhabitants of which submitted without making any defence.

* Calasurk.

† Cyrus.

[s] In the province of Aran, between the Black-sea and the Caspian, joining Georgia, long. 83. lat. 40. 30.

Timur

Timur being at Carabagh, order'd Ipocrates, prince of Teflis, to be brought before him, whom he had before imprison'd and put in irons. He had a conference with this prince concerning the mahometan religion, invited him to be a Mussulman, and gave him a thousand good reasons to persuade him to it; and he communicated to him so much light in relation to the law of Mahomet, that thro a special grace, that of the vocation enter'd into his mind, which had been hitherto full of darkness. In short, Ipocrates quitted his error, and turn'd Mussulman. He declar'd there was no other god than God; and that Mahomet was not simply a man as others, but that he was the envoy of God, and the seal of the prophets: and in fine, having confess'd the divine unity, he was rank'd among the true Mahometans.

This man had a coat of mail, which was reported to have been that which the prophet David had forg'd in a smith's shop, and which he had made proof of by several times soaking and dying it.

He presented this piece to Timur, with other curiosities remarkable for their antiquity. This monarch receiv'd 'em, and not only permitted him to be of the number of his favorites, but thro the zeal which he had of winning over to him the hearts of others, he permitted him to return home, after having honor'd him with several presents. All this good treatment from Timur, was the cause that most part of the people of this kingdom embrac'd the mahometan religion.

---

[a] In this passage we see a specimen of those trifling ideas the Mahometans have of antient history: there are many more ridiculous in the following part of this work.

At

Book II. At this time the Emir Cheik Ibrahim, prince of Chirvan [7], who by his power, reputation, honesty, and noble descent, was distinguish'd among the kings of that time, came to court; and as he was a man of good sense, he submitted entirely to the emperor; and by this means he had the honor to kiss the carpet of the throne. He offer'd handsom presents; and among other things several parcels of raritys, each of which, according to custom, was compos'd of nine pieces.

Among the other galant actions of this prince to render himself agreable to Timur, the following was most pleasing to this monarch: After having brought out all the parcels of raritys, which shou'd have been nine pieces of each sort, he presented him with eight captives which he had bought; and as some one said that the ninth piece was wanting, he presented himself to make up the number: which so highly pleas'd Timur, that he not only loaded him with favors and gifts, but even gave him the kingdom of Chirvan with its dependences, and the title of king of Chirvan, under which title he became famous in the world.

Timur also receiv'd tokens of submission from the sovereigns of Ghilan [8], who for several ages, confiding in the strength of their walls, and the difficulty of access to their mountains and woods, as also in the number of their marshes and sloughs, had not obey'd any king. The princes who then reign'd sent their children and

[7] A province near Armenia, which has for its capital Chamaki, long. 84. 30. lat. 40. 50.

[8] A province on the south shore of the Caspian sea, whose capital is Derbavend, long. 87. 20. lat. 36. 10.

officers,

officers with presents to the foot of the throne, who promis'd for their masters not only a ready obedience, but also the payment of a tribute. Chap. LVI.

Then the Chiek Ali Behader, who had the care of the emperor's baggage, arriv'd at Carabagh by the way of Ardevil; and the emperor pass'd the winter on the banks of the river Oroms.

CHAP. LVI.

The march of Timur to Berda. The motion of the army of Capchac. Defeat of the troops of Tocatmich Can.

AS soon as winter was gone, that is, at the beginning of the year of the Hegira 789, which among the Moguls is call'd the year of the Crocodile, the invincible Timur march'd to Berda, having heard that Tocatmich Can of Capchac had revolted, and brought an army into the field, which he had sent by the way of Derbend [1], contrary to the counsel of Ali Bei Goncograde [2], Orone Timur, and Acbonga Behrine [2]. These three Emirs, famous in the empire of Toschi Can, were remarkable for their prudence, candor, and nobleness of mind; they daily endeavor'd to shew the falsity of the sentiments of Tocatmich Can, and represented to him the way he ought to take: they counsel'd him to preserve the rights of the emperor Timur An. Dom. 1387.

[1] A town of Asiatic, on the W. shore of the Caspian Sea, long. 89. lat. 43. It is also call'd Bab-el-bouab.
[2] Tribes of Tartars in Capchac.

in full force, to treat his offers with civility, and to acknowledg the obligations due to this monarch, who had put him in possession of the empire of Touchi, and of the throne of his ancestors, by his power, favors, and extraordinary goodness, without which he cou'd never have attain'd to that grandeur and majesty to which he is at present rais'd; that thus he was oblig'd always to remember the favors he had receiv'd from this great prince, and to give marks of his gratitude, since the thoughts of it always occasion'd joy, and it is sometimes the sole cause of the rise of a kingdom. "Who knows, say they, "but that in some change of fortune, (from "which God preserve the Can!) he must not be "oblig'd to have recourse to the protection of "the great monarch Timur, as to an asylum?" In short, the sincerity of these lords, who only sought his good, was of great service to the kingdom, till Cazanchi, who had kill'd his own father, found means to approach him, together with Ali Bei; but as soon as these disturbers of the state had an easy access, Toratmich, at their persuasion, turning from the right way, broke off the good correspondence he had kept with Timur, proudly declar'd himself his enemy, and brought an army into the field, which he sent into Azerbijana.

Timur had speedy notice of these things; and there was no sooner advice brought him that they perceiv'd on the other side of the river Cur a great body of strange troops, than he order'd Cheik Ali Behader, Aicontmur, Osman Abbas, and other Emirs, to cross the river, and to observe the disposition of affairs in that country, and to inform him of it; tho at the same time he prohibited their attacking the troops which were seen there, if they belong'd to the army of Torat-

Tocatmich, because of the treaty made with that prince. When these Emirs were departed from the camp, Timur, excited by his good fortune, sent after them the Mirza Miran Chah, Hadgi Seifeddin, and other princes, with troops to assist them, in case they shou'd be attack'd. In short, those who went first, coming up to the enemy's army, knew it to belong to Tocatmich Can: wherefore upon serious reflection they dissembled their desire of fighting, and immediately retir'd; but the enemys attributing this action to cowardice, grew proud, and fell upon 'em, discharging all their arrows. Then our men perceiving themselves force'd to it, bravely defended their lives: and a bloody fight ensu'd, tho our Emirs were not prepar'd for it. The field of battel was near a wood, which hinder'd our men from fighting after their own manner, so that they cou'd not dogg the enemys, as they desir'd; and this situation was the reason that about forty horse were kill'd, and our Mirzas, who were always admir'd for their valor, were put to the rout.

Chap. 56.

In the mean time the Mirza Miran Chah, who had cross'd the river of Cor, arriv'd with the troops he commanded: he saw this tragical spectacle, and at the same time fell upon the enemy. All his brave men fought 'em both on the right and left, killing all they met; insomuch that not being able to sustain the attacks of our warriors, they shamefully fled. Our soldiers pursu'd 'em as far as Derbend: they took a great many prisoners, whom the Mirza Miran Chah put in irons, and sent to court. Choride, brother of Molacher, who was wounded in the fight, was of that number, and was brought to the imperial camp: but Timur affecting an air of gravity and resolution, did not only not punish

Book II. the wickedness of these miserable people; but rather chose to pardon 'em. He [illegible] d of 'em concerning Tocatmich Can, as he had done before the last action, and shew'd the good [illegible] bore to him by these words: "How co[illegible] "that your prince, whom I regard as my son, [illegible] "me so ill, as to send an army into this coun[illegible] "without any provocation given him? For you "know there is between us a certain right of "fatherhood and sonship. And why is he the "occasion of the loss of so many thousands of "Mussulmans? It is requisite that for the fu-"ture he abstain from this method of acting, "which will bring shame upon him; and on "the contrary, he must punctually observe the "articles of alliance which we have sworn to, "instead of rekindling the war which was lain to "asleep." After our monarch had thus spoken to 'em, he set 'em at liberty, ordering 'em clothes and money, and a guide to conduct 'em; that they should pass thro the midst of the army, and be sent back to Capchac, where they ordinarily dwelt.

The verses which the celebrated Cheik Sadi[1] applys to God, may be properly refer'd here to Timur: "How can he deprive his friends of "his favors, who so liberally distributes 'em a-"mong his enemys?"

After the Mirza Miran Chah, had repass'd the river Cor, he return'd to the camp by the banks of that river, and at length decamp'd, to march to Gheuctche Tenghiz, which signifys the blue sea.

---

[1] The author of Gulistan, or *Rosarium Politicum*, a book of morality, translated into latin by Gentius.

CHAP.

CHAP. LVII.

The arrival of the empress Serai Mulc Canum, and the princes her sons.

WHEN the court was at Gheuctche Tenghiz, the emperor had advice that Serai Mulc Canum was coming thither with the young princes, the Mirza Charoc and the Mirza Calil, his sons, from Samarcand. He was so overjoy'd, that leaving his court at Gheuctche Tenghiz, he took horse, and went with expedition to meet 'em. He met this charming company at Merend, where the princes, with their mother, sprinkled, according to custom, gold and pretious stones upon his head, in so great quantity that the officers were fatigu'd in gathering 'em up; and they then spread out their rich presents, consisting of the most singular raritys. Afterwards the emperor departed from Merend to return to his camp, and at length march'd to the castle of Alengic, where there was a fortress commanded by the lieutenants of Sultan Ahmed.

Three days after his arrival, he order'd that the Emirs with their soldiers, shou'd in the night ascend the mountain which join'd this place, and as soon as it was day attack it. They executed this order, and making themselves masters of the lower citadel, with sword in hand they ruin'd it. Those who guarded it, being afraid, fled to the top of the fortress, the inhabitants of which were so bold as to refuse to surrender, tho they wanted water. Yet at length thirst reduc'd 'em to despair; for being ready to perish, they capitulated, and promis'd with an oath to

Book II. depart out of the place, and giving up to the besiegers; which was the reason that they ceas'd attacking it, and came down from the mountain. But the minute the besieg'd were ready to go out, there came a great cloud, followed by a large shower of rain, which in twenty four hours fill'd all the cisterns and reservatorys of water; and they had no sooner quench'd their thirst, then they broke their word and treaty.

Timur hereupon order'd Mehemed Mireke and Outchcara Behader to begin the siege; and this prince retir'd into the camp. He had sent before this enterprize the Cheik Ali Behader against the fortress of Bayazid; but as soon as he arriv'd there, not thinking himself strong enough to carry the place, he was follow'd by the Emirs Haugi Seifeddin and Aiecutmur, at the head of a great detachment. At length, they besieg'd the place together, attack'd it on all sides, beat down the walls, and wan'd back the waters: insomuch that in a short time having taken and raz'd it, they put the governor in chains, and brought him to the emperor.

CHAP. LVIII.

Timur's army marches against Cara Mehemed, prince of the Turcomans.

AT this time the emperor Timur having advice that the Turcomans were always molesting the Mussulmans, whom they attack'd not only in the ordinary caravans, but even in those of Mecca, to which the name of holy was given; and that no one cou'd pass safely by the places where they dwelt; he departed from the province of Nakchivan, and march'd towards

'em,

'em, after having sent orders to Mehemed Mi- Chap. 8.
reke, whom he left at the siege of Alengic, to come immediately to the camp. He also order'd in the road, that the baggage shou'd march to Alaque, and stay there.

Then the emperor march'd with expedition at the head of his army, and as soon as he arriv'd at the castle of Bayazid, formerly call'd the fort of Kadin, the troops pillag'd it, and plunder'd all that the inhabitants had left in that country. Passing further, they arriv'd at the castle of Avenie[1], where Meser, son of Cara Mehemed, resided: they pillag'd all they found belonging to the Turcomans in the mountains and plains of those provinces, and in the neighbouring places.

From thence they march'd to the town of Erzerum[2], which they took the same day they came; and Timur encamp'd on the banks of the river of Chiachour, from whence he sent an ambassador to Arzendgian[3], to persuade Taharten, the sovereign of it, to make his submission to him. The ambassador was receiv'd with many honors and ceremonys. Taharten gave him a favorable reception, and treated him with all imaginable respect; he obey'd the emperor, and consented to pay the Carage[4]; and having charm'd the ambassador by a thousand civilitys, he sent him back to his master.

Then our prince appointed three of his best squadrons, under the command of Mirza Miran Chah to go in search of Cara Mehemed[5], father

[1] The same as Van, situate in the upper Armenia.

[2] A town formerly call'd Arzen-Arroum, and Erzerom, situate in Bilad-Arroum, i. e. Anatolia, or lesser Asia; long. 77. lat. 39. 46.

[3] A town of Armenia; long. 74. lat. 38.

[4] A tribute which the Mahometan princes exact from the Christians and Jews, who dwell in their dominions.

[5] The chief of the monarchy of the black-sheep.

Book II. of Cara Youlef Turcoman, [illegible] entered with his brave warriors [illegible] lands of these disturbers of the people's [illegible] and after having plunder'd their cattel, [illegible] mels, sheep, and other goods, made the [illegible] part of their wives and daughters slaves, [illegible] they brought away, and then rejoin'd the cou[illegible]

Mehemed Mirzke was also sent into this country on the same account with a body of men: the road which he took brought him by chance into the mountains, where he found a narrow passage stopt up, into which he march'd. The enemy perceiving him, oppos'd his passage; so that our brave men were oblig'd to draw their swords. Nevertheless, thro Timur's good fortune, they escap'd out of this dangerous place after a bloody conflict; and return'd with expedition to the camp.

Soon after, Cheik Ali, son of [illegible], Ichalchi Bareougi, and [illegible] Coutchin, all valiant and intrepid men, put themselves at the head of another squadron, to go in search of Cara Mehemed: they march'd every where with extraordinary diligence, and at length discover'd him; where he was retir'd to the top of an inaccessible mountain among steep rocks: nevertheless they attack'd him; our men did surprising actions, and Lala Coja, who had been the emperor's governor, was slain in the fight. At length the enemy got upon the ridge of the mountain, where he was out of our reach; upon which the Emirs thinking all their attacks wou'd be in vain, immediately return'd, and brought their troops to the imperial camp.

Timur then sent thither some other chosen troops under the conduct of Gehan Chah Behader; this captain also enter'd their country, which he plunder'd, bringing away a great num-

ber

ber of their cattel, arms, and other goods, which were distributed among the troops, who return'd to the camp in triumph. Chap. 38.

In the mean while Chah Malek, son of Cayaseddin Berlas, who was gone another way without the emperor's order, was found dead in a desart, where he had been slain by these robbers.

The emperor decamp'd, and march'd to the plain of Mouche [6], all the houses of which he caus'd to be plunder'd. He at length arriv'd at the city of Eclat [7], where the people submitted to him; and after having given 'em skilful commanders, he departed for the town of Adelgiaouz, the prince of which came out to meet Timur, to whom he submitted; and having the good fortune to kiss the carpet, he laid at the emperor's feet as much gold and precious stones as he was able; he also made other presents, and at length being assisted by his good fortune, he was rank'd among the officers of this prince, who according to his wonted clemency loaded him with his favours; not only cherish'd him, but again confirm'd him in the principality of his country and all his lands.

Timur continu'd his march by the lake of Van, and march'd to Bend Mahi [8], from thence to Aiatac, where the baggage and body of the

---

[6] A village at the foot of a mountain, from whence springs a little river; it has a plain twelve days journy long, call'd Sahrai Mouche, i. e. the plain of Mouche. It is in the lower Armenia, two days journy from Mia Farekin, and three from Eclat; long. 73. 50. lat. 39. 50.

[7] The capital of lower Armenia, long. 75. 50. lat. 39. 20.

[8] A place from whence a little river discharges it self into the lake of Van, and where are caught a great many little fish call'd Tarric.

The author of this work hath wrote a particular description of the lake of Van.

army

Book III. [illegible] in the [illegible] of Ahard

CHAP. LIX.

Timur marches to Van and Vastan; The letter which Chah Chaja King of Persia wrote to Timur at his death.

THE victorious standard of Timur was carry'd to Van and Vastan; and Malek Azeddin, who commanded there, being afraid of the army, shut himself up in a castle, which is a strong citadel, situate on the ridge of a mountain, and border'd on one side by a lake.

The army us'd all their efforts to storm; they invested the fortress on the land side, and permitted nothing which is practis'd in sieges; they also attack'd the walls of the town.

Two days after Malek Azeddin was insnar'd by his good genius to obey Timur; he came down from the fortress, and had the honor to kiss the carpet of the throne: but the inhabitants, by reason of their hatefness, revolted from their prince, and wou'd not receive him: they fortify'd the avenues of the fortress, and put themselves in a posture of defence: whereupon our troops erected batteries round, got ready their machines for casting of stones, and assaulted the place.

This famous fortress, which had never been conquer'd by any sovereign, was taken by the

[a] A town S. E. of Van, and at six leagues distance; situate in the lower Armenia, on the bank of the lake of Van, long. 77. 50. lat. 34. 50.

arms

arms of the great Timur on the twentieth day of the siege; and our troops entered it sword in hand: they slew a great number of the rebels, and cast down many from the top of the mountain, after having tyed them neck and heels. And thus they clear'd the world of these villains, who had no other employment than that of committing disorders and robberies.

Then there arriv'd at court an ambassador from Arzendgian on the part of Taharten, who sent presents of abundance of curiosities, as silver money, the finest horses, and mules of a particular breed.

The prince's letter contain'd a testimonial of his respects and obedience, offers of his service, and a resolution to be always firmly attach'd to Timur's interest.

The emperor gave a very favorable reception to the ambassador, and dispatch'd orders, wherein he confirm'd the principality of Arzendgian to Taharten as heretofore, and dismiss'd him with [illegible] in his adventure, with which he [illegible] inestimable riches.

The emperor order'd the castle of Van to be demolish'd. There are several incredible things related concerning this fortress; and among others, that it was built by Cheddad son of Aad, on the brink of a very steep mountain, and that Yadgiar Andcondi, who was prince of a Toman, having one day undertaken to raze it, he could not so much as loosen a stone tho' he employ'd a great number of soldiers.

Timur departing from his camp, happily arriv'd at Selmaz[1], where after having gratify'd Malek Azzeddin by his favors, he left him in

[1] A town of Azerbijana, long. 79. 5. lat. 37. 40.

the

Book II. the government of all Kurdistan, and at the same time began his march.

The prince of Ermitizec had at that time the honor to kiss the imperial carpet; and after having made his submission, he acquitted himself of the duty as a servant is oblig'd to perform, and gave great marks of his obedience. His sincere submission was the reason that Timur left him the principality of Ermit, and made him a present of a young she-slave, of extraordinary beauty.

The emperor at length march'd to Meraga [a], and from thence to Ghilan, where he staid some days; he had before that sent a man nam'd Merahem to Zein Elabeddin, son of Chah Chuja prince of Chiraz [b], to summon him to come to him, with order to tell him that his father was particularly attach'd to the emperor, with whom he had made an alliance; that at the time of his death he had wrote a letter to recommend his son to him; that it belong'd to him to make appear his willingness to continue this friendship, and shew some marks of his zeal; and that as a testimony of this union, he ought to come with expedition to the emperor's court, which was not far from him, there to receive the favors of this monarch, and have a handsom reception; that he might at length return home with all the satisfaction he can possibly expect, not only as to himself in particular, but what might procure the advancement of his friends, and abasement of his enemys.

As we have had occasion to mention the letter of Chah Chuja, we have thought proper to insert a copy of it here, that the reader may have a detail of all the circumstances.

---

[a] A town of Azerbijana, long. 82. lat. 37. 20.

[b] Capital of Fars, not so antient as Estacar, the Persepolis of the antients, long. 88. lat. 29. 36.

A letter writ to the emperor Timur by Gelaleddin Cheh Chaga, king of Persia, and prince of Chiraz, just before his death.

"GOD is truly living; there is no other "god than God: every thing is done by "his order, and you must return to him.

"May it please God that this letter come "safe to the hands of him, whose majesty and "power extends as far as heaven, which is the "support of empire; who is the most accom-"plish'd of all those, who make profession of "practising justice and mercy: the liberal pro-"tector of the greatest kings, the most equitable "and just of the emperors of the earth, and of "this time; whom God always favorably re-"gards, because he is the Pole of truth; THE "EMIR TIMUR GOURCAN: whose "reign and empire may God establish for ever, "that the Sultans, the masters of the world, "and the most powerful princes, may fly to him "for refuge. God grant that this emperor may "always be aiding in the execution of the di-"vine orders, and in rendring all due respects "to the commands of the Almighty: and lastly, "may this prince, who has no equal in the "world, arrive to the highest pitch of his de-"sires.

"After having thus wish'd you all happiness, "and given you all the praises which are requi-"site to maintain union among true friends; "we put you in mind that great men esteem the "world as the theatre of inconstancy, and the "place of the most strange events; and that "men of learning are never attach'd to trifles, "nor transitory pleasures and beauty's, because

"they

Book II. "they know that the corruption of all things "being necessary, the duration of creatures is "impossible; for which reason they have pre-"fer'd the delights of eternity to the perishable "things of this world. In short, I have em-"ploy'd, poor and indigent as I am, as far as in "me lay, these few days which I have receiv'd "of God, to exalt the standards of the faith, "to observe the order of the law and of justice, "and to execute the commandments of our pro-"phet in all those things which the Creator has "put into my power; and in fine, I have only "apply'd my self in the sight of God, and for "the love of him, to preserve the people under "my protection in perpetual peace; and by the "divine grace, I have carry'd my self with all "the world, as well as I was able, in the man-"ner your highness cou'd expect.

"As to the treaty of peace and alliance made "between us, delighting never to break it, I re-"gard the gaining of the imperial friendship "as a great conquest; and the chief of my "wishes hath been to remain firm and constant "in this peace, and, if I dare say it, to have "in my hand the treaty I have with you at the "day of judgment, lest you shou'd reproach me "for having broke my word.

"You have continually loaded me with favors "thro your goodness; they have drawn upon "you the praises and approbation of every one; "and the manner in which you have bestow'd "'em is the cause that they are known throughout the world.

"As I am at present call'd before the tribunal "of the sovereign master of the universe, I "thank his divine majesty, in that I have done "nothing wherewith my conscience can re-"proach me, notwithstanding any thing I can

"with

"wish for; because notwithstanding the faults
"and sins I have committed, which are inse-
"parable from human life and the depav'd na-
"ture of men, God hath liberally granted what-
"ever I could desire; and I have tasted all the
"pleasures I could expect, during the fifty three
"years I have staid on earth.

"Thus with a spirit full of confidence, al-
"ways hoping that the beneficent and merci-
"ful God will pardon my faults, I have an-
"swer'd, whensoever he hath call'd me, that
"I am ready to obey. In short, I die as I have
"liv'd, only carrying with me the word of the
"unity of God, and turning my eyes and my
"desiges towards the Creator alone, who finds
"nothing agreeable in us except our good
"works; and I have abandon'd all the vanitys
"of the world.

"I pray God to give his blessing to this mo-
"narch, who is as wise as Solomon, and as
"great as Alexander; to preserve for a long
"time that life and empire; to augment the
"[illegible] and to stretch out farther
"[illegible] that all men
"may be under the protection of his justice.

"In consideration of the sincere union be-
"tween you and us, I thought it my duty to let
"you know the state of all things. Tho it be
"not necessary to recommend to you my dear
"son Zein Elabeddin, God grant him a long
"life under the shadow of your protection; for
"I leave him to the care of God and your ma-
"jesty, as well as my other children and bro-
"thers, having always regarded your alliance
"and friendship as the greatest treasure I can
"leave to my successors. I don't doubt your
"performance of the treaty, not only as the
"maintaining of treatys is a point of religion,

"which

Book II. "which we are oblig'd to have regard to, but also "because of the good-will you have always "shown to any who belong to me on every occasion.

"I therefore beseech your majesty to look upon all the princes who wait upon his person "with an eye of distinction, according to your "usual custom, and to grant 'em your protection "in all their affairs; so that the people of this "present time may see the marks of it, and it "may be declared to all future generations: "and that the envious, who for a long time "have wish'd my ruin, may have no cause to "rejoice at my death, nor to take advantage of "my family; but on the contrary, be oblig'd "to pay respect to my memory, and your majesty's merit.

"I also beg of you to say the Fatibha[a] and "other prayers for your sincere friend, who has "the happiness to depart out of this world in "peace and alliance with you, that thro' the "blessing of the prayers of a prince so great and "happy, my people may know that God hath "been merciful to me, and rais'd me up among "the saints. This is what we pray your ma"jesty to execute, as our last will, of which "you being the depositary, it will answer in "this world and in the next.

"Lastly, I beseech the Almighty, that be"cause of your majesty's good works, he will "assist you always with his favors, and make "the rest of your reign happy."

[a] The first chapter of the Alcoran, which the Turks read, as we do the Lord's prayer.

CHAP.

[illegible]

Timur [illegible] *Agens.*

[illegible] good fortune and prosperity of Zein [illegible] Elabeddin was almost as an end, he won'd [illegible] appear before the emperor, [illegible] extravagant [illegible] of this [illegible] into the [illegible] and resolv'd [illegible] into Fars and Irac.

In the autumn of the year of the Crocodile, which answers to the year of the Hegira 789, this monarch prepar'd to conquer these two kingdoms. He compos'd the vanguard of his army of his best troops, which he sent before; and [illegible] as well as the baggage, to march [illegible] the winter at Sarek [illegible] An. Dom. 1387.

[illegible] and [illegible] to guard the baggage, and the imperial standard, with the rest of the army, march'd towards the kingdom of Fars, whose capital is Schiraz [6], an agreeable city, which had formerly been the residence of the kings of Persia for ma[illegible]

[illegible] emperor having march'd thro the country of Hamadan [7], arriv'd at Gerbadecan [8],

[6] A town of Conhistan, a province of Persia, long. 86. 20. lat. 35. 34.

[7] The same as Persepolis, long. 88. 20. lat. 30.

[8] A town of Dorchistan, long. 84. 9. lat. 38.

[9] A town of Conhistan, long. 85. 25. lat. 34. It is also call'd Chilpaieghan.

[illegible] his army [illegible] battel; [illegible] thence he went to [illegible] the city of Ispahan [1].

Said Muzaffer Cachi, uncle of [illegible] Eldeddin on the mother's side, and governor of the city for this prince, came out, accompanied by Coja Rukneddin Saadi, and all the [illegible] Chegiks, doctors of the law, and other principal inhabitants of the city, to implore the emperor's clemency. They had the honour to kiss the imperial carpet: Timur received them favourably, and treated them with friendship and clemency.

Timur enters Ispahan.

The troops having seiz'd on all the avenues of the city, Timur enter'd it in triumph, and retir'd into the fortress of Tabariuk [2]. He then placed a garrison in Ispahan, the command of which he gave to Aycoutlu, and return'd to his camp, where he regulated the [illegible] of soldiers which [illegible] the [illegible] the city should be given [illegible] the hands of his officers, which order was put in execution.

The chief men and elders of the city [illegible] into the imperial council, where the sum settled which was to be paid to redeem the [illegible] of the inhabitants, to whom quarter had given. They consented to [illegible] every one tax'd to pay his share of it; and they [illegible] commissarys to collect the money.

The quarters of the city were share'd [illegible] the Emirs, and it was order'd that every [illegible] shou'd send one of his men as a commi[illegible] his quarter; and that all the money which

[1] A city of Chusistan, the present capital of Persia. 86. 40. lat. 32. 25.

[2] The fortress of Ispahan is thus call'd.

com-

commissarys collected, shou'd be committed to the care of Nour Mah[illegible] and Mehemed Sultan Chah. Timur [illegible] the grandees of Ispahan [illegible] into the city to g[illegible] which was [illegible]

But [illegible] fell out that a rash young fellow [illegible] the tribunals of Ispahan, nam'd Ali G[illegible] by trade a smith, cam'd in the night [illegible] to be heard in the city; and at this [illegible] a company of rabble, met together, which design'd shew their zeal. They surrounded the quarters of the [illegible] the commissarys throats [illegible] to this massacre [illegible] of each quarter, who, very wise and brave men, defended against the rabble of these villains.

Several soldiers, who were gone into the city on particular occasions, were massacred in the night, and Mehemed son of Catai Behader was of this number. In short, there were more than [illegible] of our men kill'd in this sedition. [illegible] put to the sword [illegible] of the city, [illegible] and endeavor'd to fortify 'em as long as they were masters of 'em, that they might hinder the passage of our troops: and this these seditious villains laid the foundation of a grievous rebellion, to execute the designs with which their chimerical imaginations had flatter'd 'em.

The next morning the circumstances of this [illegible] were made known to the emperor. He fell into a violent anger; so that he immediately order'd the army to march against the city, and take it.

Our brave warriors at the same time executed this order. Instances were made to hinder the effects of it; but the affair being begun, they

[illegible] retreat from [illegible] inhabitants were constrain'd to fight to defend [illegible] lives; and Beian Timur Acbouga was kill'd [illegible] occasion, which so animated our troops [illegible] they carry'd the town by assault. Timur sent [illegible] to guard the quarter of the Cheriffs, and the [illegible] of the Turcks, where the doctors of the law dwelt, and particularly, the house of Coja Imaneddin Vaez, tho this great preacher had been dead a whole year.

The emperor order'd that all the inhabitants shou'd be put to the sword, and that they shou'd be chastis'd with all sorts of punishments for their revolt, and the massacres they had committed.

The houses of the honest men, who during the disorders had sav'd our warriors from the insult of the rebels, were preserv'd. [illegible] hearts a great number of [illegible] any of the [illegible]

Timur's anger was so great, that he order'd the Tomans, Hezares and Sedes, to furnish a certain quantity of the heads of the inhabitan that every one might share in the punishmen these perfidious persons; and Tavachis of Divan were nam'd to be the controllers and positarys of those heads that were cut off.

It was reported by men of credit, that [illegible] soldiers of our army, who were unwilling kill the Mussulmans, bought heads of the executioners, and carry'd 'em as if they had cut them themselves. At first a head was sold for [illegible] Dinars * Cupeghi; but when every one [illegible] nish'd with the number they were ex[illegible] head was sold for no more than half a Dinar; at last no one bought any. Thus every one

* A sort of mony at that time in use among the Tartars.

the

they met was slain; and a great number who had quarter in the day-time, and who fled in the night, found the ways cover'd with snow, and had the misfortune to be slain next day by the soldiers, who, [illegible] upon revenging the death of their [illegible], follow'd the track of these fugitives, [illegible] 'em out of the places they were [illegible], and put 'em to death: which is a [illegible] of the depth of the divine decrees, and [illegible] God will finish whatsoever he has begun. Chap. 6.

[illegible] the least computations, which are writ in the registers of the Divan, of the number of the men who were [illegible] seventy thousand heads, [illegible] in heaps upon the walls of [illegible], out of which there were at length built towers in several parts of the city.

In short, since the war began, God has not made any people feel a more cruel effect of his wrath than this, to revenge the deaths of three thousand innocent Mussulmans kill'd by this insolent rabble.

[illegible] action happen'd on monday, the [illegible] year of the Hegira 789. An. Dom. 1387.

If we are agreed, that in consequence of the strange effects of the infinite providence of God, so things which happen in this lower world by generation and corruption, have any relation to the motion of the heavenly bodys; we may say that all this happen'd very near the time when the [illegible]enth of the celestial triplicitys was in Gemini, and the conjunction of the two unfortunate planets, Saturn and Mars, was in the sign of Cancer.

CHAP. LXI.

Timour marches to Chiraz [1], the capital of Fars in the town Persia.

TIMOUR after his victory and the conquest of Ispahan, appointed Miangi Bei and Nounan Chah to govern this city for a year, and march'd towards Chiraz. Zein Elabeddin, prince of Persia, had no sooner receiv'd advice of his coming, than he fled to one of his courtiers call'd Mansour, who was governor of Tollar [2], tho they were at variance. Zein Elabeddin acted in this as that man would do, who to avoid the heat of the sun, runs into the fire. He [illegible] out considering that he who indiscreetly trusts his enemy, abandons his own good fortune, exposes himself to the blame of all the world. Zein Elabeddin being arriv'd at the bank of river Dondanke [3], Chah Mansour brib'd troops over to his side.

---

[1] Chiraz was capital of Persia before Ispahan, as present capital of the province of Fars. It was the [illegible] ancient kings, after they had abandon'd Persepolis or Persi[illegible]

[2] Formerly call'd Cachier, a town of the grea[illegible] hours, which is part of Chuzistan, long. 84. 32. [illegible] Here is a great river, over which [illegible] king [illegible] built a famous aqueduct a mile long, by which [illegible]ter is carry'd up to the town. Abulfeda says this river [illegible] most ancient in the world.

[3] Capital of the province of Sapour, which is part of Fars, long. 87. lat. 29. 15.

[4] A river which runs by Tollar.

And as, according to the Alcoran, the temper of soldiers, or rather the corrupt nature of men, tends to [illegible] the obligations they [illegible] master, [illegible] Chah Mansour; [illegible] there remain'd but few with Zein [illegible], which was the reason that Mansour sent other soldiers to seize the prince, and bring him to Tostar. They put him in irons in the castle of Selasel; and at length Chah Mansour caus'd those soldiers to be imprison'd, who had so [illegible] abandon'd their master, [illegible] they had [illegible]

The emperor arriving at Chiraz, fix'd his standard on the first day of the month of Zilhadge, in the year of the Hegira 789; and at the same time his orders were observ'd by all the kingdom, which without opposition was brought in subjection to his officers, and regi[illegible] the dominions of Timur. An. Dom. 1387.

[illegible] commended [illegible] in gaining [illegible] out resistence; and that what is not [illegible] fatigue and labor ought not to be call'd happiness.

The victorious standard was erected, and all the governors and Kelivis of the kingdom had the honor to kiss the ground on which Timur stood, at a place nam'd Tach Caradge, without the city. They agreed to pay a thousand Tomans[1] Kaiphas, and to convey 'em with expedition to the royal treasury.

[1] A Toman is worth twenty French crowns.

[illegible] Abou [illegible] to go in-
[illegible] to receive the sum, [illegible]
[illegible] paid into his hands.

[illegible] this time they kept a feast, wh[illegible]
nor'd with Timur's presence. They [illegible]
Coutbe [1] in his name; and after he had [illegible]
form'd the duties of prayer and sacrifice [2] [illegible]
return'd to his camp.

Chah Yahia, prince of Yezd [3], nephew of the deceas'd king Chah Chuja, with his son-in-law, and his eldest son the Sultan Mahmoud; as also, Sultan Ahmed prince of Kirman [4], and brother of Chah Chuja; and Abou Ishac, grandson of Chah Chuja, who came express from the town of Sirdgian; and all the neighboring sovereigns; as also the Atabecs of Lor [5], and Gourghin Lar [6], who the said to have been of the race of Gourghin Milad; having all made their submissions, had [illegible] house to his [illegible] they made [illegible] nareh, [illegible] a handsom entertainment, and us'd 'em with all imaginable civility; while in the mean time the troops went to [illegible] lage some countrys which were not yet bro[illegible] under subjection.

When the kingdom of Fars, with its [illegible] dencys, was entirely subdu'd, and the [illegible] nants of Timur establish'd in it, the secre[illegible]

---

[1] A kind of homily, where the Cadi, or preacher, with the praises of the prince then reigning.

[2] The publick sacrifice is a camel, and private, a sheep. The sacrifice of the camel is most esteem[illegible]

[3] A town of Fars, long. [illegible] lat. [illegible]

[4] A kingdom in the middle of Coraffana, [illegible] At present it is only a province of Persia. Its capital [illegible] gian, long. 90. 20. lat. 29. 25.

[5] A nation in Coureftan.

[6] A town of Fars near Kirman.

who are call'd Munchis, and the Debirs[1] were employ'd in recording the great exploits and actions done at [illegible] They wrote letters, which they [illegible] in the most [illegible] and after having seal'd [illegible] imperial seal, they sent [illegible] couriers call'd Mobaches, who are [illegible] in carrying of good news, to Sa[illegible], the capital of the empire, in Co[illegible], and to all the other countrys and pro[illegible] in subjection to Timur; which great actions were publish'd in all the mosques, where the Coorbe was read.

CHAP. LXII.

Reasons which induc'd Timur to return to the capital of his empire.

[illegible] thought that this last [illegible] assur'd to him his authority and [illegible] the most perfect things are more easily alter'd than others, there soon grew disturbances in the [illegible]. A courier, who came from Transoxiana in seventeen days, brought advice that a war [illegible] rais'd in that country, and that Tocatmich [illegible] had violated the treaty, and sent a powerful army thither. This army of Capchac, the commanders of which were Bick Yarok Aglen, [illegible] Aglen, Aisa Bei, Satgan Behader, and other [illegible], having march'd by the town of Sa-

[1] Secretarys of state in Persia.

ganac,

Book II. ganac [6], came to that of Sabrah [7], and besieg'd it. Timur Coja Acbouga, who was governor of it for Timur, did his duty in the defence of the town, and vigorously resisted the enemy, who us'd all their efforts to take it; which notwithstanding their valor they cou'd not do; and being constrain'd to raise the siege, they went to ravage other places.

The Mirza Omar Cheik, who was at Andecan, got together all the troops of this quarter, and march'd against 'em; the Emir Soliman Chah and the Emir Abbas, with the troops that remain'd at Samarcand, went to join Omar Cheik, having left to guard that city the Emir Lal, brother to Tagi Bougai Berlas, and Cheik Témour, brother of Akitmur Behader. They cross'd the Sihon together, and met the enemy's army in the field of Juclik, five leagues from Otrar. This expedition was [illegible] the autumn of this year. The two armies were rang'd in order of battel, and began the combat, which continu'd till night. Omar Cheik, the most valiant and dauntless man of the [illegible] rush'd into the very middle of the main body; he pass'd thro all the enemy's army, and was at a great distance from his own. When his soldiers no longer saw him, they began to [illegible] their strength, and were defeated; and the Emir Abbas was wounded with an arrow. In the mean while the Cheik, accompany'd by the good fortune of the invincible Timur, retir'd in safety from the midst of his enemys, and [illegible] with expedition to Andecan, where he rall[illegible] the troops which were dispers'd.

There then came news that Ancatours, a nephew of the Emir Hadgi Bei Ircanout [7], forger-

[6] Towns of Capchac.

[7] A hord of Tartars.

ful of the favors he had receiv'd from the emperor, had also violated the peace; that he was departed from [illegible], at the head of an army, which [illegible] at Sciramond Tachkent; [illegible] that the troops having committed [illegible] hostilitys, had ravag'd this country.

[illegible] Cheik had advice of it, and at the [illegible] assembled the troops of Uzkunt, and [illegible] to Cogende, where he learnt that the [illegible] were gone to Andecan by the road of Chachchkent. He immediately return'd to cut off their retreat, and came up with 'em on the banks of the Sihon before Aesiket[1]. The troops of both partys having secur'd the passes, encamp'd in view of one another, and march'd in the same posture for some days upon the banks, till they found an opportunity of coming to blows.

One night Ancatoura made use of a stratagem [illegible] he left a thousand men in his camp, [illegible] he march'd at the head [illegible] of the river, [illegible] of the camp, to induce the [illegible] to believe that all the army was yet there. He made so much haste, that he found a proper place to pass the Sihon, which he cross'd, and at the same time Omar Cheik march'd against him. The two partys being in view, there ensu'd a battel, in which the prince behav'd himself with courage: but [illegible] enemy far surpass'd him in number, he [illegible], and enter'd Andecan. Anca-

[1] I believe the author is mistaken, and has put Mogolistan instead of Gete, or least that he thinks 'em the same, as is imply'd in other places.

[2] A town, N. of the Sihon, long. 101. 30. lat. 42. 20.

toura

Book II. toura pursu'd him thither, and won'd have made himself master of all the avenues of the town to besiege it; but Omar Cheik, excited by his valor, and trusting in the divine assistance, immediately sally'd out sword in hand, and like a lion fell upon the army of the Getes, who were far more numerous than his own. In the mean while his valor made him rush into the midst of his enemys, whom he fiercely attack'd with his lance and sword; but Toukel Behader made after him sword in hand, laid hold of the bridle of Omar's horse, and led it out of the field.

Ancatoura was not willing to fight any longer; he return'd, and took the road of the country of the infidels. The prince Omar sent troops to pursue him; which they did for three days, insomuch that a great many stragglers of the Getes were slain. The Emir Solyman Chah, the Emir Abbas, and among the [illegible] of Couchons, Temourtach, Berge[illegible] Temour, and others, who retir'd after they had been vanquish'd in the fight of Juclik, staid to guard Samarcand. They made the inhabitants of the suburbs and the neighboring places enter into the city, and sent Temourtach to Termed to secure that. When the enemy arriv'd in those countrys, they only pillag'd the towns; but some of their troops, which went to Bocara, and were there join'd by others of the army of Tocatmich, who came by Carezem, resolv'd upon besieging that city.

Tagi Bougai Berlas was then in the pl[illegible] with Atilmich Coutchin, and Derbi Coutcl[illegible] who had fortify'd the walls. These capt[illegible] fended themselves, and vigorously repuls'd the

* A company of a hundred horse.

enemy;

enemy; insomuch that in the several attacks they made, the [illegible] had always the worst, and [illegible] they rais'd the siege, [illegible] Dahistan. They [illegible] whither they were con-[illegible] Sultan Mahmoud son of Kei Cosru [illegible] march'd by Carshi and Cuzar, [illegible] as far as Kioiten on the banks of the [illegible]. The Emir Abbas at this time died of a [illegible] he receiv'd from an arrow in the battel of [illegible]

CHAP. LXIII.

Timur returns to Samarcand; and gives the government of Fars and Irac to the family of Mouzaffer.

[illegible] being at Chiraz, on advice of [illegible] sent to Sa-[illegible] Osman [illegible] brave [illegible] of the army, commanding him to make haste.

The emperor gave the government of Chiraz to Chah Yahia, nephew of Chah Chuja; that of Ispahan to Sultan Mehemed his eldest son; and that of Kirman to Sultan Ahmed brother of Chah Chuja. He invested the Sultan Abou Isac grandson of Chah Chuja, in the government of the province of Sirdgian, as also in the town and [illegible] which we shall hereafter have occasion to [illegible]. It was made a principality by this [illegible] as also a Siorgal, that is a lordship, which he gave to him and his heirs for ever; and he honor'd all these princes with his letters-patent, seal'd with the imperial signet, which

which is called Altounga, that [illegible] the mark of the red hand.

The emperor then commanded the [illegible]ous and learned lord, the Cherifi Gorjani, [illegible] the country of Fars, and reside at the royal [illegible] of Samarcand. He gave the same orders to the principal Emirs of the deceas'd king Chah Ch[illegible] to the Emir Aladin Kiaja, and to many other lords who were the principal men of the state; and he sent to the same country the workmen and artists with their familys, whom he found to be most expert and skilful in their respective trades. Then having resolv'd to return to Samarcand, he took horse at the end of the month of Muharrem, in the year of the Hegira 790, at a most lucky moment.

An. Dom. 1388.

When Timur was arriv'd at [illegible], the brave Pehlevan Muhaddeb Gorjani, governor and prince of Abrecouh [illegible] to inform him, that it not [illegible] to leave the town without a governor, he besought him to send a Deroga, that he might have the happiness to kiss the ground in presence of the emperor; in which case he wou'd come with expedition to court. Timur sent thither Toukel Baour Chah, who was no sooner arriv'd than Muhaddeb readily went to meet the monarch; and by the procurement of the Emirs he had the honor to kiss the imperial carpet. When the victorious standard was arriv'd at Abrecouh, Muhaddeb paid his humble respects to Timur, and after having offer'd presents suitable to his ability, he gave him a sumptuous feast, and was treated with all manner of civility by

[1] A river which passes by Chiraz.

[2] A town of Fars, dependent on Eshecar, long. 87. 50. lat. 31. 30.

emperor,

emperor, who confirm'd him by letters-patent in [illegible] his principality of [illegible].

The court [illegible] to Ispahan and Tacfanol [illegible] and advice of Timur [illegible] with his army, however [illegible] they seem'd before, they now thou[illegible] fly; some went to Carezem, o[illegible] the [illegible] of Capchac; and the victo[illegible] having cross'd the Gihon, and [illegible] at the seat of the empire, was set up [illegible] the city of Samarcand.

Timur immediately sent Codadad Husseini, Cheik Ali [illegible] and others, in pursuit of the enemy.

These princes march'd day and night to come up with 'em; they drove 'em as far as Bilen; and after having put abundance of 'em to the sword, they return'd to court.

[illegible]

[illegible] mirs, whom he had left in Tricastania.

THE troops of the emperor Timur being accustom'd to vanquish their enemys, it appear'd strange to this monarch that in the battle of Jaclik the army of Tocatmich Can had had the advantage of our troops. Upon which he order'd that they shou'd bring before him the Emirs who had been at the battle, and having learnt from themselves the particular circumstances of the fight, he order'd 'em to be question'd in the council of war, and then to be prisoners.

Berat

[illegible] Coulkeitach, [illegible] occasion [illegible] no marks of that valor which is usual in the hero of a triumphant army; had his beard shav'd [1]; and after having receiv'd severe reproaches for his cowardice, they painted his face with [illegible] on his head a [illegible] and made him run [illegible]

On the contrary, [illegible] had had shewn an heroic courage [illegible] the enemy, and with thirteen men [illegible] in the night three hundred infidels of [illegible] ra's party in Yactchal near Cogende, [illegible] deliver'd out of their hands several of the inhabitants of Cogende and the countrys adjacent, whom they had made slaves, and w[illegible] afterwards sent to their country [illegible] I say, receiv'd, as a reward [illegible] a courage [illegible] for [illegible] after many other considerable favors and caresses from Timur, he was honor'd with the priviledg'd order of Tercan [2],

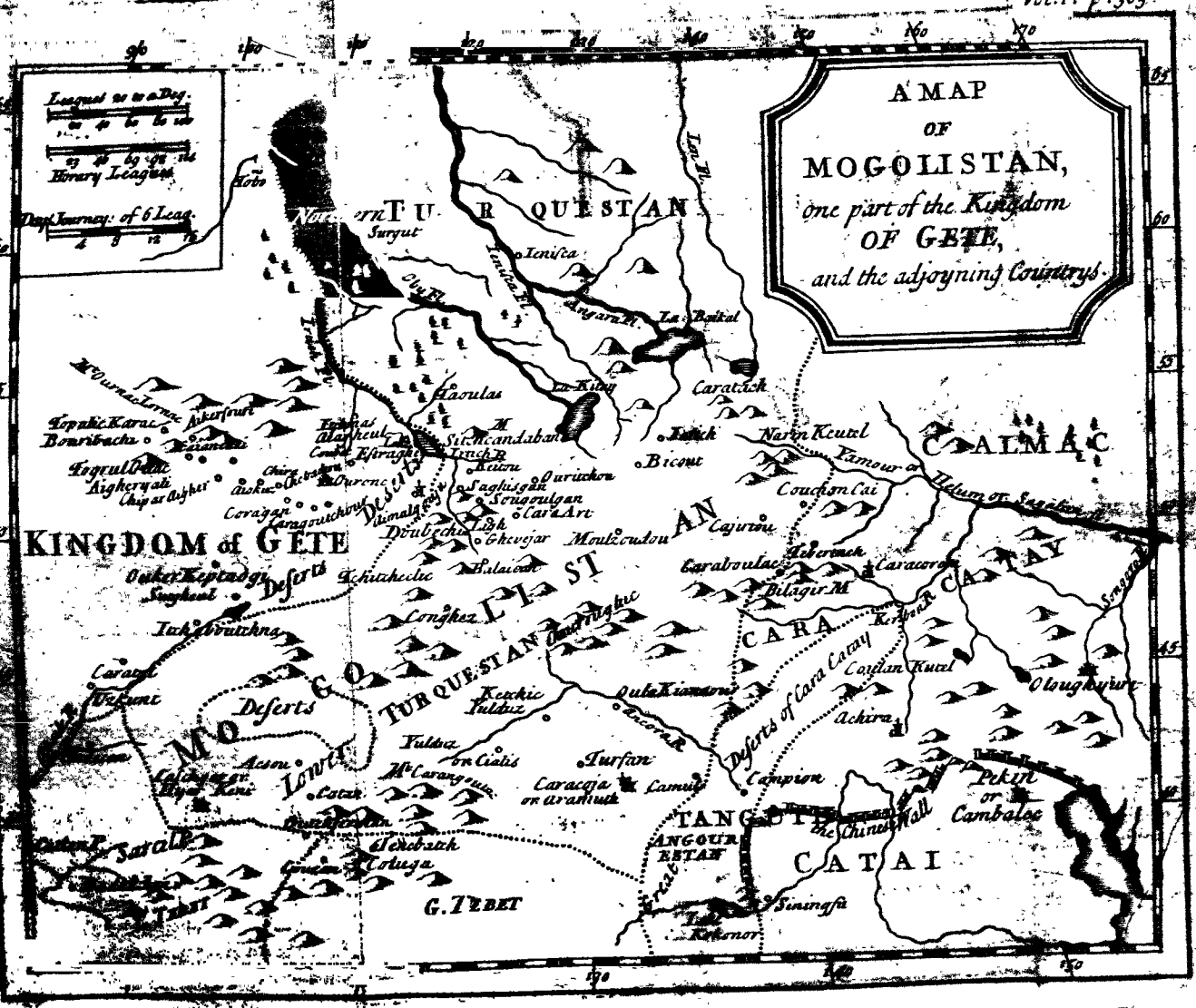
And the Mirza Omar Cheik, who had [illegible] incontestable proofs of his valor, by his exploits, had the pleasure of being [illegible] nity and power, by the favors of [illegible] rious emperor his father.

---

[1] There is no greater reproach [illegible] than to shave the beard after [illegible] shame is still much the greater [illegible] the common hangman.

[2] Tercan is a dignity [illegible] whoever enjoys [illegible] privilege [illegible] in the history of Genghis Can.

The end of the second book.


A MAP
OF
MOGOLISTAN,
one part of the Kingdom
OF GETE,
and the adjoyning Countrys.
Leagues 20 to a Deg.
Hours Leagues
Day's Journey of 6 Leag.
Northern TURQUESTAN
Surgut
Ienisca
Ob R.
Tenisea R.
Angara R.
La Baikal
Lo. Kitay
Caratsch
Hasulas
Sirkcandaban
Bicout
Narin Kutal
CALMAC
Yamour or Hilum or Sagalien
Coudson Cai
Cajurou
Caraboulac
Caracorum
Bilagir M.
CATAY
CARA
Coylan Kutal
Olougbyur
Achira
Pekin or Cambalec
Kitan R.
Sengan
Deserts of Cara Catay
Campion
Turfan
Caracoja or Aramuth
Camul
Kuchic Fulduz
Fulduz or Cialis
Quia Kiamoro
Tucoar R.
TURQUESTAN
Deserts
MOGOLISTAN
KINGDOM of GETE
Deserts
Ouker Keptadgi
Singhent
Ichitchelac
Ichabrutkha
Caraul
Kunt
Acsu
Cotan
Sarak
Tibet
Tenchebatch
Cotuga
G. TEBET
TANGOUT
ANGOUR
RETAN
CATAI
The Chinese Wall
Sinangfu
Kitanor
Longhez
Bulaicou
Moutcoulou
Douchi
Ghevejar
Saglisgan
Sougeulgan
Caraul Art
Ouriachou
Coraigan
Caraguitching
Aigheryati
Chipar Aighei
Bouribacha
Ackersurut
Kopatic Karac
Engrul Dabe
Alarkeul
Esfragan
Kuzu
Ouronc
Dimalgi
Sh
Tinch R.
Tinch R.
Ouarac Lerac
Ouarac Lerac
Ob R.
Lo. Ti.
Irtis R.
Tobo

Chap. I.

BOOK III.

Three blows were against Tocatmich Can king of Carezem. The conquest of his country. The ravaging of Muscovy, Circassia, Bulgaria and Georgia. The conquest of Persia, Mesopotamia, and Courdistan. The war against the Geter, and the ravaging of all Mogolistan.

Timur-Bec prepares for his fifth expedition into the kingdom of Carezem.

IN the year of the Crocodile, which answers to that of the Hegira 790, Timur began his march towards Carezem: he encamp'd at [illegible] from whence he sent Coudge Aglen, [illegible] Coluc Aglen with the vanguard: these [illegible] had abandon'd Tocatmich Can, and fled [illegible] to the court of Timur. An. Dom. 1388.

* Six leagues from Samarcand.

Book III. When they had cross'd the river of Bagdadec [3], they sent Aid Coja to discover the condition of the country; who meeting on the road a shepherd of Ilicmich Aglen [4], seiz'd him; and having question'd him concerning the condition of the enemy, sent him to court. Timur being inform'd of all he desir'd to know, continu'd his road to the river of Cheddis [5]; which when he had cross'd, there came a deserter from the enemys, who said that Ilicmich Aglen and Soliman Soft had abandon'd the kingdom of Carezem to save their lives, and were fled to Tocatmich Can emperor of Capchac.

On this news Timur sent Mirza Miran Chah, with five other Emirs, follow'd by their regiments, in pursuit of the two princes. These Emirs march'd with such expedition by the road of Comkiot [6] and Kiz [6], that they overtook 'em, attack'd 'em, and made a considerable slaughter of their men: and having pillag'd their baggage, return'd in triumph laden with the spoils of the enemy.

Timur staid some days in the capital city [7] of Carezem; during which time he order'd the inhabitants to go and live at Samarcand, and carry their goods with 'em. Then this great city was raz'd even to the very foundations, and sown with barly, to punish his enemys for their daring to raise war against him. Thus one prince ha

Ruin of the capital of Carezem.

[3] A river which falls into the Gihon below Bikunt.

[4] Prince of Capchac, king of Carezem, with Soliman Soft whose sister he espous'd.

[5] A river which falls into the Gihon, and serves as a frontier to the kingdoms of Kagatai and Carezem.

[6] A town of Transoxiana, long. 97. lat. 42. 50.

[6] A town of Transoxiana, long. 97. lat. 43. 50.

[7] Corcange minor, situate in Transoxiana on the Gihon, long. 94. 55. lat. 42. 10.

long

ing reveng'd himself, march'd towards his capital city, where he happily arriv'd in few days; and at his entry order'd the ensigns to be display'd in token of victory. Chap. II.

Notwithstanding Timur's wars, as his inclination and designs always tended to make kingdoms flourishing, and his subjects happy by the administration of justice; every one call'd him *the father of the people*. But imagining he could not merely make them happy but by being the sole master of the universe, he was oblig'd, like other conquerors, to strike terror into all parts, and severely to chastise those who resisted him; by which means his armys were so formidable, that they were compar'd to the tempests of heaven, because of the desolation they brought with em. Wherefore three years after this conquest, in the year of the Hegira 793, Timur resolv'd to continue the war in Capchac, and send Mousike, son of Junkr Coutchin [1] into Carezem, to repair the ruins of this kingdom, and settle it in [illegible] according to his com- [illegible] and brought it up to its ancient splendor, and even surrounded with walls the towns of Cat [2] and Kivac, and all the demesns of the Caan, that is, that part of Carezem which Genghiz Can join'd to the lands of Zagatai Can when he shar'd his empire among his children. An. Dom. 1391.

[illegible] of the most antient and illustrious houses of the [illegible]

[1] Long. [illegible] lat. 40. 58. near the Gihon.

[2] S. E. of the Caspian, long. 95. 35. lat. 39. 20.

CHAP. II.

Some accidents during Timur's expedition into Carezem.

Rebellion of Mehemet Mireke.

As soon as Timur was departed for Carezem, Aboul Feteh, younger brother of Mehemet Mireke, abandon'd Tiflis, he fled from Samarcand, and at night came to the great desart of Capchac; which he con'd not do so secretly but Lalam Behader Coutchin perceiv'd it: wherefore he pursu'd him with so much diligence, that having made use of all the horses of the army which he found on the road, he overtook him at Hilates, [illegible] he found him flecing on [illegible] demanding [illegible] gracious [illegible] went to seek his brother Mireke, who had quitted Timur, and sent for him. Lalam Behader took him by the collar, laid him on a horse, bound with cords, and brought him back the same way he came; and at Bocara deliver'd him up to Mirza Omar Cheik, to whom he told all that had pass'd between him and the prisoner.

Upon this the Mirza immediately wrote to Timur at Carezem; and in the mean while came with expedition to Samarcand, where he bo-

* Governor of Catlan, and son-in-law to Timur, having espous'd the princess Sultan Bact Begum, daughter of Timur: he was son of Chir Behram, and relation of Kai Cosru Catlan.

* Also call'd Hisar Chaduman, a town of Sagamian between the iron-gate and the river of Vacash, near the kingdom of Catlan; long. 100. 50. lat. 38.

rowly

rowly examin'd the circumstances of this rebellion. He had advice, that Mehemet Mireke, not considering that Timur had honor'd him with his alliance, marrying him with the princess Sultan Bec Begum his daughter, who was now big with child, nor reflecting on the loss of so great an emperor's favor, of whom he held the government of the kingdom of Catlan, and the neighbouring places; seduc'd by a frenzy, which leads men into disorders, and blind at his good fortune, had neglected his duty to Timur, and was led away with a desire of making himself independent, notwithstanding the misfortunes several of his equals had fallen into, who had endeavor'd the like. Indeed Mireke's conscience reproach'd him a long time for his crime; but his ambition gaining the master of his reason, he at length resolv'd to revolt, and declare war against the emperor, at the same time bringing into his mis[illegible] the troops which were at Samarcand, [illegible] which he went out of this town. [illegible] that when the rebels pass'd by the [illegible] Colage, the troops of Catlan had already pillag'd the province of Termed, and all the neighbouring places; but that they were not able to force the town, because Temour Tach, the governor, had courageously defended it, and plac'd chains cross the streets, to preserve it from the insults of these rebels.

When Mirza Omar Cheik was assur'd of the [illegible] news, he departed from Samarcand, and came to Ilgazigage [1]; he there got together the troops, with which he march'd in

[1] A village without Samarcand, on the road to Carchi in Transoxiana. There's another Ilgazigage in Corassana.

Book III. pursuit of Mireke. This latter having plac'd his men in order, had already plunder'd the houses of Dadmute Berlas, and Akitmur Behader, governor of those countrys: he had made himself master of their effects, and had caused the arsenal to be open'd, from whence he had carry'd away all the arms and machines of war, and distributed 'em among a company of robbers, whom he had assembled, and to whom he also gave horses and clothes. This rebel being prepar'd to maintain the war against his prince, was so confident in this state of independency, and having got a sumptuous equipage, that he look'd upon the sun, if one may say so, but as an atom, not considering that enterprises and projects against the decrees of providence, have never any other effect than that which the rods of Pharaoh's magicians had in the presence of the rod of Moses. It is true, that these rebels had no sooner heard of the approach of Mirza Omar Cheik, and his expedition in marching, than their insolence was chang'd into a shameful cowardice: a dread of coming to blows with so valiant a prince, seiz'd the hearts of these cowards, who fled, and were dispers'd upon the idle rumor of his approach.

This accident broke all the measures of Mireke, and put a stop to his designs: he had the affliction of seeing in a moment that power, with which he had been blinded, disappear: and he knew, tho too late, upon what ill bottom it was founded, and what chimeras his pride and self-conceit had form'd in his imagination.

The rebel being frustrated of all his intentions, and reduc'd to a deplorable condition, was oblig'd to pass the river of Vacach, on

the stone bridge, call'd Tachkupru[1], and to fly Chap. 3.
into the kingdom of Catlan. He was purs'd
with extreme diligence by the Mirza, who
having pass'd by Bilbir and Firoani Gandgigai[2],
came to the bank of the river, which he swam
over. And Mireke went to the narrow pas-
sage, call'd Derei Dervaz[3], to seek the pro-
tection of Chah Gelaleddin[4], who refus'd it
him, and prudently prohibited his entrance in-
to the castle. He only told him the contents
of a moral distich, which his father, a very pru-
dent man, had learnt in his old age, to wit,
that we ought to avoid, as far as in us lies, the
company of the unfortunate, and to seek those
whom fortune favors; in which number was
the great Timur, on whom heaven continually
shower'd success.

Mireke deprived of this protection, departed
from the straits of Dervaz, to go in search of
another asylum; but he was in very great af-
fliction, because most part of his domestics a-
bandon'd him.

In the mean while our men having gone over
all the mountains and plains to seek Mireke,
without hearing any news of him; the Mirza
Omar Cheik went to encamp in a town nam'd
Capchac, in the kingdom of Catlan; and he
lodg'd in the palace of Mireke, nam'd Acserai.
He staid there many days, hoping that some
unforeseen accident, such as usually happen'd to
Timur, wou'd bring him with honor out of the
intricate affair this rebel had involv'd him in.

---

[1] Long. 101. 30. lat. 38. 30. It is call'd in persian Polsenghin.

[2] A village near the river Vacach, long. 101. 20. lat. 38.

[3] A defile of mountains leading from Catlan to Tebet.

[4] Prince of the frontiers of Tebet.

Book III. He was not deceiv'd in his expectation; for Osman son of Arocu Omar, going to Samarcand with some domestics, and having pass'd the mountain Boutatou [1], luckily arriv'd at the brink of a fountain, where he observ'd the marks of the horses feet, which were gone out of the common road. He was inspir'd with a desire to pursue 'em, and he had no sooner pass'd some hills than he perceiv'd Mehemet Mireke, sitting with four valets, who had taken off their horses harnesses that they might feed on the grass: he immediately surrounded 'em, left they shou'd get away; and Osman seizing on the horses, stopt the prisoners Mireke and his men, whom he put in irons: he then dispatch'd a courier to the Mirza, to give him advice of it, and forthwith return'd with the prisoners. He was on the road when he reciev'd orders to put Mireke to death, which he punctually obey'd; and Mireke and his brother Abdul Feteh were executed. These traitors were punish'd for an example to others, and to verify the text of the Alcoran, which says, *That traitors and ingrateful persons are accurs'd by God.* The Mirza having put an end to these disorders by the death of Mireke, departed for Samarcand, where he had the honor to salute the emperor his father. At the time when Mireke revolted and departed from Samarcand, the Emir Gehanghir also went from Condoz, to join the imperial camp with the Tomans of Bouroulda, Taican, and Aperdi; besides which he was join'd at Balc by the Emir Yadghiar Berlas at the head of the troops of Balc and the neighboring places. As they were marching together, the Toman of Bouroulda revolted

Death of Mehemet Mireke.

[1] Near the river Vacach in Catlan above Ghulec.

and

and turn'd back. Gehancha inform'd the court of it, and return'd to pursue the rebellious Tomian, in consequence whereof Coja Yousef son of Oladgia Itou, Emir Bacher of Bourouldai, and Pir Alitaz leader of the troops of Balc, they march'd with such expedition day and night, that they join'd the rebels at Bacalan, and plundered their houses and goods. The Emir Gehancha had receiv'd news of the revolt of Miran, and had learnt that he was encamp'd in the territory of Hisar Chaduman, with the troops he had lifted. This Emir march'd against him with his men rang'd in order of battle, while Coja Yousef came to Arhenk to take care of the troops which he commanded; and Pir Alitaz went to Balc to bring away those which remain'd there; after they had all agreed to meet again on the bank of the Gihon.

Gehancha got there first; and having built some floats, cross'd the river, and encamp'd on the other bank at the head of his squadron; [illegible] Yousef Bourouldai [illegible] revolted with the squadrons they commanded, which consisted of three thousand horse. They fell suddenly on Gehancha who had no more than sixty men; but this valiant general, excited by the good fortune of Timur, far from being troubled at the sight of so strange an accident, tho with so few attendents, put his trust in God, and with this small number of men fac'd the enemy, having the river at his back; and he and his men being cover'd with the great and small bucklers which they ordinarily usd, they march'd courageously against the rebels. The combat was violent; they began with their arrows, and when they were em-

Book III. empty'd, they had recourse to lances and swords.

In the mean while Coja Youlef sent a man by the river to Gehancha to advise him to stand his ground, because he shou'd soon come to his assistance. This news did not a little strengthen our soldiers, who with a handful of men, resisted so great a number of the enemy: it rekindled their valor; they kept firm all the day, and when night was come, Coja Youlef, and Pir Alitaz, with a hundred horse, having join'd 'em, after they had swam over the river, they fell so vigorously upon the enemy, that they made 'em feel the effects of their courage by a hundred glorious actions; and the sun was no sooner risen, than victory declar'd her self on their side. The enemy shamefully turn'd their backs, notwithstanding the advantage of their number, which was twenty to one; they fled towards the river, which they cross'd, and retir'd to Bacalan. It is remark'd in the Alcoran, That twenty brave men of resolution and courage alway defeat their enemys, tho they be two hundred in number. Our men pursu'd 'em and kill'd several; and the Emir Gehancha encamp'd at Condoz with his soldiers, very well contented with the victory. The fugitives of the hord of Bouroulda believing themselves pursu'd, past on farther; and having gone over the mountains of Hendoukech, they march'd to Cabul, where they found Abousaid Bisoud. The governor, thro an unheard of ingratitude, which made him forget all the favors he had receiv'd of Timur, revolted also with 'em.

During these transactions, it happen'd that Acbouga Bisoud, enemy of Abousaid, whom Timur had order'd to be seiz'd and sent to Mogolistan near

near the mountains of Eltai[1], having attempted to escape and get to his own country, was again seiz'd and brought to Timur with his feet and hands bound. The emperor, hearing of the revolt of Amadan Biloud, was favorable to Achouga, order'd his chains to be taken off, and having given him the command of the hord of Biloud, which this rebel possess'd, sent him to Gehancha; and on his return to Samarcand he even dispatch'd recruits to him by Ramadan Coja and other generals, ordering him to go back the enemy whithersoever they were retir'd. Thus Gehancha and Coja Yousef departed for Condoz and Bacalan; and, having pass'd Hendoukech and Cabul, they join'd Junaid and Abousaid at Lagaman[2]; they pillag'd the houses of their hords, and ravag'd the country; and those who cou'd avoid the fury of the scymitars, fled into the country of Sende. The Emir Acbouga, having advice of it, departed from Herat with design to [illegible] and was join'd in the way by [illegible] the troops of Candahar[3] which he had got together. They passed many mountains and forests, and at length overtook these unfortunate persons; and having block'd up all the passages oblig'd 'em to fight, and so smartly repuls'd 'em, that Junaid, Bajazet and Abou-

[1] Mountains in Mogolistan, long. 138. lat. 60. Here the Mogul emperors are ordinarily bury'd.

[2] Laghman or Lamgan, a town of the kingdom of Cachmir, frontier to Candahar.

[3] A town of India, frontier of Persia, and at present under the dominion of the king of Persia; it was taken from the Moguls by Chah Abbas the second, father of the present king. It is situated in long. 106. 30. lat. 33.

Book III. last, after the loss of a great many of their soldiers, and the pillage of the rest of their baggage they had left, had a deal of trouble to escape from our men, and fly to the town of Delhi[a] in India. Our troops return'd in triumph to the place of their residence with all possible satisfaction.

Death of the grand Can, instal'd by Timur.

When Timur was in the way to Carezem, Siorgatmich Can fell sick at Bocara where he died: his body was transported to the field of Kech, and bury'd near Coubecan Igage[b] under a mausoleum which himself had caus'd to be built there. After the reduction of Carezm, Timur return'd during the autumn to Samarcand, which city was magnificently adorn'd to receive him: and he immediately establish'd the Sultan Mehemet son of Siorgatmich Can in the place of his father.

Sultan Mehemet instal'd grand Can of Zagatai.

Then Timur excited by a fatherly love to his children, took [illegible] in practice in their [illegible] the counsel of Mahomet, who says, we ought to marry that we may have children, and multiply the species; wherefore he gave orders to his prime officers to make all necessary preparations for magnificent nuptial-feasts and the ceremonys of marriage: he even order'd a most solemn publick banquet, in which the inhabitants spar'd [illegible] to testify their joy: they adorn'd the [illegible] with the most magnificent stuffs, and hung [illegible] branch'd candlesticks in all the streets: they prepar'd high and spacious tents in the delicious garden of Baghi Behischt, that is, the garden of paradise: they cover'd the ground with rich carpets, and stuffs of all colors enrich'd with embroderys.

[a] Capital of India, long. 120. lat 30.
[b] A village in the territory of Kech.

bynderys, and adorn'd with pearls and precious stones. In this beautiful and magnificent garden, the great Timur [illegible] according to the mahometan law [illegible] Sultan, and his brother [illegible] as also Mirza Gehan, with the princesses who were chosen for their brides, and who were all beauties of the Houris[*]. It was in the year of the Hegira 700, that the crown of this vast empire was settled in his august family by these happy marriages. After the solemnity was finish'd, Timur dismiss'd his troops; the Mirza Miran Chah returned to Corasan; the Mirza Omar Cheik [illegible] Timur pass'd the winter [illegible] with all possible felicity and contentment. Ann. Hegir. 1388.

CHAP. III.

Timur [illegible] war in Capchak, and is [illegible]

AS fate had marked on the forehead of Catmich Can, sovereign of Capchak, the misfortune which must necessarily happen to him, and excited him to despise the gifts and favors he had receiv'd from Timur; this prince gave marks of his ingratitude on several occasions; insomuch that he sent officers to levy contributions all the empire of Touchi, of which he was master. This army was compos'd of the

[*] The Mahometans believe there will always be in paradise young women whose virtue and beauty will never fade. They are call'd Houris.

troops

Book [illegible] Persia, Circassia, Georgia, Capchac, Circa, Cafa, Ettan and Azac, as also of Bachgabed, and even of Muscovy; and made so formidable an appearance, that poets have compar'd it to the leaves of the thickest trees, or the drops of rain in the most impetuous storms. Tocatmich brought this great army into the field, and march'd against Timur at the end of the year 1388. The emperor had no sooner advice of it, than he departed from his capital at the head of the troops of Samarcand and Keeh, and went to encamp at Sagrudge [1]. He sent Tavatchis into all the provinces of his kingdom to levy troops, and bring them to the place of rendezvous. This winter the cold was so violent that the earth was cover'd with snow, and the men were almost froze to death. In the mean while, news was brought, that the army of Caresm, commanded by Tocatmich [2], and composed of a great number of horse, had crossed the River Sihon over-against the town of Cogende, and was encamp'd near Ayouc-Zernouc [3]. Timur forthwith resolv'd to give him battel: the lords of his council fell upon their knees, and made pressing instances to hinder him, and particularly besought him to wait till the troops of the provinces arriv'd: but as he was not a believer of the proverb, which says, *That delay is dangerous, and that we ought never to put off till to morrow what we are able to do to day*; their remonstrance was useless; and without waiting for other troops besides those of his household which he then had

An. Dom. 1388.

[1] A village six leagues from Samarcand.
[2] King of Caresm, who fled to Tocatmich Can.
[3] A village in Transoxiana, near the Sihon, towards Cogende.

with

with him, he departed from his camp, and entered into the snow, which was already so deep that it touch'd the [illegible] in the mean while as he [illegible] he march'd [illegible] and thirty, after was join'd by [illegible] Cheik, who having got together [illegible] troops of Asiatics, march'd along the [illegible] of the [illegible] with extreme diligence. Timur Tent Coudge Aglen, Temour Cotlac Aglen, and Cheik Ali Behader, with a body of horse fell on the enemy's rear, and attack'd the [illegible] and [illegible] their flight. The next day at [illegible] over the [illegible] * In Transoxiana. [illegible] the enemy, they immediately made the great cry Souroun to begin the fight. There was nothing heard but the noise of kettle drums, the clashing of scymitars, the neighings of the horses, and the crys of the soldiers. After a bloody battel the advantage fell on our side; the enemy gave ground and were obliged to fly, after having lo[illegible] of their soldiers, [illegible] attes to avoid the [illegible] miserably perishing. Those who escaped the fight fled with precipitation, but the greatest part met the cavalry which Timur had sent to cut off their passage in the rear. And as they were yet pursu'd by our victorious army, they found themselves surrounded on all sides: our men made use of their warlike swords, arrows and lances to destroy 'em; and shew'd so much resolution on this occasion, that the greatest part of the enemys were cut in pieces without obtaining any quarter from our soldiers. There was only the celebrated Aridi Birdi, secretary of state, and one of those whom we call

Bacchis,

Bacchis[1], who was made prisoner of war; and he had immediately cut off his head, if he had not made himself known. So they brought him alive to Timur, who inform'd himself from him of the state of affairs of Toeatmich Can, and at length pardon'd him: he even gave him a tent, which he accompany'd with many other civilities, and retook him into his service; insomuch that he who was before but a slave, became in a moment a great lord. Timur decamp'd, and march'd towards his capital: and in the month of Feb. 1389. Seler, in the year of the Hegira 791, he encamp'd at Acar[2], where he staid some time.

When the spring appear'd, all the troops of the empire of Timur arriv'd. The Mirza Mahmud Cheh came at the head of those of Caratagh, and join'd the imperial camp. The troops of Hisar, Condoz, Bacalan, Bedakchan, Cabul, Hisar Chaduman, and many other [illegible] the [illegible] Seifuddin[3], and the Emir Aicontmur, to caste a bridge of boats to be built over the Sihon near Cogendi. The Emirs obey'd, and built others in many places to facilitate the passage of the troops, and they gave advice of it to the court.

At the beginning of the year of the Serpent, which answers to the month of Rabiul-el-[illegible] An. Dom. 1389. this prince departed to continue the war in Cipchac. When he arriv'd at the bank of the Sihon, accompany'd by the princes his sons, he

[1] Secretarys of the Tartar kings, who write in the Tartar characters.

[2] A village near Samarcand and Kech.

[3] A kingdom between Transoxiana and Tebet; it is part of Zagatai, is border'd by the Gihon towards the kingdom of Cathan.

cross'd

[illegible] advice to the Emirs of [illegible] lay in [illegible] which [illegible] has [illegible] Our [illegible] after having prepar'd themselves for fighting, they march'd during the night, and having met the enemy, fell upon 'em like roaring lions on their prey.

They employ'd all sorts of arms to hinder any of the enemy's scouts escaping 'em: they kill'd [illegible] of 'em; but in the mean while [illegible] pat[illegible] d the [illegible] Sabran [illegible] the [illegible] which [illegible] the siege, and having pillag'd Xaši [illegible] the large plains of that country.

[illegible] no sooner received advice of the arrival [illegible] troops, than he fled with all his

* Son of Ouzun Hassan, and consequently an enemy to Tocatmish.
* Which [illegible] Tocatmish.
* A town of Capchac, long. 98. lat. 47. 30.
* A small town six leagues from Sabran.

Book II. soldiers who heard of it; and the army, so [illegible] and well furnish'd, would [illegible] have [illegible] it self formidable to all the [illegible] [illegible] by a single report, and [illegible] hither and there like grasshoppers on the [illegible] In short, the name and arms of the [illegible] Timur were so [illegible] to his enemies, that as soon as they heard of his approach, they [illegible] could not perceive even the dust which their horses rais'd. The successful [illegible] of the rout of the enemy, [illegible] dia with the furniture of his [illegible] and, while he march'd with diligence in [illegible] of the fugitives. He left before [illegible] [illegible] Chan, [illegible] Cutbeddin, [illegible] Cutugh, with [illegible] two horses. [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] some fled.

Our victorious warriors were in the desart, and about to return home, when they met Nizam Deccan, encamp'd with the hundred families which he was chief. They attack'd them so roudly, that Chakeeul, one of our [illegible] him by the collar, and took him [illegible] took all his people captive, [illegible] flocks, which were [illegible] of fatigue as far as Ahmedabad [illegible] that army was entirely [illegible]

[a] A hill on the river Bitch.

[b] A village of Zamani, towards Cap[illegible]

[illegible] defeat by [illegible] and are [illegible] right [illegible] Sarec Ozan [illegible] Ale[illegible]

CHAP. IV.

[illegible] Serbedal, princes, and [illegible] Bar [illegible] were [illegible] with the [illegible] of the [illegible] of Kafar [illegible] Tous; whereupon he [illegible] Mirza Miran Chah thither, who departed at the head of the main body of the Army. He made great haste, and [illegible] he came [illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible] Serbedal reigned forty five years in [illegible] in 788, of the Hegira. The last of [illegible] Mirza Serbedal, he dy'd in the [illegible] governor for himself in Sebzuar, [illegible] Tous.

[illegible] towards [illegible] and Mahmoud, son of Malek Pir [illegible] much that there remain'd not one of [illegible] of these Courdes princes.

This young Mirza at length departed [illegible] Samarcand for Corassana; and as he pass'd by the fields of Bebrabad [1], he met the Serbedar kings, who affecting to shew their bravery on all occasions, came to meet him at the head of their army. These desperate men, who had resolv'd to conquer or die, fell furiously upon Timur's son, who sustain'd the onset with [illegible] rallel'd resolution; and having given a [illegible] marks of his great courage in this bloody [illegible] his right and left wings advanc'd [illegible] totally surrounded the Serbedar [illegible] found themselves taken like [illegible] net. Then all the army fell [illegible] [illegible] his guards, who comforted him in his misfortunes. The Emir Arbouga, who was departed from Herat to quell this rebellion, [illegible] Tous, and took it after. Hadgi Beg, [illegible] brother of Ali Bei Jouin Garbani, [illegible] of it to fly into Persia; but when he [illegible] Semnane [2], he was seiz'd by [illegible] Hezaregheri [3], and sent to the [illegible] him to death according to law.

After the Mirza Miran Shah [illegible] the rebels, and put an end to the [illegible] by delivering the [illegible]

[1] A town near Tous.

[2] A town of the province of Comes, [illegible] and Mazendran, long. 88. lat. 36.

[3] A town near Semnane.

Ser-

[illegible]

[illegible] An. Dom. 1389.

[illegible]

[illegible] ence of the [illegible] mountain of Caucasus [illegible] Asia, long. 105. [illegible] near the mountains Ourmac [illegible]

The [illegible] Ourmac [illegible] Lorman, the son of Noah, the founder of the [illegible] Dr. [illegible] it is also call'd Ourmac Loraac.

[illegible] good [illegible] the [illegible] the porter, he sent [illegible] to the country of [illegible] horses to the seven who remain[illegible] length regulated all his cavalry at the two horses in each squadron. He departed from [illegible] camp, and [illegible] where [illegible] incommoded [illegible] [illegible] coming [illegible] [illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] Gen. long. 114.

[illegible] Lord of Gom.

[illegible] a guide [illegible] the road [illegible] through, Corazan [illegible] places, having pa[illegible]

[illegible] Omar [illegible] army, pa[illegible] ever he met [illegible] vanquished [illegible] exterminated [illegible]

[illegible] ancestors [illegible] of both [illegible] which begun with [illegible] and [illegible]

[illegible] of incomparable be[illegible] fell into the hands of the conqueror; [illegible] that the illustrious Mirza, contented with [illegible] advantage he had gain'd, return'd in [illegible] and laden with booty, to [illegible] which he had the honor to [illegible] dition.

As it was a long time [illegible] Behader, and [illegible] they had had no news of [illegible] that Cheik was order'd to [illegible]

[illegible] A town of Gere. [illegible] A town of Gere. [illegible] A [illegible] well. [illegible] A town of Gere. [illegible] temple of the Mogols. [illegible] A town of Gere, long. 11[illegible]

[illegible] An ancient castle [illegible] kestan, long. 115. lat. 53. [illegible] A village [illegible]

[illegible] envoy to inform himself of what was become [illegible] [illegible] in [illegible] [illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] divided the [illegible]

[illegible] Mogul soldiers who made head against [illegible] put the captives in chains, and sent them [illegible] the conduct of Mir Lal, father of [illegible] Berlas, Temour Bouka, [illegible] the city of Samarcand [illegible] from [illegible]

In the [illegible] Ahmat Goujou [illegible] Serai Ourdane [illegible] the [illegible]

[illegible] 56. [illegible]

[illegible] formerly call'd Aoxus, a river which [illegible] country of Gete and Mogolistan, [illegible] river Oby, which falls into the northern [illegible]

[illegible] Capital of Gete, frontier of Mogolistan, [illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible] the other hand, [illegible] the Greeks, which he was in hopes of putting an end to: he resolv'd that the army shou'd [illegible] bodies, each of which [illegible]

[illegible] should [illegible] of the country, [illegible] made [illegible] to [illegible] villages these quarters [illegible] whose [illegible] of which [illegible] distributed [illegible] and generals of the armys. [illegible] for each body of [illegible] this was [illegible] to furnished; that by this means [illegible] and bad for refuge

plat

of Yulduz

is of all the commanders

The Mirza Omar Cheikh, who

of Andecan, had for his guide

Berhan Aqsi and Hasan Emir Emir

Boudgec

mountain Doubechan

three months

the caravan

another body of the army

their guide an

Omar Aldaq commanded another body

the army of twenty thousand men, and

for a guide the Emir Gelal Hamid

by Saghizgan, Soungulgan, which

years, where they treated

the same manner they had treated

Coldad Hussein and Mahach

were at the head of another body

thousand men, who

A mountain in Mogolistan

A town of Mogolistan

A town in

soil. A place in Mogolistan, where the

collected. Another place for the

of Mogolistan.

[illegible] the road of [illegible] Curtichin [illegible] of Boil [illegible] gat and [illegible] which prov'd [illegible] [illegible] with [illegible]

[illegible] To the [illegible] they [illegible] their [illegible] the same [illegible] with [illegible] [illegible] who had [illegible] Daban signifys a hill.

[illegible] who were defeated at the [illegible] and cut [illegible]

[illegible] is to be noted, that when Timur march'd [illegible] Toumbich Can, he left [illegible]

[illegible] to [illegible] in the western Tartary between the Kingdoms of Gete and Cathay, order them also to march in the country of the Moguls, that they might aid in the destruction of the Getes who were there. They [illegible] these orders, enter'd into Moge-

[illegible]

* A [illegible]
† The great [illegible]
‡ A mountain, long. 124. lat. 53. 30.

listan,

Gates; and that having slaid many [illegible]
ny, they [illegible] than they [illegible]
over the [illegible] at Sughdia[illegible]
and [illegible] the inhabi-
tants of [illegible] Sogdia
cumbrd with [illegible]
to Bolgiscan[1], and [illegible]
of [illegible] they destroy[illegible]
[illegible] and killed
Thus [illegible] where [illegible]
p[illegible]
[illegible]
king of Mogolistan[illegible]
m[illegible]
[illegible]

[illegible] for by their arrows on the enemy, [illegible]
hinder'd their gaining any advantage [illegible]
The fight lasted forty eight hours, du[illegible]
time our men kept fix'd [illegible]
about on all sides; no one [illegible]
whatever [illegible] Cublia[illegible]
manders of the [illegible] could [illegible]
not advance [illegible]
both sides in [illegible]
point of honor that this [illegible]

[illegible] Mountain of [illegible]
[illegible] Artiset which [illegible]
[illegible] A town [illegible] of the great lake of [illegible]
[illegible] A town of Mogolistan, long. 117. 30. [illegible]
[illegible] A town of Mogolistan, long. 125. [illegible]
[illegible] A town of Mogolistan, long. 132. [illegible]

with some accompanying [illegible] Emirs [illegible] made a treaty [illegible] which was [illegible] to [illegible] rendered [illegible]

[illegible] Coja Aglen had the honor to [illegible] at court.

Timur chose the travell with [illegible] his army, and leaving all his attendance, march'd with [illegible] cross'd the river at Oulakianaour [illegible] the track of Kezer Coja Aglen [illegible]

[illegible] there were [illegible] in the middle of the desart, and plains [illegible]

[illegible] near the [illegible] in [illegible]

[illegible] face of [illegible] like Erac[illegible]

[illegible] Mecca in Mogolistan.

[illegible] of the mountains Bengh [illegible]

A village dependant on [illegible]

A village in Mogolistan [illegible]

distant

[illegible] which were [illegible] away. [illegible] was dispers'd [illegible] different roads [illegible] that way by which the army of Timur [illegible] Tarik, who [illegible] his soldiers [illegible] low'd, and [illegible] Emir Gehanka [illegible]

Timur having passed the mountain [illegible] Rekiel, pursu'd the [illegible] Catabek, and the king of the [illegible] abandon'd his [illegible] fatigues, lean all his [illegible] prisoners [illegible]

[illegible] who are enemys to Timur, are commonly [illegible] due'd to. In the mean while our soldiers had distributed themselves into all [illegible] no quarter to any one inhabitant [illegible] and made terrible havoc [illegible] Beurul: they got possession [illegible] ber of horses, camels, sheep, [illegible] and made abundance of [illegible] Then the victorious Timur [illegible] homewards; he came to [illegible] vided among the soldiers all the booty which he had taken from the Getes in golistan: at length he descend'd from [illegible]

---

* A mountain of Mogolistan.
* A mountain at the extremity of [illegible]
* A town of Mogolistan near Bicour, [illegible] and

and passing by Ca[illegible] came to Chapar Yulduz, where [illegible]

The Emirs [illegible] of the army, who [illegible] all the quarters [illegible] the Getes [illegible] place, [illegible] with [illegible] and [illegible] multitude of captains, and had the [illegible] spreading the imperial carpet in this general rendezvous.

Yulduz[1] is a place of great delight and pleasure: the many delicious fountains, and abundance of pasture, render the living therein so very agreeable, that poets have compos'd verses in its praise. The beauty of its fountains is the reason of its name; for Yulduz signifys the morning-star: the grass there is so strong and nourishing, that the leanest horses, when they have been a week in its meadows, become fat and strong.

From thence Timur sent the Mirza Omar [illegible] with a numerous attendance, to his go[illegible] [illegible] him to pass [illegible] in those countries. This prince rendezvoyed; and as soon as he had passed the [illegible] he met the prince Coublic, one of the great Emirs of the Getes. On the noise of the great cry Sonnoun, and the great trumpet Kerrenai, the [illegible] of the Mirza and Coublic began to move; [illegible] was made at the same time, and all

[1] A town.

[2] A mountain of Mogolistan, long. 135. lat. 50.

[3] Distant from Balasagun two months journy by the caravan, or four hundred and eighty leagues, at eight leagues a day; it is call'd Cyalis by F. Martini, in the voyage of F. Benoist Goez to Cassi, and is in the road from Tartary to China.

[illegible] the field [illegible] and wounded [illegible] declar'd in [illegible] Mirza; Coublic was taken, and his head [illegible] according to the law of Genghiz [illegible] The Mirza, after he had made himself master of Coublic's horses, sheep, and other goods, and exterminated his subjects, continu'd his road by Cazan[1], Chutchesemano[2], and the great city of Cagligar[3], and at length successfully arriv'd at Andecan, the place of his residence, and the seat of his government.

CHAP. VII.

Timur returns to the seat of his empire.

TIMUR having [illegible] inhabitants, multitudes of whom were slain, and others taken captives; and having enrich'd his soldiers with the spoils, (in which expedition he had march'd above a thousand leagues) having at length contented with his victorys, he resolv'd to return to the imperial city of Samarcand. He departed from Ketchik[4] Yulduz[5] at the head of his armys; and when he was arriv'd at Olue[6] Yulduz, he appointed a solemn feast, and order'd preparations to be made for a magnificent entertainment, which was to be set off with the most exquisite diversions and

[1] A town of Tebet.
[2] A town of Turkestan.
[3] Capital of Turkestan, long. 107, lat. 42.
[4] The lesser Yulduz.
[5] The greater Yulduz, mention'd in the foregoing chapter.

pleasures. All the plain was cover'd with tents and pavilions, and the [illegible] on which the imperial tent was fixt, [illegible] of brocades with flowers of gold [illegible] a throne enrich'd [illegible] on which [illegible] sitting, with the [illegible] in his [illegible] and the crown on his head, he did [illegible] robes of honour, and belts adorn'd with precious stones, to the princes, Emirs, [illegible], and all the lords and officers of his court; he also honour'd with his favors the generals and captains of his troops, as a recompence for their fatigues, and in joy of his victorys. The pleasure which the brave warriors received, when Timur applauded their actions, was inexpressibly great; in this charming retreat he sent 'em in cups of gold the most delicious wines by the hands of the most beautiful women in the world.

Chap. 1.

After they had pass'd some days in this joyful [illegible], they decamp'd from this delightful [illegible] the Emir Ogian [illegible] year of the [illegible] and that he [illegible] the seventh of Ramadan, [illegible] that is to say, in twenty two days, the from India to his capital of Tamerlan is generally accounted two months journey by the caravans. He render'd to the inhabitants of the great city, by his happy arrival, and the news of his victorys, that joy which his absence had deprived 'em of. The ladys, the children of the queens, the princes of the blood, and the officers of the city, testify'd their pleasure by the quantity of gold and precious stones, which they sprinkled over his head, the magnificence of the public feasts, and the

An. Dom. 1389.

Book II. presents, which they had the honour to make him; they adorn'd the city, and made it so splendid that it seem'd as if the season was pass'd into spring.

When winter was come, Timur went to Bocara, and pass'd that season at Gheulsergan ‡, where he order'd several little houses to be built in form of a dome for the lords and ladies of his court. And as there were here several fine ponds, in which were a vast number of all sorts of birds, and particularly swans, he resolv'd to divert himself with fowling. He encamp'd on the banks, and the officers had floats, on which they enter'd these ponds, and with great crys and the noise of drums and kettle-drums, scar'd the birds, and constrain'd 'em to fly; and while they pass'd from one pond to another, the fowlers cry'd out to encourage 'em, but they [illegible] for [illegible] is [illegible] of the other [illegible] employ'd in the drums likewise made 'em fearful; so that in a short time they caught 'em in vast numbers. These birds are here in so great plenty, that the author of the Mogul annals, call'd Gehangucha, writes, that the princes Zagatai and Octai, sons of the great Genghiz Can, pass'd the whole winter in this sport in this country, from whence they sent every week fifty camels laden with swans, to be distributed in the general camp, which was without Samarcand; and this distribution of the birds is call'd by the Tartars Chirilga. But no other author makes mention of this particular custom. During the winter, Soliman Chah was elevated to the highest degree of fortune, and was [illegible]

* A bird unknown in France.

‡ A pond near Bocara.

ly favor'd by Timur, who gave him the illustrious princess Sultan Begum[1] in marriage; for whom he had daughters prepar'd, and the most magnificent presents.

Chap. 7.

After that Mirza Miran Chah had finish'd, according to the emperor's intentions, the affairs for which he was sent into Corassana, he began his march to return to court: the Emirs and other lords went to meet him with great ceremony, and he paid his respects to Timur in his winter-quarters at Bocara. He was very handsomely receiv'd. Timur tenderly embrac'd him, and having kiss'd his face, he entertain'd him, and inquir'd concerning all the circumstances of his journey. The Mirza entirely satisfy'd him in his answers; having kiss'd the earth, and made supplications to God, according to custom, he offer'd his presents, which very much pleas'd Timur, who applauded him in every thing, and order'd him to set down in a rank worthy of his quality. The joy at his arrival was universal. [illegible] was apprehended that this prince [illegible] his [illegible] and [illegible] states.

The emperor was desirous that during this winter the young Mirza Abouberre, son of Mirza Miran Chah, shou'd be betroth'd to the daughter of the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin. The princess Canzade prepar'd the marriage-feast. But as there is no happiness without a mixture of sorrow, and 'tis the divine appointment that we shou'd weep in the midst of joy, the illustrious lady Cendac Catoun, wife of Timur's father, pass'd from this transitory world to eternity. Timur shew'd much affliction at the loss

[1] Widow of Mireke, and daughter of Timur.

of this venerable lady, prepar'd a royal banquet, and gave much alms to the poor, the land and the orphans. The body of the princess was carry'd to the town of Kech, where it was inter'd.

After winter, Timur departed for Samarcand with all his court, hunted in his march; and having pass'd by Carchi, went to encamp at Akiar in the agreeable meadow of Kech, on the bank of the river of Cochen. The ground on which the royal tent was prepar'd, was covered with brocade, as was all the field with standards and umbrellas.

CHAP. VII.

[illegible]

AS the valor of Timur, and the power of the Turks *, especially of the soldiers of Zagatai, was now arriv'd to a very high pitch, so they were not only independent and absolute princes, but even made all the other people from the east of Asia, to the west of that part of the world, to tremble; and by the large booty the soldiers had gain'd in the several campaigns, they were become so rich, that the officers, to maintain their own power, seem'd to comply with them, only in suing only the protection of their power

* A river which runs from the Town, which [illegible] into the Gihon.

* The author here calls the Zagataian soldiers [illegible] other places he gives 'em the name of Mogols.

who they suppos'd might one day be their masters. Timur therefore thought it advisable to enlarge the regiments, and by that means augment the expences of the commanders, and diminish their riches, which might tempt 'em from their obedience. In the year 792, which answer'd to that of the horse, he sent orders to all parts of his dominions for holding the Convention at Akiar, where he was encamp'd. [illegible] the Emirs and generals of the army, the chiefs of the Tumans, and Hezares, the centurions and captains of ten men, as also the governors of the provinces, came to the solemn [illegible], which was usually made in that assembly; the ceremonys whereof were observ'd with so much prudence and regularity, that it seem'd as if they were once again in the times of Feridon [1] or Afrasiab [2]. When the order for augmenting the regiments of the army was signify'd, all the commanders fell down, and kiss'd the [illegible] of obedience; they agreed to [illegible] ing to his pleasure; they all gave it under their hands, that they wou'd bring to the general rendezvous the number of troops they were tax'd at. The Tuvatchis *, who took their subscription, were the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin, the Emir Gehancha Jacou, and the Emir Chamseddin Abbas. At the dissolution of this numerous assembly there was another magnificent feast made

Chap. 6.

An. Dom. 1390.

* Commissarys general.

---

* [illegible] king of the Persians, about the time of the deluge.

* [illegible] king of the Tartars or Scythians.

In these times [illegible] sing thousand [illegible] there pompously enumerate [illegible] history of Shah Name, or of the kings of Persia, by [illegible].

Beauti[illegible] by Timur's order, the expe[illegible] which were [illegible] great. The palace [illegible] days were [illegible]d with the richest jewels; the earth [illegible] covered with carpets of gold, [illegible] brocades, and embroider'd pieces of work [illegible] with pearls, rubys, and other precious stones; the cups, which were presented by the most beautiful women in the world, were of pure rock-crystal, [illegible]'d with all the delicacy and fineness which can be expected from the skill and industry of the most ingenious artists of [illegible] ages. Timur laid hold on this occasion, when the joy was so general, to give in marriage the princess Sevindge Cothue Aga, daughter of Ulugh-Beg Aga, who was exceedingly handsom and much belov'd by him, to the [illegible] Outar Chah his grandson; and after the solemnity of the nuptials was over, the [illegible] Chah was ordered to return into [illegible] and [illegible] to their respective governments and hords. The emperor also departed thence, and some days after came down to the meadow of Ilgazigage, situate without the town of Samarcand, after having put the affairs of the empire in all necessary order.

CHAP. IX.

Timur sends his troops into the country of the Geres.

AT the beginning of the same year the emperor sent into the country of the Geres the Emirs Soliman Chah, Godadad Hadeini, Chamseddin Abbas, and his brother the Emir Othmar

Osman; and among the colonels of the regiments and the officers of his household, he sent Saddictaban, Sultan Sadgeth, the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin, Hassan Jander, Ejec Coutchin, Aid Coja, Tachir Bahadur, and Nuiser Gomari, who commanded twenty thousand horse. As soon as they had cross'd the Sihon at Tachkent, they march'd to Isfigheul[1], where they met the Emir Malich Aperdi and his son Beikech, with Badir and Sadir, Turcomans, at the head of five thousand brave men who came from Andecan from Mirza Omar Cheik, and join'd our army. When they arriv'd at Chenctopa[2], they [illegible] days to inform themselves of the state of the enemy; they took the road of the mountain Arjatou[3], met many of the enemy, of whom they slew several, and took others prisoners; they carry'd away their wives and children, pillag'd their goods, and destroy'd the country. Thus they went thro all the provinces of the Getes, and advanc'd as far as Almalegh, where [illegible] the river Abeile[4], they [illegible] Camareddin [illegible] there [illegible] Bogatai, of the family of the Coutchins, who went before 'em at the head of four hundred horse to gain intelligence, had met Camareddin in a hunting country, that our men had been worsted, and that the greatest part of the soldiers on each side were kill'd on the spot. Upon this news the Emirs sent Hassan Jander, Malich and Beikech, to inform themselves more truly of this event. These captains, whose prudence and va-

Chap. [illegible]

[1] A lake near Berket in Gete, long. 100. lat. 43.
[2] A hill in Gete, long. 101. 20. lat. 43. 25.
[3] A mountain of Gete near Almalegh, long. 100. lat. 44.
[4] A river which discharges itself into the Sihon.

lor

for [illegible] known, immediately [illegible]ed, and arriving at the field of battel, [illegible] many [illegible] off the earth; and among [illegible] our men of the hord of Malangou, in whom [illegible] remain'd a little life, he having eat nothing but herbs for forty days: they comforted him, and brought him to the Emirs. He assur'd 'em that in this place they had fought Camareddin, that there were many soldiers slain on both sides, and that ours fled after having been sufficiently maul'd, and that Camareddin march'd towards the fields of Itchna Bourchna [1]. The Emirs immediately departed in search of him, and having pass'd by Itchna Bourchna, they arriv'd at Quker Kepradgi [2], where they left their baggage, and departed thence post; and when they were arriv'd on the banks of the river Irtich, they heard that Camareddin had cross'd it [illegible] towards Tamuks [3] [illegible] and [illegible] they saw the rafts and boats the enemys had built to cross the water. The Emirs staid some days at this place, and cross'd the river, to engrave their arms and red characters with fire on the pine-trees of those woods; which they did, that succeeding ages might see the marks of the arrival of the army of Timur on the trees of the forests of his enemys, and as an assurance of their conquests beyond the river Irtich.

But as there were six months past since they came into these desarts, where they wanted provisions, and most of 'em liv'd on what they got in hunting, and on wild roots; and as the air became extremely cold, they resolv'd to return

[1] A town of Turkestan, long. 107. lat. 47.
[2] A town of Turkestan, long. 100. lat. 48.
[3] A town of Tartary, long. 127. lat. 60.

which

which they did [illegible] Cogende, where Cogende there is a road made on the banks of the great lake call'd Ezrek Kheul*, and making great haste, they happily arriv'd at Samarcand, where they had the honor to kiss the imperial carpet.

CHAP. X.

Timur marches into the desart of Capchac.

DURING the autumn of the same year Timur took up a resolution to make war in person in Capchac; for this purpose he regulated his troops, turn'd all his foot soldiers into cavalry, equipp'd 'em with arms, and provided 'em money and every thing necessary. He departed from Samarcand at the head of his army; and having caus'd a bridge to be built over the Sihon at Cogende, he cross'd this river [illegible] spent the winter at Tachkunt, be[illegible] in the mean while his [illegible] prompted him to visit the tomb of Cheik Mallabet, where they say many miracles are perform'd. Timur knowing this visit was due from him, not only on a religious but even on a political account, in that it wou'd further the accomplishment of his designs. He came to Cogende for that purpose, which he did with shew of extraordinary devotion, distributing among the poor ten thousand Dinars Capchac†, and at length he went to Tachkunt,

An. Dom. 1390.

* A town on the bank of the great lake of Turkestan.

† Great lake in Turkestan on the frontiers of Mogolistan.

‡ The Dinars Capchac are pieces of gold, number seven [illegible] ten sols of French money.

where

where he lay dangerously sick, for the space of forty days; during which time the Emirs and other lords were in the utmost consternation. This prince was in a manner the soul of the world; and the fear of losing him made many persons tremble. In short, the people believ'd that his sword wou'd no longer be able to protect the weak, and keep the powerful within bounds: that the security of families wou'd soon be lost, houses plunder'd, and the cloysters broke open, wherein true chastity is preserv'd. Whereupon every one addrest themselves to God in prayer, and the vows made for his health were so ardent and efficacious, that the Almighty restor'd him. Because it was absolutely necessary for the publick weal. This good news caus'd every one to rejoice; and they render'd solemn and public praises to God for the [illegible] the emperor's health.

[illegible]

Mirza Miran Chah arriv'd at the head of the troops of Corassana, and paid his respects. The emperor review'd his army and put it in order; he made presents to the generals and other Emirs, and distributed among the soldiers all the silver money which was in the treasury; which distribution the Turks call Okulga, as the distribution of the birds taken in the chace is call'd Chirilga. He also gave horses, arms and clothes to those who wanted 'em, and assign'd guides to the several generals.

The guides of the body of the army in which the imperial standard was fixt, were Tuman Cotluc Aglen, son of Temour Malec Can of Capchac, Condge Aglen, also prince of Capchac, and Aidecou Uzbec.

An. Dom. 1391. On thursday the twelfth of the month Safer, in the year of the Hegira 793, the sun being then

therein the eighth degree of Aquarius, Timur departed from Samarcand, which his court, and left Mirza Pir Mahomed Gehangir, and Mirza Charoc, to govern the empire of Zagatai in his absence, and gave them for lieutenant the Emirs Lal and Mahmed. Timur sent away all the ladies, except his favorite Sultaness, Tchulpan Mule Aga, daughter of Hadgi Bei[1] of Gete; who in this journey had the honor of privately conversing with the emperor. As soon as the imperial standard began its march, the Emirs of the Beraks and Hezares, and the colonels of the regiments, departed at the sound of the trumpets, and the troops came to Cara Suman[2]. At this time ambassadors came from Tocatmish Can; they were conducted with all the usual honors and ceremonys, by the Emirs in the highest stations. The great snows and rains oblig'd the court to stay some days at Cara Suman. Timur order'd that the ambassadors shou'd be brought to him with freedom; [illegible] at the great gate of the imperial [illegible] permission was granted [illegible] the ground with their heads, in token of their respect to the emperor; and they us'd nothing but the most respectful compliments, by which they begg'd pardon for their mission, and ascrib'd a thousand praises to Timur. At length they pre-

[1] Hadgi Bei Ircanout, prince of the Getes.

[2] A town of Capchac, long. 99. lat. 44. 6.

[3] The custom of the entry of ambassadors into the Tartar emperors is this, as soon as the gate of the imperial pavilion is open, and a sign made to advance, they run to cast themselves at the feet of the throne.

sented

[illegible] Chouca[illegible] [illegible] horses of [illegible] Footmen. He indeed [illegible] the Chou[illegible] his hand; but he gave them [illegible] other marks of a good reception [illegible] mite, tho it was the custom of this great [illegible] to caress all ambassadors. Those who perceived this difference of reception, said all they could to engage Timur to pardon Tocatmich. To persuade their audience, they presented also, him the intercession of the great Emirs, the letter of Tocatmich Can, which contain'd the following words.

"Your majesty has always acted the part of "a father towards me; you have always cherish'd "and brought me up as your son; and the "favours I have received from you are innumer- "able. If my wicked proceedings and the "war I have carry'd on by the [illegible] "some malicious [illegible]

"[illegible] my lord, this will be an addi- "tion to the obligations I owe to him; the "goodness will make me consider what I [illegible] "and hereafter, far from acting contrary to "the treaty made with his majesty, I will do "every thing which shall please him in [illegible] "my respect and thankfulness: in short, I will "be a submissive and obedient servant to his "orders."

---

* A sort of bird of prey [illegible] Emirs, [illegible] Timur [illegible] with a certain number of [illegible], to the port of the [illegible] seignior of the Ottomans.

Timur

Timur answer'd the ambassadors in these terms: "When your Kan Toqtamish was "wounded and ill used by his enemys, and "came for refuge to us, we not doubtin that "I rank'd him among my children, and us'd "him kindly. At length looking upon his "interest as my own, I made war on Ourous "Can, and march'd my troops against him; "which was the reason that great part of my "cavalry, and an infinite number of equipages "and riches entirely perish'd by reason of the "cold which this winter was extremely violent. "Notwithstanding this misfortune, I endea-"vour'd to succour and defend him against "his enemys. I recovered his country and sub-"dued from those of Ourous Can, and put 'em "into his hands: at length I render'd him so "powerful, that he was crown'd emperor of "Capchac, and ascended the throne of Touchi. "Truly I confess that this good fortune comes "from God, but I know at the same time I "[illegible] of it; and the friend-"[illegible] "[illegible] "[illegible] "

Book III. [illegible] but distinguished [illegible] from evil, "It hath since sent another great army against "me, the vanguard of which, consisting of a "considerable body of horse, is entered into my "country. It is true, as soon as we put our-"selves in a readiness to march against this "vanguard, they fled before they con'd per-"ceive the dust our horses made: and now To-"camich having advice of our march, begs "pardon, because he knows no other way to "save himself from the punishment he deserves. "But since we have seen him so often violate "his oaths, and treatys, it won'd be [illegible] "dence to rely on his promises. We will exe-"cute, with the assistance of God, the reso-"lution we have taken, and the design for "which we have levy'd our army, that all the "world may see that God punishes the ingrate-"ful. In the mean time [illegible] we [illegible] truth, and sincere [illegible] desire peace, he must send to meet us [illegible] Bei *; that he may negotiate it with our great "Emirs; and we will do whatever is con-"sistent with our dignity, and the present con-"juncture."

Timur then order'd the ambassadors to be regal'd, and gave 'em vests of gold stuff; he settled their expences, and commanded that they should be handsomly treated, but that his officers shou'd have an eye upon their actions.

March 5. The sixth day of the month of Rabyulevel Timur held a council with the princes his sons and the great Emirs, and it was resolv'd that the ambassadors of Tocatmich shou'd follow the

* First minister of Tocatmich Can.

army, which at length march'd to the conquest of the empire of [illegible] join'd by Iam, Caratchoc [illegible] and Sabran, having gone a long way, [illegible] three weeks in the [illegible] plains of [illegible] horses were fatigued with the great way they had gone, and the scarcity of water, that they were [illegible] to extremity. At length on the [illegible] day of the month of Jumazyulevel the army arriv'd at Sarec Ouzan, where the horses quench'd their thirst, and the soldiers return'd thanks to God; they employ'd some days in crossing the river, because the waters were very high: [illegible] having found an easy passage, they [illegible] and swam over the river. During [illegible] two servants of Aidecou Uzbec fled, and pass'd the desart to find Tocatmich Can; they pursu'd 'em, but were not able to overtake 'em. The army continu'd its march in the great desart, and encamp'd in places where there were wells, that they might not want water.

March 19.

[illegible] of the month Jumazyulevel, [illegible] from [illegible] went to encamp at Ouzone Tar[a], where [illegible] won'd have the pleasure of seeing this great desart of Capchac: he ascended a mountain, and saw with admiration those vast plains, which for the space they took up, and their verdure, resembled the sea. He staid there all the day, and order'd the soldiers to bring stones to that place, where he caus'd a very high obelisk to be erected; and skilful engravers engrav'd on it the date of the year

April. 9.

[a] A town of Capchac between Yenghikent and Sabran.

[b] Mountains in Capchac, between the rivers Arch and Bauzac.

[illegible] Timur [illegible] at the [illegible] his army, that this fricassee might [illegible] a lasting monument to posterity. The troops decamp'd, and while they march'd [illegible] low'd the chase, they arriv'd at the banks of the river Hamone[a], where they encamp'd; [illegible] the river, they continued [illegible] in eight days arriv'd at [illegible] And as it was four months since they came from Tachkhut, the army [illegible] and what was more strange, in whatsoever [illegible] they march'd, tho they had [illegible] six or seven months journey, they met [illegible] any cultivated land. [illegible] and leaves in the [illegible] Man of wheat, or [illegible] royal Mans [illegible]

[illegible] as also all the Emirs of th[illegible] Tomans, the colonels of thousands, the centurions and decurions, to make proclamation no one on pain of death shou'd bake in the either bread, pastry-work, mutton, p[illegible] or any thing proper for boiling; but [illegible] one shou'd be contented with Boulanga[illegible] is commonly bak'd. The Emirs then [illegible] to live in this manner, for an [illegible] insomuch that a Man of wheat of [illegible] weight, equal to eight royal [illegible] with [illegible] herbs added, wou'd make [illegible] dishes [illegible]

[a] A river which runs into the Tic-in-Capchac.
[b] A bord in Capchac, long. 100. lat. 54.
[c] A Mith weighs a pound and a half French weight.
[d] Meat fricassa'd and mince'd, with a white sauce, like a fricassy of chickens.

Bajazet, and each [illegible] a dish allow'd him every day. [illegible] they were not in a condition [illegible] many soldiers were deprived of [illegible] were oblig'd to [illegible] and [illegible] upon only some eggs of birds and [illegible] animals, with what herbs they [illegible] to eat; of which they cou'd scarcely [illegible] enough to sustain life. Timur order'd a general hunting on Sunday, the day of [illegible] festival: the Tavachis gave orders to the officers of the right and left wing of the army to send out foragers to fetch the Cherlic; so they [illegible] a tract of land, wherein they [illegible] number of beasts and birds; and eight days after made a slaughter of the beasts, which is call'd Camarmichl.

Timur rode on horseback in all parts of the circle, and slew a great number of fawns, antelopes, deers and roe-bucks, till his dinner-[illegible] two hours and a half [illegible] [illegible] abundance of animals [illegible] which was dispatch'd by after the last scarcity they had suffer'd. They reckoned the beasts, and [illegible] the loan. Among this game they found a [illegible] larger than buffaloes, which surprizd them, they having never seen the like before: these animals are call'd Candogan by the Mogols, and Bakra by the inhabitants of Cashgar. They slew a great many of 'em, and the army subsisted a long time on their flesh.

CHAP. XI.

Timur reviews his troops.

AFTER this hunting was finish'd, Timur, with intention to take an exact view of his troops, he order'd them to be plaid by Toman and squadrons, and that every soldier should have his lance, war-club, pollard, and [illegible] ler, and that their horses shou'd be cover'd with tiger's skins; he also took care that each of them shou'd have a sabre on his left side, and a bow on his right. Timur mounted his horse clothed in his royal robes; he had upon his head the crown of gold enrich'd with rubies, and held in his hand a golden mace [illegible] top like an apple.

[illegible] before the first ranks of the Toman of Birdi Bei. The general leap'd off his horse, and took notice of Timur of the looks, stature, armor, and [illegible] of his soldiers; he fell on his knees holding the horse's bridle, kiss'd the earth, and made supplications for Timur; (for the custom of Tartary is, that at that time every commander must make supplication for the emperor, and [illegible] elogium on him even in his presence.) "All the world, said he, be obedient to Timur; "our heads and our lives in fidelity and "duty obliges us, that we may be ready to "sacrifice at the receipt the horse of his [illegible] "fly." Timur answer'd, and applauded the Bei, wishing that thro the valor of this brave man and of those who are like him, the empire might continue always flourishing. This [illegible]

[illegible] gold at the [illegible] and examin'd all the company [illegible] he then rode towards the [illegible] which he found [illegible] the soldiers [illegible] as well as the [illegible] observe the order of [illegible] as also their standards and [illegible] discourse in praise of his [illegible] and [illegible] for his [illegible] answer'd him with the same complaisance [illegible] ns'd to the [illegible] his civility was friendship, and commended him for the good order in which he saw his [illegible] Cheik Tamour, son of Ali-[illegible] Bezlas, at the head of the Hezares of the [illegible] came next in order of battel; [illegible] their arms, bows, arrows, and [illegible] men, besides a scymitar and club. Cheik Tamour also made supplication on his [illegible] and paid his respects. Timur approv'd [illegible] return'd him thanks, and [illegible] army of [illegible] Omar Cheik, all which [illegible] he staid there a long time, because the body was more numerous than the others. The Mirza [illegible] d to pay his devoirs and to the emperor, according to the maxims of war, which was highly liveable to the son of so great a monarch. He fell on his knees, as the rest had done, and made his vows for the prosperity of his majesty; he congratulated him on his conquests, which extended from the frontiers of China to the Caspian Sea. The emperor was very well pleas'd with the body of the army commanded by the Mirza his son, prais'd him exceedingly, and with a great deal of goodness said, "I pray God that "fortune be at your disposal, and always give

[illegible] advanc'd towards [illegible] Cah, and at ten [illegible] of the Emir Soliman Cash.

[illegible] emperor, who cared and cheer'd 'em [illegible] a long time. This [illegible] as the others had done [illegible] the grandfather, offering [illegible] which were well receiv'd [illegible] public in behalf of [illegible]

[illegible] as also the Mirza Mu[illegible] Cash, who commanded the right wing [illegible] army; for after Timur had view'd [illegible] and Toumans, the Emirs and great [illegible] commanded 'em, as Mahomet [illegible] Soliman, the Emir [illegible] Cash [illegible] cerity.

This great prince encourag'd 'em, and [illegible] guish'd 'em by applauses suitable to [illegible] observ'd

observ'd their soldiers in. In short, the review continu'd two days [illegible] till evening; and the emperor [illegible] numerous army was in the [illegible] Cerountai or [illegible] the meadows [illegible] and which the [illegible] At length they [illegible] make the great cry Sourouk [illegible] signing for a sight and got off their horses [illegible] that every one, seeing the vast number of this great army, could not [illegible] admire the power, valour, and good conduct of the invincible Timur.

CHAP. XII.

Timur sends the Mirza Mehemet Sultan to the head of the scouts.

[illegible] this [illegible]

[illegible] their courage by the [illegible] to go [illegible] in the [illegible] Mirza [illegible] was brought his father to honor him with that employ. The emperor approv'd the [illegible] at to render an age [illegible] and having carefully [illegible] gave him the [illegible] of the body of the scouts, letting him [illegible] that by reason of the employ he had in [illegible] the generals and soldiers of the army re-

* The vanguard of the army.

[illegible] great confidence in him, and that he had [illegible] great presence of mind, a strong coun[illegible] and perfect activity to acquit himself [illegible] of an employ which was the principal [illegible] of war, and on which the security of the army entirely depended. The astrologers having [illegible] the hour and moment of the departure [illegible] on the twenty fourth of April, this [illegible] immediately put himself at the head of [illegible] and the great Emirs, who [illegible] accompany him every where. [illegible] the enemy; but the Mirza [illegible] march with the Emirs, found a kind of [illegible] and came to the place where they had made fires in five or six places; [illegible] They immediately sent [illegible] of it to [illegible] who ordered expe[illegible]

[illegible] nothing, but use all necessary [illegible] to discover the enemy, and to be w[illegible] allow'd of every thing. The Mirza and the [illegible] having received these orders, immedi[illegible] and march'd day and night, [illegible] to inform themselves of what [illegible] they came to the river of Toupal[a] [illegible] it, the scouts brought [illegible] had been five or twenty [illegible] had sought every where, but [illegible] passage. They [illegible] immediately [illegible] and march [illegible] extreme diligence. When he was arrived [illegible] river of Toupal, he found the passage [illegible]

[a] A river which runs into the Tic in Capchac.

by

by the scouts, and [illegible] soldiers to get [illegible] faggots and great [illegible] to mend it; and at length he [illegible] with all his army, and [illegible] safely.

All the [illegible] were sent to gain intelligence, [illegible] vagabonds in this vast desert, without seeing one footstep, or hearing any news of the enemy. Timur order'd the Cheik [illegible] a Turcoman to come before him, and [illegible] him with a convoy to gain intelligence. He was a man of courage and experience, who had pass'd part of his life in these deserts, and there suffer'd extreme fatigues, to fulfil several his martial affairs; and had endur'd the cold and heat of seasons. The Cheik departed according to their orders; and after two days and two nights march, discover'd some hamlets of little consequence; he went with his guard behind a hill; and on the next morning they perceiv'd a horseman who came out of these hamlets on some [illegible]. They waited till he had [illegible] took him [illegible] and [illegible] him handsomely, and [illegible] several presents, and among the rest a gold [illegible] to hold a quiver, and a rich and curious vest. He demanded of the prisoner news of Tocatemur Can; who answer'd, that it was a month since he and his comrades came out of their own country to dwell in that place, but that they heard no news of the grand Can, tho ten cavaliers in armor, unknown to them, came six days agone, and retir'd to a wood at a small distance from these hamlets. Timur order'd Aid [illegible] to go with sixty men to make the inhabitants of these hamlets decamp, and bring 'em to court, which he did. Comari Yesaoul was at length sent with twenty horse, to bring away by force

force the [illegible]
got thither, and fought [illegible]
and his sailors taken and brought [illegible]
learnt from their mouths certain [illegible]
cannich Can, on which the army [illegible]

May 11. After having marched many days, and [illegible]
[illegible] the [illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible] the [illegible]
this river, [illegible]
Ghercha, and the [illegible]
of Hchapeus Ghercha. [illegible]
convenient to march by these passages, [illegible]
enemy should be there in ambuscade, [illegible]
[illegible]
the river; yet this [illegible]
than two days, &c. [illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible] the emperor, and even the Mura M[illegible]
Sultan seiz'd one of the enemy, whom he [illegible]
to his father, who informed [illegible]
pass'd in the army of Tocta[illegible]
told him that a great many of [illegible]
come to that place, but that [illegible]
Timur's march, they had [illegible]
turn'd, as soon as they [illegible]
their enemy's [illegible]
ing from his [illegible]
than d be made [illegible]

* A kind of engine, which runs into the [illegible]
long. 93. lib. 4.

† Which discharges it self into the [illegible]

of battle. They [illegible] found of in Chorasan [illegible] this vast [illegible] the crou- [illegible] ch, May 17.

[illegible] of the approach of an army more numerous than the sands of the desert, or the stars of the heavens, struck the head of it; that when Tocatmich heard this [illegible] to a very great degree, [illegible] the two armys; and at [illegible] fore all the pro-

[illegible] Tocatmich immediately [illegible] at the river of [illegible] hundred [illegible] the [illegible] passage, he [illegible] embarrass [illegible] that passage to hinder him; but the emperor [illegible] of the designs of Tocatmich, [illegible] the river at another place, and came [illegible] out danger. [illegible] was the [illegible] understanding the manner of

[illegible] which runs into the Caspian Sea [illegible]

[illegible] the Sea.

the

Book III. [illegible] Tocamish [illegible] and in that [illegible] all his troops were come [illegible] him, he drew up the two wings in order, and [illegible] they shou'd all have ready their great [illegible] bucklers; that they shou'd draw lines round the camp, and make divisions of it, that the regiments might [illegible] one another. This order was [illegible] the [illegible], and us'd in [illegible] and they pass'd the night in the same place. The [illegible] day the army camp'd, and continu'd its [illegible] the same lines. [illegible] all the [illegible] to come before him from [illegible] Tamans to the centurions, [illegible] and [illegible] a great deal of civility, [illegible] their [illegible] gave them as well as [illegible] suits of armor, as also [illegible] horses.

[illegible] they met in their way with many sloughs and marshes, which they pass'd with extreme fatigue; after which they encamp'd to rest themselves.

In the mean while the scouts brought [illegible] that three regiments of the enemy [illegible] there then came further advice, that [illegible] were a great body of soldiers. [illegible] his horse, and advanc'd against [illegible] his army to march in order of [illegible] one of our scouts brought [illegible] of the [illegible] mys whom he had taken; they inquir'd of [illegible] concerning every thing they were desi[illegible] knowing, and then put him to death. [illegible] tho they had seen some regiments of the [illegible], yet the army did not approach; and [illegible] giments disappear'd, Timur sent Sevindi [illegible] hader and Argoun Chah to gain intelligence, and

[illegible] narrowly to examine into the condition of Ghen[illegible] his army. The [illegible] and learnt that the regim[illegible] themselves were return[illegible] without being able [illegible] gave advice [illegible] certain news of the en[illegible] reported with a good num-[illegible] the most valiant horse of the army, and [illegible] great haste, he arriv'd at a wood, from [illegible] at some distance he [illegible] voices, and [illegible] learn, from [illegible] who brought him word, that they were force at the enemy, of whom there was a troop in those quarters. He thereupon prepar'd for battel, and went to fall upon 'em: these men seeing there was no other remedy than fighting, stood their ground to save their lives; thus the fight began, and the war [illegible] reviv'd again; they resisted [illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible] Mobacher [illegible] company of him; he inform'd himself from the prisoners of the condition of Tocatmich Can. They told him he had caus'd it to be proclaim'd [illegible] where that the army shou'd assemble at [illegible] that in consequence of that order they [illegible] there, and found no one, but knew not the reason why they fail'd of coming to the rendezvous; that they wander'd as vagabonds in the woods and desarts, while they had the misfortune to meet Mobacher, and be taken prisoners; After they had learnt from 'em what they most desir'd, they were put to death

[illegible] As [illegible] ought to [illegible] son of the prince of [illegible] who [illegible] wounded; he left off [illegible] and [illegible] that he was upon his road to [illegible] the Can, but that he did not find him [illegible] rendezvous, and that he could give no other [illegible] [illegible] Gilal, son of Emir F[illegible] with [illegible] Mouli, [illegible] Sainte Maure, [illegible] other brave men in quality of [illegible] with order, that as soon as [illegible] dust of any of the enemy's troops [illegible] quite sure, if the others were the greatest [illegible] ber, to draw themselves and immediately [illegible] retreating away, by that means to deceive [illegible] and engage the enemy; and that they [illegible] not fail to give [illegible] shou'd happen. The [illegible] march'd according to [illegible]

[illegible] and advanced upon our men. Sainte Maure also advanc'd against 'em, spake to 'em himself, and return'd flying. The [illegible] immediately gave notice what had pass'd [illegible] Mouli, who join'd Timur with all expe[illegible] and gave him an account of all the [illegible] and of what had pass'd, with the [illegible] ness.

---

[a] A province bordering on that of [illegible]

[b] Capital of Capchac on the Volga, [illegible] No. 44.

[illegible]

Barel: [illegible]

[illegible]UR having recov'd this [illegible] order'd the Emir Aicoutbuk to follow the [illegible] and to [illegible] receive advice concerning the [illegible] of the [illegible] which [illegible] were passed, and of the number of those who were advanc'd; and he was particularly enjoin'd to use great prudence and exact precaution. This Emir hasten'd his departure, cross'd the marshes and rivers, and join'd Emir Gelal Hamid, and the other scouts. From t[illegible] he advanc'd, and perceiv'd on the top of a [illegible] who seem'd diverting them-[illegible]

[illegible] upon ascending one hill, perceiv'd on the other side thirty compact companies of horse in array, rang'd in order of battel in a valley, who watch'd in this ambuscade an opportunity to surprize us. Our men stopp'd in this place, and sent advice of it to Aicoutbuk, who immediately departed, attended the hill, and took all precautions to view the state of the enemy; but as there was a great number of em, he thought it not proper to attack 'em, but imagin'd it better to return without noise, and repass the waters and marshes. He sent back his soldiers, while he remain'd with some horse behind the enemy, who observing the Emir Ai-

[illegible] with [illegible], and that [illegible]s and marshes w[illegible] must cross [illegible] hinder the bringing an[illegible] they [illegible]. This valia[illegible] ly sustain'd their attack with unparal[illegible] tion; he kept back with his arrows [illegible] panys, while he and his companions [illegible] a horse distance, to give time to his fo[illegible] and detachies to pass these ways and marshes, which himself had also done, if his horse had not been unfortunately shot under him with an arrow; and while he was remou[illegible] a second, that was also shot, and imme[illegible] died. Then the enemy charg'd the [illegible] on all sides; but this intrepid person, [illegible] foot [illegible] against the [illegible] rounded him: he won't [illegible] fighting, till his enemy, who d[illegible] on him [illegible]

[illegible] warriors.

[illegible] was follow'd by that of Herin[illegible] ton of Yadghiar Berlas, an illustrious man [illegible] well for his birth, for he was a relation [illegible] mur, as his merit, being of the mo[illegible] men of that age. The famous Ramada[illegible] and the celebrated Mehemet Erlat, w[illegible] slain in this fight: these were the [illegible] tains Timur had. On this side [illegible] army of Tokatmich Can w[illegible] lamp which is going out, [illegible] last effort, casts a light greater than oth[illegible] in the room it is in. It [illegible] from this [illegible] the power of Tokatmich continually di[illegible] as will be related hereafter.

Timur then arriv'd at the bank of [illegible] having near his person the Emir Hadgi [illegible] and the Emir Gehancha: he got off his [illegible] well

well as his guards, and cross'd the river with them, notwithstanding the streams of the enemy, which made an extraordinary noise while they flew thro [illegible] Our men having cross'd the river, fell upon the enemy as lions on their prey: the soldiers of the invincible Timur found the precautions and artifices of these foxes; they were [illegible], and constrain'd to fly, leaving on the spot the greatest part of their soldiers. Gelal Hamid was remarkable above others; he attack'd with thirty men three companys of the enemy who stood in his way, whom he exceedingly gaul'd; and he acquitted himself of this action with so [illegible] valor and courage, that he [illegible] all the glory a warrior can expect from the most noble and vigorous enterprize. Nedila also fought like a brave man, and made appear his merit, which he had the happiness of doing in Timur's presence; as also Chah Malek, son of Togaimirken, who did not shoot one arrow without wounding or killing him he aim'd at. [illegible] six fingers on each hand, also [illegible] of the most heroic [illegible] they surpriz'd three of the enemy, whom they brought to Timur.

Then this prince return'd to his camp, and order'd the brave men to come before him, a list of whom had been drawn up. He highly praiz'd them; and that posterity might be put in mind of their valor, he not only loaded 'em with favors, but made 'em of the order of the Tercans, and ordered the Yasaouls [1] to receive 'em whenever they came to the palace, and admit 'em to his

[1] Yasaoul and [illegible] signify the same. They are door-keepers, and have [illegible] entry into the chamber and closet of the grand Can.

[illegible] he also order'd that [illegible] they nor their children shou'd be condemned [illegible] even question'd for any crime, except they have committed it nine times.

Timur declar'd that these privileges shou'd be preserv'd to their successors for seven generations. He granted several other favors to the relations of the Emir Aircoutmur, who had the honor of martyrdom; and among the rest to Chah Malek son of Calagigai. He gave him the posts and titles of honor which belong'd to his father, as also the great seal, as well as the seal of the butterfly *.

And as it was near six months since the imperial standard set out, and it always advanc'd towards the north, the army came to a place so near the pole, that in the evening, before the sun was entirely set, the rays of the [illegible] appear'd in the east; [illegible] sun is [illegible] accordingly, according to the ordinance of the Mahometan law, that the evening prayer shou'd be made. Timur departed from that place with his standard display'd, and went to encamp on a neighboring mountain; where he staid till next morning, and then decamp'd. Tocatmuchan never expected the arrival of our army; but his scouts appear'd every day to skirmish with us, and surprize us if they found an opportunity: yet as soon as our soldiers oblig'd them to give battle, they fled with all speed into the desarts.

In the mean while Timur held a council with the princes his sons, and his generals, [illegible] was there resolv'd on; he order'd the Emir

* A little seal in the shape of a butterfly, which [illegible] Persia makes use of to this day.

Omar

Omar Cheik to put himself at the head of twenty thousand horse, and to march with expedition to engage [illegible] and if possible to secure his [illegible]. He joined the Emirs Sevindgic and [illegible] Sendger, the Emir Oman, Hasan [illegible] and some others, to accompany him; and at the same time the twenty thousand men [illegible] and the Mirza made 'em march so expeditiously, that on the morrow they had advice that the scouts of both partys were met. Timur immediately got ready his army, and imploring God's assistance who had always made him victorious, he was full of fury, if one may so say, and march'd to fight the enemy. The air was so dark, the clouds so thick, and the rains so great, that one cou'd not see three paces.

CHAP. XIV.

The [illegible] extremely in [illegible] extraordinary [illegible] cease'd thereupon.

THE fifteenth day of the month Regeb 793, which answers to the year of the Mon-hen, the air clear'd up after six days bad weather. Timur rang'd the army in order of battel; and because the affair was of great consequence, he us'd his utmost care. He divided the army into seven bodys, which was never before practis'd among his troops; but it was believ'd this was done by inspiration from God, to make Timur victorious, because the number *seven* is esteem'd sacred and mysterious. But as this knowledg be- July 5, 1391.

Book III. belongs only to those who are acquainted with the septenary and cabalistic numbers; we will say no more of it. Timur gave the command of the first body to Sultan Mahmoud Chah, which was to serve for the vanguard; and the Emir Soliman Chah was his lieutenant general. He plac'd the Mirza Mehemet Sultan at the head of the second, which was more numerous, and pass'd for the main body; and this prince had the most skilful officers to serve under him. The third, which serv'd as the rear or body of reserve, was compos'd of the regiment of guards, and twenty companys of soldiers, chosen out of the bravest of the army, and those who had been inur'd to war; and it was commanded by Timur himself, who kept his post behind the second body, at a distance from the others, that in the heat of the battel, if any part of the army shou'd be overpower'd, fresh [illegible] diately be sent to succour [illegible] which serv'd for a right wing was under the command of Mirza Miran Chah, who had for his lieutenant general the prince Mehemet Sultan Chah. He prepar'd this party of troops for battel, after having made all the soldiers [illegible] ready their great and little bucklers. The [illegible] body, which serv'd for a vanguard to the [illegible] wing, was led by the Emir Hadgi [illegible], a person who was usually in the greatest dangers, and on the most difficult affairs, out of which he won'd bring himself with glory and distinction. The sixth, which consisted of the troops of Andecan, compos'd the left wing of the army, and had for its leader Mirza Omar Cheik. The seventh body serv'd as a vanguard to the left wing, which was commanded by Birdi Bei, son of Sar Bonga, and by Codadad Hasseni, two Emirs who had on a hundred occasions given

given marks of the greatest valor, and the most unblamable conduct.

All the Emirs [illegible] leaders of the Tomans, Hezares and [illegible] being thus fix'd in their posts, [illegible] according to his rank; the cavalry and infantry march'd in order of battel, under their respective generals; and the motion upon the march of this numerous army resembled the waves of the impetuous sea. Some soldiers were arm'd with bucklers, swords and arrows; others had in their hands war-clubs and partizans; others lances and pikes: most of 'em were cover'd with cuirasses. The princes and Emirs had coats of mail, or breast-plates of iron, and all of 'em wore on their heads helmets so neatly polish'd, that the great number of 'em dazzled the eyes of the beholders. On the other hand, they perceiv'd the enemy's army, the soldiers of which were compleatly arm'd. Tocatmich Can had divided 'em into three bodies according to custom, that is, into a main [illegible] wings. All his generals and captains [illegible] Tourchi; [illegible] among the rest Tacp Tamur Aglen, Mirzabec Aglen, Ilicmich Aglen, Bic Poulad Aglen, Ali Aglen, Chintra Aglen, and others; as also Emirs of great esteem, as Ali and Soliman Bouli Gangorat [1], Norouz Gangorat, Actzo, Arbouta, Orousionc Cayat [2], Aisa Bei eldest brother of Aidecou, Ajan Bei, Serai, Kuke Bouli, Yabelbi Behrine [3], Cougourbi, and other great Emirs of Capchac; they rang'd themselves in form of a half-moon, and then came in view.

---

[1] Gangorat is an illustrious royal family among the Mogols.
[2] Cayat, a Mogul lord. [3] Behrine a Mogul lord.

Then Timur, thro an excess of bravery, and despising Tocatmich, order'd all [illegible] to dismount, and to prepare their tents as if they wou'd encamp: which Tocatmich perceiving, he was surpriz'd at the little regard our men had to his troops. This action made him alter his measures, and he rang'd his army with greater care than he commonly us'd. Thus the two partys being in view of each other, it was observ'd that the army of Capchac surpass'd ours by some companys. Timur, who confided more in the assistance of heaven than in the multitude of soldiers, and the abundance of arms, [illegible] pages and ammunition, got off his horse, and address'd himself to God by prayer, as he always did before a battel. He twice bow'd his head towards the ground, and pray'd to God, who was the distributer of launch [illegible] Having remounted his horse [illegible] Reber, God is the most great; and displaying their ensigns and standards, they beat their drums, as well as their great and little kettle drums. They made the great cry call'd Sou[illegible] to begin the battel at the sound of the terrible trumpet Kerrenai; and it may be said, [illegible] never was so great a confusion between [illegible] and earth. Then the excellent Imam Seid Bereke, of the race of Mahomet, who had formerly predicted to Timur his [illegible] to the throne, lift up his hands to heaven, uncover'd his head, and humbling himself before God [illegible] sought victory for the emperor [illegible] extraordinary zeal a passage * of the Alcoran

* This passage of the Alcoran, according to the [illegible] Cabalists, is full of a secret and mysterious virtue.

obtain

obtain it; and at length he took up some dirt, which he flung in the enemy's faces, saying, "Your faces shall be blacken'd thro the shame "of the defeat." Then he said to Timur, "Go where you please, you shall be victori-"ous." Chap. 16.

At the same time the bravest men on both sides began the fight with half-pikes, swords and iron-clubs. The Emir Hadgi Seifeddin was most active in the service of his prince. He was the first who with sword in hand rush'd furiously upon the left wing of the enemy, which was over-against him. This wing some time disputed the victory; but by his good conduct he at length overthrew it, and destroy'd all the measures the enemy had taken. As their soldiers exceeded ours in number, they advanc'd to attack the squadron of Hadgi Seifeddin in the rear; but Gehancha Behader, who perceiv'd their motion, advanc'd towards them with his regiment, which he had detach'd out of the body of re-[illegible] fell on 'em with sword and [illegible] slow to return [illegible] other side, and made 'em retreat with the [illegible] precipitancy. The Mirza Miran Chah, who commanded the right wing, at the same time fell upon 'em; and his attack was so successful, that having put the cavalry into confusion, he over-[illegible] whatsoever stood in his way, and routed [illegible]'s left wing. Osman Abbas advanc'd [illegible] of his regiment of Capchac, and at-[illegible] companys of the enemy; but he fell from his horse in the midst of 'em, and had been in great danger if he had not found means to remount. Then he return'd to attack the three companys of skirmishers, whom he put to the rout. Cheik Ali Behader on this occasion per-

[illegible] forward exploits of the utmost valour. On the other hand, the Mirza Mehemet Sultan advanc'd at the head of the main body, and broke thro' that of the enemy. The Mirza Omar Cheik, at the head of the left wing, also perform'd whatever cou'd be expected from a skilful general and a valiant soldier, defeating and cutting to pieces all who resisted him. Birdi Bei and Codadad Hoseini, so briskly oppos'd the right wing of the enemy, that they oblig'd it to give ground and fly. All the Emirs resisted those who oppos'd 'em; and the field of battel was cover'd with blood.

Then Tocatmich observ'd how his troops decreas'd. He found he cou'd not be long able to withstand the squadrons which Temour commanded in person; for which reason he turn'd his horse another way. He then [illegible] Mirza Omar Cheik [illegible] attempt [illegible] Cheik Temour Behader, who commanded the Hezares of the hord of Selduz. Tocatmich, accompany'd by a great number of the bravest Emirs of his empire, attack'd Cheik Temour with the utmost vigor: and tho' the latter, with his lieutenant Tomanich, defend'd themselves with courage equal to that of Tocatmich, and let fly great showers of arrows upon their enemys; yet the soldiers of Tocatmich, imitating the Fedais [1] of the Ismaelites, who sacrific'd their lives at their prince's order, without fear of death, fought with so much [illegible] that the brave resistance of our men was [illegible] from [illegible] only that it even serv'd to animate them. They behav'd themselves with

[1] Those who were formerly call'd assassins.

so much courage in every attack, with their Chinese swords and half-pikes, that they gain'd the advantage of our [illegible] and [illegible] defeated the whole horde of [illegible]. They rushed into the very middle of the [illegible] and were about to possess themselves behind our army, with design to keep the ground and gain the victory. But the brave Omar Cheik perceiv'd their motions, and with his cavalry fell upon Tocatmich; everyone, holding his buckler before him, fought with resolution. On the other hand, Timur, who was in pursuit of the enemy's main body which he had routed, was told by Tehoke Taverki, that Tocatmish had travers'd our army with many squadrons, and had form'd some ranks behind ours, having resolv'd to maintain his ground. Timur reflecting on this advice, which was confirm'd by an express from Mirza Omar Cheik, desisted from the pursuit of those he had defeated, to make Tocatmich repent of his rashness. He carry'd with him his [illegible] but Tocatmich on sight [illegible] and [illegible] being seiz'd with fear and despair, he quitted the desire and ambition of reigning, to save his life; so that his reflection only on opposing his benefactor, oblig'd him shamefully to fly. The lords and generals of his army, not being able to make any farther resistance, followed their master's example, and their standards were overturn'd. Our soldiers on this defeat were exasperated against the conquer'd, and closely pursuing 'em, made a terrible slaughter; so that nothing but confusion was seen in the Mogul troops. All the army of Capchac were dispers'd; and for the space of forty leagues whither they were pursu'd, nothing cou'd be seen

[illegible] fourscore hundred of blood, and [illegible] their dead bodys.

The rashness and ingratitude of Tocatmich being thus punish'd by the justice of [illegible] Timur having reveng'd himself on the [illegible] ousness on the king of Capchac, he got off his horse, and fell upon his face, to return thanks to the King of kings for his victory, acknowledging that he had obtain'd it thro his goodness and clemency alone. The children of Timur, the princes of the blood, the generals, and all the great Emirs and officers came to him; they fell on their knees, congratulated him on his success, and sprinkled gold and precious stones upon him; according to the custom of the Mongouls, in token of their joy, at this important victory. Timur embrac'd the princes [illegible] and gave many testimonys of affection to [illegible] and great officers; and [illegible] tions; he [illegible] grandeur. [illegible] seven horse out of every ten in the army, to go in pursuit of the fugitives. These brave conquerors departed with expedition to overtake the conquer'd. But as these miserable people having before [illegible] the Volga, and behind 'em the vengeance of our men, they cou'd not fly far, despairing of passing the river, or of obtaining any quarter. Thus few of the enemy escap'd [illegible] The women, children, baggage, and goods of the conquer'd fell into the hands of the conquerors; and it won'd be difficult to enumerate the quantity of spoils which our soldiers brought away.

We have related that Condge Aglen, [illegible] Cotluc Aglen, and Aidecou, three princes of the royal blood of Touchi, bore an [illegible] hatred to Tocatmich; that they had fled from him,

him, and seeking refuge at the court of Timur Cheg, were attach'd to his service both in time of peace and war. This monarch always treated 'em favorably, and [illegible] with marks of distinction. He [illegible] 'em, perfect of belts, precious stones, robes of honor, and horses of great price. [illegible] Cocatmich was vanquish'd, but yet had [illegible] good Fortune to save his life from a thousand dangers; these three princes, seeing the empire of Touchi brought so low, and the people dispers'd, fell on their knees before Timur, and told him, that if he approv'd of it, they wou'd go in search of the hords which they formerly commanded, and bring 'em over to his service.

Timur consented to it, and gave 'em letters-patent, that no one might molest 'em, or any who belong'd to 'em; and he exempted their subjects from the right of paying the Gan, which is a kind of tax. These princes, after their orders were given 'em, went in search of their [illegible] with a great deal of joy. Timur [illegible] and sent in [illegible] the banks of the Volga, he encamp'd on the plain of Ourtonpa, which for its verdure, fresh and pure air, surpasses all others. Here the tent and imperial throne was fix'd, to give a magnificent entertainment to the Emirs. All the camp, which consisted of a great number [illegible] and pavilions, was incompass'd with a [illegible] of brocade with gold flowers, which appears the more magnificent, in that this camp was three leagues in length every way, and a man's voice cou'd not be heard from one side to the other.

Revolt of prince Temour Cothe luc Aglen.

Temour Cothe Aglen, who was gone in search of his former subjects, found 'em; and

[illegible] had no sooner got 'em together, than he had the ambition to think of ascending the throne of Touchi. He forgot the obligations he ow'd to Timur; and instead of keeping his promise of returning to court with his subjects, he led 'em into the midst of the desart. Aidecou was not more sincere than the other; for having found his men, he march'd with 'em on his side the country, notwithstanding the agreement he had made. A natural enemy will never become a true friend; a thistle will bear no other fruit than thorns; the seed of the bitter apple will not produce balm; a reed for mats will give no sugar; nor a female pearl become a male: he who is by nature vitious, will never be made virtuous. There was only Condge Agren, who having found part of his subjects, return'd to court according to his promise. This prince had always been extremely favor'd, and kept familiar with the emperor, having shar'd with him in his most secret pleasures; for which reason he met with a handsom reception.

Revolt of Aidecou.

All the Emirs and warriors, whom the emperor had sent out to pillage the country, return'd victorious, loaded with booty, as horses, camels, oxen, sheep, and a great number of captives of every age and sex. They took an [illegible] enemys who had hid themselves in the isles of the Volga, and brought 'em laden with chains; and put 'em all into the hands of Timur, to distribute 'em as he thought fit. All the poor men who were in the service of the army, and who by labor and the sweat of their bodies cou'd scarce find subsistance, on this occasion got together so many horses and sheep, that when they had a design to return to their country, they cou'd not carry with 'em all their goods,

goods, but were oblig'd to leave part behind them.

Among the slaves were a great many beautiful girls, some of whom were plac'd in Timur's seraglio, and the rest distributed among the Emirs. They also chose five thousand handsom young men, who were put in the Seraglio, to be instructed in the particular service of the emperor, and to have the care of the officers and posts in his houshold. Then Timur order'd that preparations shou'd be made for a solemn and magnificent feast in the meadow of Quntoupa, on the bank of the Volga; which was more sumptuous than any that had ever been in the country of Touran. The several sorts of meats, as well as of liquors, were serv'd up in vessels of gold, or of precious stone, by the hands of the most beautiful women in the world, which made every thing appear more agreeable. The songs, which celebrated the victories of Timur, were at the same time sung on [illegible] tune us'd in songs of triumph. [illegible] Quntoupa on the Volga was the seat of the empire of Touchi, son of the great Genghiz Can; and his successors have always made it the place of their residence. Timur had the satisfaction to continue his diversions on their throne. The most beautiful ladys of his seraglio attended him, and each of the lords had his own with the cup in her hand to accompany the voice and airs of the musicians who sung to the tune Ochac, which was only practised when the assembly was inclin'd to amorous conversation. All the army had a share in the diversion, which made the soldiers,

who

[illegible] when spent twenty six days [illegible] time, for-[illegible] get the fatigues of war.

CHAP. XV.

Timur returns from the desart of Capchac to the seat of his empire.

AFTER this famous victory, there [illegible] maining no more enemys in the desarts, or in the isles of the Volga, Timur began his march to Samarcand with the army, followed by a great train of captives of both sexes, which exceedingly pleas'd the soldiers, who had their share in the goods, money, and slaves. The inhabitants of the desart of Capchac dwell in portable tents, which need not [illegible] pieces at decampment, [illegible] trouble fix'd again at an encampment. When they decamp, they place these tents upon camels, and march in that manner to the place where they wou'd encamp next. Our soldiers in the way diverted themselves with the conversation of their beautiful slaves. Tho in other conquests the goods and slaves were [illegible] brought away, yet in this, even the houses were carry'd home; which made the camp become so spacious, that if any one lost his tent, it wou'd require a long time to find it again.

When the army arriv'd at the river of [illegible] the love of his country made Condge Aglen, who was a native of Capchac, fly from the army with his men. Which verify the maxim of men of sense, that one ought not to trust strangers; for sooner or later we shall be betray'd by 'em.

Some

†

Some days after the army had cross'd the Tic, Timur, leaving the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin and other Emirs, to conduct the body of the army and the baggage, went before thro the rest of the [illegible] without considering the danger he ran to do that in the month of Zilhadge 793, he came to Sabran, thence to Otrar; and at length cross'd the river of Sihon, from whence he arriv'd at Samarcand, where the inhabitants testify'd their joy, as well as the princes his sons, the queens, the princesses, and the Noyans*, who sprink'd upon him gold and precious stones, and congratulated him on his victory and happy return. Then public feasts were prepar'd, accompany'd with consorts of vocal and instrumental musick, perform'd by the finest voices and instruments; in which the newest airs, and charming songs compos'd on the victorys of this great prince, were often sung. This feast lasted many days, and there was nothing wanting which might demonstrate a compleat joy. [illegible] the Mirza Miran Chah [illegible] which began his [illegible] and [illegible] camp'd in the great plain of Barfin, near that place. In the beginning of Muharrem 794, which answers to the year of the Monkey, the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin, whom Timur left at the river of Tic to conduct the body of the army and the baggage, arriv'd at the plain of Barfin. [illegible] the army which rendezvous'd at Tachkume [illegible] to go to Capchac, departed from that town in the month of Sefer 793, and arriv'd at Barfin in the month of Muharrem, we may say that this important campain continu'd eleven months.

Chap. [illegible]

September 1391.

* Foreign princes.

December, 1391.

January, 1391.

As there was a great quantity of booty, and the vast plain of Barfin was cover'd with the flocks

[illegible] his flocks and cattel taken from the enemy; the emperor was willing that the princes his sons, the princesses, and ladys of the court, the Cheiffs and chief men of the state, who were not at the war, shou'd share in the booty. He distributed among 'em several beautiful girls and boys; gave 'em sheep and cattel in abundance, and a great many fine horses. All the court pass'd the winter in this place with Timur: and in the beginning of the spring this prince return'd to Samarcand. He repass'd the river before Cogende, where he entertain'd this charming court with a general chace, because this place was full of all sorts of beasts, of which a vast number were kill'd.

CHAP. XI.

[illegible] Pir Mehemed, son of Gehanghir.

WHEN Timur with all his court arriv'd at the plain of Akiar near Kech, he appointed the Mirza Pir Mehemet, son of Gehanghir, governor of the kingdom which formerly belong'd to the grand Sultan Mahmoud: [illegible], all the country from Gazna [1] and Cabul as far as India; and from Candahar to the river Indus [2], call'd in Persian, Abseind. He order'd several officers, great Emirs and Meviams to ac-

[1] A town between Cabul and Candahar, long. 109. 30. lat. 33. 30.

[2] Otherwise call'd Abseind and Mehran. It springs from the lake of Behre, near Lahor. long. 108. lat. 32.

tend

tend this prince: of which number were, the Chan of famous Cotobeddin [illegible] the Emir Solyman Chah, Behloul [illegible] Derwich Berlas, Islam son [illegible] and many other lords [illegible] the Emirs went at [illegible] a great army to take possession [illegible] government: and Timur departed from [illegible] to Samarcand, where many princes and great lords begg'd leave of him to marry their children with princesses of their rank and birth: to which this prince not only consented, but he won'd also be himself at their feasts, to let 'em see that he shar'd in their joy. He went out of the city to encamp in the delicious meadow of Canighenl, where he gave orders that preparations shou'd be made for the magnificent entertainments and diversions which shou'd accompany these marriages. A royal banquet was provided, at which the tables were set in form of an army rang'd in order of battel, Timur [illegible] plac'd at the head of 'em on a throne of [illegible] apartments were on one side, and [illegible] shew'd in the richest [illegible] d [illegible] the greatest lords of Asia; so that they imagin'd themselves in the reign of Afrasiab [a], an ancient emperor of Touran, whose great actions are recorded by historians.

There was the greatest plenty imaginable at [illegible]; the musicians even surpass'd themselves on [illegible] Ochac and Ozzal [b]. And to render this [illegible] pleat, the Mirza Pir Mehemed, son

[a] Afrasiab, emperor of Touran, was the enemy of Rousteem, celebrated in Sadeck's history of Persia, which contains one hundred thirty thousand verses.

[b] Oriental names for amorous songs.

Bokhari, of [illegible] and his brother [illegible] Mirza Ronmah, by the emperor's order, the [illegible] married the daughters of Cayaseddin [illegible] and the Mirza Aboubecre, son of the Mir[illegible] Chah, espous'd the daughter of the Emir [illegible] Seifeddin. They had apartments prepar'd for 'em, and particular officers assign'd 'em.

CHAP. XVII.

Timur departs for a war of five years continuance.

WE have a tradition of Mahomet, wherein he assures us that he was the child of the sword, and that the most [illegible] which he pass'd [illegible] protection of the sword: which demonstrates that kings are not peaceable possessors of the throne, but when they are victorious; and that subjects can't enjoy quiet [illegible] their familys, but by the protection of the [illegible] of their prince. The scepter and crown [illegible] a certain poet, are the reward of [illegible] who undergoes the fatigues of war, and marches at the head of his armys, that he may arrive at grandure and glory. Thus Timur [illegible] gain an empire before he was main'd at the siege of the capital city of Siftan. When this prince [illegible] on his return from the tiresome but glorious campain of Capchac, his ambition prompted him to repass by the kingdom of Iran, which he had before conquer'd, to suppress the disorders which had got footing there, thro the presumption of some rash fellows, who during the absence of the

court

[illegible] had ordered [illegible] to go into alb[illegible] to assemble the troops, and [illegible] ready for a campaign [illegible] immediately to the c[illegible] and the fifth [illegible] while the [illegible] was [illegible] a large standard to be displayed, on which was the figure of a dragon. When he was near Bocara in the month of Mahurrem, the grandees of that city came out to meet him. The troops encamp'd before that city; and he was seiz'd at his place with a distemper on the [illegible] of Chaban 794, which he concealed a long time, and decamp'd; but when he was at Jouidez, a place dependent on Bocara, his distemper increas'd; and he was obliged to stop there, and call to him the ladys, and the princes his children. The empresses Serai Mulc Canum, Touman Aga, and Sultan Bact Begum, came with the sons of the emperor, who [illegible] the Mirza Mehemet Sultan, who [illegible] the head of the vanguard, [illegible] and return to [illegible] skilful Persian and Arabian physicians were made use of; especially Emir Hadgi Seifeddin was sent [illegible] ein, to see that they prepar'd with dispatch the necessary remedys for Timur's relief. But the princes, the princesses, and Timur himself, [illegible] that health was to be expected from God, who is the true physician, employ'd not only temporal but spiritual remedys; and ordered [illegible] to be reach[illegible]. They sent presents to all [illegible] places, and to the tombs of the great [illegible]; they gave alms to the poor and sick, and sacrific'd the finest horses in the imperial stables, [illegible] others, distributing the

May 10. 1392.

May 25.

Book III. [illegible] among the poor. The people's prayers, and the charitys of the grandees soon had their [illegible] effect; and what is writ in many places prov'd true, that alms prolong life: for the night

June 10. 1392. before the fifteenth of Chaban, which is called Chebeberat, or the night of breves, God restor'd the emperor to his health. The joy at this good news was universal: and Timur ordered the Mirza Menemet Sarem to return to the

June 20. 1392. command of his vanguard; while himself rode horse the twenty-fifth of Chaban 794. to show himself to the people, who wish'd him health and prosperity.

CHAP. XVIII.

Timur departs from [illegible]

June 26. 1392. In the month of Schawal 794. Timur gave orders concerning the conduct of his army;

July 2. and the sixth of the same month he order'd the drum to be beat, after the astrologers had fix'd the happy moment: and he departed at the head of his troops. He sent the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin to Samarcand, and went to encamp [illegible]

July 6. at Amouye on the tenth of Ramadan; from whence he sent back to his capital the empresses Serai Mulc Canum, Tourmah Agah, and other ladys: and two days after, the Mirza Charoc also receiv'd orders to return home. The emperor embrac'd and kiss'd him, and having comforted him for his separation, he caress'd him a thousand times, and recommending him to God, took leave of him. The same day the Mirza set out for Samarcand, Timur departed from Amouye, cross'd the Gihon, and entered into

Coras-

Corassana. Some days after he went to Macan and Abiverd, and on the twenty-ninth of Ramadan to Yassi Daban. There, on the appearance of the new moon, he [illegible] the prayer of Beiram, which is [illegible] feast of the Mahometans. He then [illegible] d this feast with all the ceremony [illegible] these happy days. He at length departed for Ilgazigage Gabenchan[a], where he joined the Mirza Mehemet Sultan, who commanded the body of the scouts. He also found there the Mirza Pir Mehomed, son of Gehanghir, at the head of his troops, and the Emir Gehancha with his, who according to orders, were already come from Coudoz and Bacalan to join the scouts. The princess Canzade, widow of Gehanghir, came thither also from Herat; she put a stole round her neck, according to custom, that she might have the honor to present to Timur the princes his sons, presumptive heirs of the crown. At this place she gave a magnificent entertainment to the emperor, who made her [illegible] rich presents. Timur decamp'd on [illegible] and ar- Aug. 14.
[illegible] on the banks of the river [illegible]. The same day the venerable Seid Berekat brought to Timur the Seid Caias Eddin, son of Kemaleddin[c], with considerable presents. He told his majesty, that his father order'd him to come and submit to him, and to shew his willingness

[a] A village between Abiverd and Bibir Abad in Corassana. There is also an Ilgazigage near Shamarcand.

[b] A [illegible] passe by a town of the same name, in the province of Mazandran, on the frontiers of Ghilan, and runs into the Caspian, long. 89. lat. 38.

[c] Kemaleddin was a sort of false devot, of the race of Mahomet, who by his hypocrisy made himself chief of his party, and master of the town of [illegible] in Mazandran.

he [illegible], and made [illegible] with him, the conditions of which he would [illegible] as faithful servant and a sincere friend. [illegible] received him handsomely, and was satisfy'd with his proposals, for the person's sake who brought him; and Cazan Eddin was highly pleas'd with the emperor's favour to him. When Timur arrived at Ellenkand, Pir Padisha, son of Hocum Pacha, to whom the emperor had given the government of this place after his father's death, paid his devoirs as a faithful servant, made presents to the emperor, and entertain'd him very agreeably.

CHAP. [illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible] days march from [illegible] Ebad, came to a wood extremely thick, the trees of which grew so close together, that the wind con'd scarce pass thro': whereupon the emperor order'd the soldiers to cut down the trees, and open a passage thro' this wood, tho' it had been till that time impenetrable. They immediately began to execute his orders, and at last made three great ways, each of which was a bow's shot in breadth. The middle way was design'd for the main body to march thro', and the others for the two wings. They insensibly arrived, cutting down the wood before 'em, [illegible] and there [illegible] that the Seid Kemaleddin had fled to the Seid Rajeddin at

* A town of Ghilan, long. 88. lat. 37.

Mahanasar[a], which are three towns situate four Chenaleagues from Amol[b], on the shore of the Caspian sea; and that they had built a fort on an adjacent hill, which [illegible] on one side, and instead of [illegible] commanded the [illegible] pieces which [illegible] commanded for the space of a mile [illegible] sea, which in turbulent weather flow'd within the rocks; so that the place seem'd to be in the middle of water. Round about the wall they had fix'd great trees near one another, the branches of which were so closely join'd together, that they serv'd instead of a second wall. The princes of Amol and Sari retir'd into this place, with their relations, houshold, [illegible] treasures, and whatever they had that was precious. The rich inhabitants of these countrys, and the foreign merchants themselves, also retir'd thither with all their effects, confiding in the strength of their walls, and the inaccessibleness of the place: and thus this fortress was fill'd with so great a quantity of gold, silver [illegible] that the most skilful arithmetic[illegible] value of [illegible] [illegible] to march with expedition [illegible] the lakes and marshes of these forests, and in three days arriv'd at Amol. He order'd the Seid Cayas-Eddin to go and confer with his father, and bring him to him. And as this nation had always the character of being faithless, irreligious, and depraved in their morals; God permitted that the infamous sentence which was us'd [illegible] Nemaleddin and the other Cheriffs, shou'd be pronounc'd by his own son, whom Ti-

[a] Long. 88. 8. lat. 37. 50.
[b] A town of Ghilan near the Caspian, long. 87. 25. lat. 37.

Bocchi. [illegible] ordering him to make the following speech: "You are men [illegible] "city and of a corrupt religion; you have no "temple to worship God in, and you assemble "no where to perform acts of piety according "to your duty. You neither observe the com-"mandments of God, nor the counsels of the "prophets; and when any one is about to call "others to prayer, you usually put him to death. "The names of Seid and Cherif are profaned "by you, and you are unworthy of the honor "of being descended from the great Mahomet."

As soon as the son of Seid Kemaleddin was set out, Timur order'd that the water in all the aqueducts, cisterns, and other vessels which were in Aleppo, should be spilt; which being done, the army began to shout, and to utter cries. And it was [illegible] the [illegible] the [illegible] the [illegible]. This was tedious work; for they cou'd advance but one league a day, and were oblig'd to encamp in moorish ground upon fascines. Thus at length this country, which was so full of trees that the sun cou'd scarce penetrate it, became like a large plain, after the army had cut 'em down. On the twenty-sixth of Zilcade 794, the armies of both partys join'd, and there were skirmishes, in which the blood flow'd on all sides. Hadji Coja did surprising actions, but he was unfortunately slain, being willing to sacrifice his life to his honor, while he imagin'd that a warrior, whose reputation is famous among posterity, never dies. As he was the son of Cheik Bekadir, his loss was regretted not only for his valor, but because of his birth. Three days after this battel of the scouts, wherein neither party gained the

Septemb. 21. 1392.

the advantage, the Seid Kemaleddin Deraz and Chaqan Moulana Anadeddin [illegible] indeed themselves at the feet of Timur, and implore his clemency. They der[illegible] [illegible] brought him to pardon [illegible]; which Timur granted, on condition that the Cheriffs, who commanded in all their quarters, shou'd send him part of the goods of the inhabitants, and one of each of their children in hostage, so that he might be assur'd of their fidelity. He told 'em, that if the Cheriffs wou'd exactly execute this order, they might flatter themselves, and come before him with confidence, since he had given his word for their safety.

The Cheriffs return'd home, and declar'd the will of Timur to their brethren: but their ill fortune deprive'd 'em of their reason; for imagining themselves able to make a defence, they were so far from hearkning to his proposals, that they caus'd the kettledrums to be beat, and [illegible] to be declar'd. Timur, on advice of [illegible] Cheriffs, sent Piri Pacha, Ar[illegible] [illegible] the bottle of the Olimus, and the fingers of artificial fire, that they might get possession of the enemy's tents, and attack Mahmafar. They fulfill'd their instructions, and were so successful, that they surprin'd the enemy's vessels, and cut off horses tails on sticks instead of standards. They distributed all their soldiers into [illegible], whom they brought by squadrons to the foot of the walls at the sound of kettledrums and [illegible]; their colors being display'd. The soldiers with their cuirasses on, and sword in hand, made the great cry to begin the attack, and besiege Mahmafar in form. They cast a great number of arrows, with pitch

and

Book III. [illegible] fire, from [illegible] and thoſe [illegible] that it is ſaid that [illegible] was become a ſea of fire. The [illegible] vigorous, that thoſe who guarded the [illegible] were oblig'd to fly into the place to ſave their lives; while ours at the ſame time ſcal'd the walls. The ſuburbs of Zilhadge[a] Timur took by aſſault, and approach'd the place, which put the enemy in conſternation. They held a council on what they had to do; and perceiving they would be at laſt oblig'd to ſurrender, conſidering their advantages, Timur's men had elated their gain'd, they reſolv'd to implore his clemency, before they were reduc'd to too great extremity. They came out of the place in company, and caſting themſelves at the feet of the generous Timur, implor'd his protection, and entirely truſted all their affairs in his hands, inviting him to ſave their lives.

Nov. 25. 1392.

[illegible] though they were able to have held out a long time, and to have haraſs'd his troops; and moreover, that they had acted thus, becauſe they knew they had to do with the moſt generous prince in the univerſe. Timur highly reprimanded 'em for their errors in religion, for they were Chiites[b], and threaten'd to hang 'em all if they ſhould not profeſs the orthodox tenents of the Mahometans; but he was at length more moderate, out of their nobleneſs, and the honour they had to deſcend from Mahomet, whom he regarded as their ſeal and the greateſt of the prophets. He told 'em that this conſideration, gain'd with the moſt

[a] A ſect of Perſians at preſent.
[b] A ſect of the Ottomans and the Moguls of India.

duction

dition of the place and their submission, appeas'd his wrath and [illegible] change his resolution. After [illegible] civilly, and even made [illegible] he continu'd to [illegible] sect, instruct [illegible] himself in the [illegible] maxims [illegible] religion of the Sunnis, and errors of their Chiais; he prais'd the professors and [illegible] of the law of the former, and earnestly invited the Cherifs to be instructed, that they knowing which law is agreeable to God, those might remain [illegible] in their consciences. After having [illegible] them, he sent 'em to [illegible] with orders to guard that place [illegible]

Timur staid some days at Mahanasar, to give orders for the carrying away the great riches, which were brought thither from all parts; he fill'd the barks with 'em, and generously distributed 'em among the Emirs and soldiers, who had signaliz'd themselves on this occasion. After [illegible] clear'd this place, they [illegible] a large heap of [illegible] the meanwhile advice was brought to the conqueror from all parts, that there were in this country a great number of men of an erroneous opinion, call'd Fedais, whom the Europeans term Assassins. Whereupon he order'd that all those who were of the race of Mahomet [illegible] separated from these men, and be [illegible] them; and that then they shou'd put to [illegible] all who were of this sect; which was immediately done, and the country freed from the disorders those assassins had caus'd there. Whenever these fellows found a stranger, or any one else, with a paper or book in his possession, whether he were a lawyer, philosopher, or a man

Clip and change his resolution.

Slaughter of the assassins.

Book III. man of learning, they believed it lawful to put him to death. Cheik Ali Behadur had a great hand in the destruction of these wretches, to revenge the death of Hubbi Coja his son. Kehender Cheiki was also resolv'd to revenge that of his father Efrassiab, and other relations slain by the Dervises, the disciples of Seid Caemmeddin. They invested Amol, that no one might escape their wrath, and made the most terrible massacre in that city ever mention'd in history. Timur caus'd the Seid Kemaleddin and his son to be put in a [illegible] and carry'd to Carazem, and the Saide Mountana and Ali dalla, with their sons, and several other men, were carry'd to Samarcand, and thence to Tachkent.

Terrible massacre in Amol.

Timur sends a letter to Samarcand.

THE province of Mazendran being entirely brought under subjection, Timur sent to Samarcand the news of the taking of Sari, Amol, and Mahanafar, with their dependencys: he sent for the Mirza Charoc his son, and the Mirzas Calil and Rustem his grandsons, as well as the Sultan Hussein, grandson of the Emir Moussa, and son of Timur's daughter: as also the princess Beghisi Sultan, daughter of the Mirza Miranscha, and the empresses Serai Mulc Canum, Tenmaa Aga, and others. In the month of Muharrem 795. he caus'd a very fine palace to be built in a place nam'd Chalman, in the neighbourhood of Jorjiana. He gave the government of Sari to Gemchid Ca-

December 1392.

ren, native of Cain in Corasan; and that of Chapak Amola to Eskender Cha[illegible], from whom the Cherifs had taken it, [illegible] having traiterously slain his father [illegible], as they had also serv'd him [illegible] not fled for refuge to Timur's [illegible], where he staid a long time. On the [illegible] of Muharrem the emperor lodg'd in the palace which he had built at Chasman. He sent out Tavarchis to cause all the troops which were dispers'd to return to the camp. He had advice that his letter got safe to Samarcand, with the riches and rarities of Mazendran; and that on the [illegible] of Zilhadge, they [illegible] with [illegible] rejoicings, and beautify'd the city, in token of joy for this conquest. The person who brought this news had several presents made him; and much alms were given away to the poor.

Decem. 17. 1392.

Nov. 15. 1392.

Serai Mulc Canum, Touman Aga, and the other ladys, with the emperor's children, departed from Samarcand on the twenty-fourth of [illegible] and the first night at Tutuc [7]. [illegible] great rains and snow, [illegible] by reason of a tempest which rose from the Caspian Sea. This bad weather did not hinder the ladys and princes coming to Chadrman, where they lodg'd in the Caravansera's. On the 26th they came to Damas, a famous hospital, founded by Timur for the relief of the poor; where they staid [illegible] three days till the storm was over: then they departed, and in three days arriv'd at Carchi, where they met a courier from Timur, who sent orders that they shou'd leave their baggage behind, and make haste themselves. But as the

[7] A village five leagues from Samarcand.

Mirza

Book III. Mirza Charoc excus'd himself from making so much haste by reason of a distemper in his eyes, the others came but slowly, that he might not be left alone. They cross'd the Gihon at Amouye on the sixteenth of Muharrem 794 and encamp'd on the other side: from whence they march'd day and night till they came to Macan, where the distemper in Mirza Charoc's eyes abated. Serai Mulc Canum sent to Timur an account of the health of the princes his children, and of all that had happen'd since their departure from Samarcand. The messenger was no sooner set out, than they departed and came for the village of Dehi Hendouan, where they left their baggage to make the more haste. They then march'd day and night, and in thirteen days arriv'd at Ghilzoun [a], where they paid their respects to Timur. He [illegible] salutat'd his sons, the [illegible] princes and princesses make their compliments, and offer'd presents to him, as usual; then they went with him to Chasman, where they found all necessary preparations for their diversion; and the great lords of the court had also furnished and other things to adorn their apartments, which render'd the joy compleat.

Decem. 13. 1392.

[a] A town near Jorjiana in Corassana.

CHAP.

Chapter.

CHAPTER [illegible]

Timur makes [illegible] king-[illegible] of Fars and Irac.

TIMUR's courage not permitting him to [illegible] pass all his life in pleasure, at the end of winter, the sun being in Capricorn, he prepar'd to continue his conquests. He fixed the campain of that year for the kingdoms of Fars and Irac: the [illegible] generals, the officers and soldiers [illegible] their courage; and the emperor [illegible] the Mirza Mohemmet Sultan at the head of the vanguard, with his brother the prince [illegible] Mehemet, accompany'd by the Cheik Ali Behader and other Emirs. Then he chose three men out of each ten, who compos'd a separate body, at the head of which he departed from Mazendran the twenty-fourth of Sefer 795, Jan. 20. 1393. [illegible] the Emirs Yadghiar Berlas, Gehancha Be- [illegible] and [illegible] follow him [illegible] Among the [illegible], Sarai Mulc Canum, and Touman Aga, staid with the baggage; and Tchulpan Mulc Aga, Baro Sultan Aga, and Neghiar Aga, had the honor to accompany Timur. He gave the command of another vanguard to Mirza Charoc, and went himself to Yeilac Veli[a]; and after having furnish'd victuals for the army at Damgan[b], Semnan[c], and Rei Chehriar[d], he march'd

[a] A town in a mountain, where the Emir Veli prince of Mazendran pass'd the summer; long. 89. lat. 36. 30.

[b] A town of Comes, frontier of Tabarestan, long. 89. lat. 36. 20.

[c] A town of Comes, frontier of Irac Agemi, long. 88. lat. 36.

[d] A town of Irac Agemi, long. 86. lat. 35. 30.

* further.

Book III. further. The Mirzas Mehemet Sultan and Pir Mehemet at their arrival at [illegible] gave battel to Chahsouar, governor of it; whom Coja Cheik attack'd, took prisoner thó he was arm'd, and brought to the two princes, who sent him to Timur. From thence they went to Sultania [1], the governor of which Actcheghi was dead, and Aanescha his intendant had taken the government on him in his stead. This coward fled at their approach. The two Mirzas staid there eight days; furnish'd the troops with victuals; and having put a good garison in the place, march'd towards Bagdad. When they had enter'd Courdistan, there arriv'd a messenger from Timur, who brought orders for 'em to pass by Geh Chamal [2]. Upon which they immediately returnd, and went to take the castle of Sancar [3], the victuals and ammunition of which they brought away, [illegible] the country [illegible]

[illegible]

At their departure there came a second messenger who brought an order for 'em to reduce all the inhabitants of Courdistan; and to free the country from these robbers. For which reason they went to Tchebtchal [4], and thence to the mountain of Bistoun [5], where Seyindgi Behader, Temour Coja son of Acbougha, and Kobacher Behader went from the main body into

---

[1] A town of Irac Agemi, frontier of Ghilan, long. 85. lat. 37.

[2] A town of Irac Agemi, frontier of Azerbijana, long. 84. 20. lat. 36. 30.

[3] A town between Irac and Courdistan, long. 82. 40. lat. 36.

[4] On the top of a mountain, frontier of Azerbijana and Courdistan, long. 81. lat. 36. 50.

[5] Long. 77. 35. lat. 37. [illegible] Long. 75. lat. 37.

the

the country of the Courdes. The Mirzas March'd towards Derbend Tachi Catun*, whither one of the chief men of the country, in hopes of obtaining the government of it, fled. He told them no one knew the road so well as he, and if they pleas'd, he wou'd be their guide. The Mirza Mehemet kindly receiv'd him, gave him a belt, a vest, and some gold; and order'd the Cheik Ali Behader to go as a Mangalai, with this man for a guide. Ibrahim Cha, prince of these places, handsomly receiv'd the Cheik Ali, submitted, and sent his son Sultancha to the Mirzas with Arabian horses, and other curious presents, consisting of nine pieces of each sort. Sultancha came to the princes, kiss'd the carpet, and made presents from their father. The Mirza Mehemet Sultan was content with these submissions of the Courde prince, and sent an express for the Cheik Ali to come back. He accordingly began his march; but being upon the road, his guide, frustrated of his hopes by the peace with Ibrahim Cha, traitorously stuck him with a knife, he happening, of which he fell dead upon the spot. This brave man, who had signaliz'd his courage in twenty famous battels, cou'd not save himself from this coward, who was taken by Cheik Ali's men, and immediately put to death with the most cruel torments, and afterwards burnt.

* A defile of mountains near Eclat in Courdistan.

CHAP. XXII.

Timur marches to the kingdoms of Loreſtan and Coureſtan.

TIMUR, being at Chehriar, choſe a number of brave men, and left the Mirza Mirancha with the reſt of the army in that place, ordering him to wait the baggage which ſhou'd come from Eſterabad; and at the head of this ſelect body he march'd to Ouroudgerd [3]. The Mirza Omar Cheik, at the head of the left wing, march'd by Kiochki Toupan [4] and Ave [5], to beſiege the fortreſs of Kiou [6]; which he took after a ſhort defence, and put the governor Mehemet Comi in chains. The next day he went to Mauvan [7], the governor of which place, Mehemet Perahhabi, who commanded there for Mehemet Comi, came to him, and ſaluted him. From thence he march'd to Kerheroud [8]. Esfendiar the governor, not imagining himſelf ſtrong enough to make a defence, came out of it, was ſeiz'd and carry'd to the Mirza, who ſent him to the emperor with Mehemet Comi.

Feb. 26. 1393. Timur arriv'd at Ouroudgerd the firſt of Rabiulakher 795; to which place the Mirza Omar

[3] A town eighteen leagues from Hamadan in the province of Couheſtan in Irac Agemi, long. 84. 40. lat. 34. 25.

[4] A hill between Rei and Ave.

[5] A town of Couheſtan between Rei and Hamadan, long. 85. lat. 35. 50.

[6] On a mountain, long. 84. lat. 36.

[7] A town of Couheſtan, near Hamadan, long. 84. lat. 35. 30.

[8] A town of Couheſtan, long. 84. 10. lat. 35.

Cheik

Cheik came, after he had pass'd by Turvan [2]: and with Timur's permission he return'd to the right wing of the army. Timur gave the command of the militia of Ouroudgerd to Seifeddin; and leaving Cheik Mircail with the government of Nehavend [3], three days after he arriv'd at Corram Abad [4], the governor of which, Malek Azzeddin, not daring to defend himself, fled. Timur staid one night in these quarters, left troops to besiege the place, and order'd the Mirza Omar Cheik to pursue Malek. Then he sent partys of horse into all the quarters of the kingdom of Lorestan, to exterminate the robbers, and put a stop to the disorders they committed. Timur departed from Corram Abad to Tostar [5]; and when he was almost at the end of his day's march, he plac'd some brave men in ambuscade near the high-ways, who slew the Lores robbers as they went into their cottages from the mountains. Timur arriv'd in eleven days at the bridge of the river Abzal [6]. The Mirza Omar Cheik diligently pursu'd Malek

Chap. 4.

[2] A town of Couhestan, long. 84. 40. lat. 35.

[3] Otherwise call'd Nouhavend, a town of Couhestan, built by Noah, on a mountain fourteen leagues south from Hamadan, near Ouroudgerd; long. 83. 50. lat. 34. 10. Here was a famous battel between the Mahometans, commanded by the Calif Omar, son of Elcattab, and the king of Persia, Yez Degerd, who was vanquish'd, and lost his kingdom, A. D. 638.

[4] A fortress of Lorestan near the town of Lor, long. 84. lat. 32. 40. the residence of the prince of Lorestan.

[5] Capital of Courestan, between the kingdom of Fars and the Persian gulf, towards Basra and Vaset; long. 84. 30. lat. 31. 30. It is accounted the antientest city in the world.

[6] A river which runs thro Courestan by Tostar, and falls into the Persian gulph at Husn Mehdi. Sapor king of Persia caus'd an aquæduct to be built from one of its branches a mile long, which conveys water to the city of Tostar; it is the most remarkable and curious machine extant.

Book III. Azeddin as far as the castle of Minkere [1]; but he could hear nothing of him: he reduc'd all the places and inhabitants in those mountains [2], and afterwards join'd the imperial camp at the bridge of Abzal. The Mirza Miran Chah, who conducted the baggage and main body of the army, march'd with a troop of horse to the gates of Cachan [3]. Melouk Serbedal (governor of it for Chah Mansour king of Persia, to whom he fled before from Corassana, for fear of being seiz'd by the soldiers of this Mirza) had no sooner heard of his arrival than he sent an express out of the town to beg quarter; which was granted, and a vest sent him. Then Melouk came out, and put himself under the protection of the Mirza, who return'd to join the baggage. Timur sent prince Omar Cheik to the right with a body of the army; when he came to Haviza, no one resisted him, and [illegible] it for Chah Mansour, and to [illegible] the [illegible]. The Mirza fortify'd, and plac'd a garrison in Haviza. Timur departed from the Abzal on the sixteenth night of his march; at ten a clock in the morning he cross'd the bridge, and went to a town on the other side. This bridge is very famous, and of curious structure; it is said to have been built by Sapor Zulectaf; has twenty eight lofty magnificent arches, each of which has a lesser, which make in all fifty six. It is built of stone and brick, with great beauty and strength; so that it has always attracted the eyes of the curious,

Description of the bridge on the river Abzal.

[1] Towards Vaset upon the Tigris. [2] On the banks of the river Chat, which joins the Tigris and Euphrates at Gouma.

[3] A town of Couhestan, where porcelane is dug, with which the walls and houses of Persia are cover'd, three days journey from Ispahan; long. 86. lat. 34.

[4] Corruptly so call'd from Ahouaz, a town of Couhestan on the river Abzal, long. 85. lat. 31.

rious, and brought to their remembrance the Chaneza-king who built it.

Whilst Timur staid at Der Foul, a town at the foot of the stone bridge, Chamseddin the governor of it presented him with twenty loads of silver; and the commissarys afterwards carry'd away the very horses and mules. Timur departed for Tostar at noon, and in his way staid upon a hill, where he caus'd the horses to be put to grass: then marching all night he came the next morning in the sight of Tostar, where he encamp'd on the bank of the river Tchehar Donke. Ali Coutual and Estendiar Nami, governors of Tostar for Chah Manfour, fled to Chuzz at the report of Timur's approach. But the chief men and Cherifs of Tostar went out of the town at his arrival, crois'd the river, and came to the door of his tent to make their submission, and assure him of their obedience. In the mean while the Emirs and soldiers pillage'd all the inhabitants of the neighbouring country, and brought to the camp a great number of horses and mules, which Timur distributed among the Cherifs. Thus the chiefs lost all their effects by the emperor's wrath, and his friends obtain'd pardon by his clemency.

On the 20th of Zilhadge, Timur crois'd the river of Tchehar Donke, and went into a forest of palms without the city. The Mirzas, Mehemet Sultan and Pir Mehemet, also departed from Derbend Tachicatun, and after having pass'd several rivers and mountains in Courdistan and Lorestan, exterminated the robbers there, and reduc'd the inhabitants to obedience, they arriv'd here, where they had the honor to salute the emperor. All the troops also join'd the imperial camp at this place. March 18.

CHAP. XXIII.

An account of the motions of the princes of Fars, or of Persia and Irac, on which the present affairs depend.

WE mention'd in the second book, that Timur, after a campain of three years, returning from Persia to Samarcand, pass'd by Chiraz, because the princes of the family of Muzaffer became obedient to him, and several of them had listed themselves in his service; upon which he then gave the government of Chiraz to Chah Yahia, head of that family, and confirm'd him in that of Yezd, which he before possess'd. He [illegible] of Chah Yahia; that of Kirman to Sultan Ahmed, brother of Chah Chuja, with permission to return to his own country; that of Seirjan to Sultan Abou Ishac, son of Avis, son of Chah Chuja: and because the Pehlevan, Muhaddeb Corasani, one of the Emirs of Chah Chuja, (who had been long time governor of Abrecouh for this prince, and after his death for his son, the Sulton Zein Elabeddin) had been faithful to his trust in this government, Timur confirm'd it to him. Chah Mansour, younger brother of Chah Yahiah, was then governor of Tostar, whither the Sultan Zein Elabeddin was retir'd, for fear of our army; nevertheless Chah Mansour caus'd him to be arrested and put in irons. By which means, from the year 790, when Timur march'd from Persia to Touran, to the year 795, when he return'd from Mazendran to Persia, there

An. Dom. 1388.
An. Dom. 1393.

were

were great disorders among the princes of the house of Muzaffer. At length Zein Elabeddin, prisoner in the castle of Kerikerd four leagues from Toftar, by the assistance of Ahmet Chah Turmetachi and Mahmout his relation, escap'd with them to Malek Azeddin Kerit at Chaudgerd, who conducted him to Ispahan. And as the officers of this city were in the interest of Zein Elabeddin, the Sultan Mehemet retir'd into the fortress, and a month after went out with the consent of Mehemet Courtchi, who went with him to Yezd; and by this means Zein Elabeddin became master of Ispahan. Then Chah Mansour departed from Toftar at the head of an army, and came to the gates of Chiraz, where the Cherifs, back'd by their disciples, open'd to him the gate of Salem. Chah Yahia sat in the Divan of Chah Chuja, till the arrival of Chah Mansour: then he took horse, went out of the town by the gate of Sadet, and took the road of Yezd. Chah Mansour took his seat in the Divan, and would not pursue his brother; but was [illegible] himself on the [illegible], of which [illegible] is capital. At length he rais'd a powerful army, with which he seiz'd on the castles of Bid, Sermac and Meroufer, and march'd to the town of Abrecouh, commanded by the Pehlevan Murhaddeb: tho he did not besiege it, but return'd to Chiraz. The Sultan Zein Elabeddin also rais'd an army at Ispahan, imagining that the Emirs of Chah Mansour won'd come over to his side, because most of 'em had rais'd themselves in his father's court. He march'd to Chiraz with his small army; while Chah Mansour advanc'd with his to give him battel. They met near the fortress of Estacar, at the foot of the new bridge; and Zein Elabeddin's expectations

Chap. 14.

Book III. were not accomplish'd. Chah Mansour's soldiers swam over the water, and attack'd him so briskly, that the Sultan's men being mostly kill'd or routed, he was constrain'd to fly to Isphahan. The Pehlevan Muhaddeb, fearing lest Chah Mansour shou'd get possession of the whole kingdom, contracted a strict alliance with Chah Yahia, the latter of whom being by chance on the mountains of Yezd, a day's journey from Abrecouh, the Pehlevan went to him, offer'd his service, and made a treaty with him, which they both solemnly swore to. The Pehlevan at length invited him to come to Abrecouh, to which the prince consented; he conducted him into the town, and prepa'd lodgings for him in a [illegible] palace, which he had built and adorn'd for his own use. The [illegible] of Chah Yahia, seeing their prince master of the [illegible] of Abrecouh, [illegible] the Pehlevan Muhaddeb, loaded him with chains, and sent him to the castle of Melous on the frontiers of Yezd, where he was put to death by the order of Chah Yahia, who plac'd a strong garison in Abrecouh under the Emir Mehemet [illegible] and return'd to Yezd. On advice of [illegible] Mansour departed from Ehiran [illegible] of a formidable army to besiege Abrecouh, the governor of which having fortify'd himself in the castle, he took the town, and having plac'd troops in garison, march'd to Yezd, to attack Chah Yahia: but the latter being informed of his march, sent an express to Mehemet Ganzechi, ordering him to surrender the place to Chah Mansour, on condition he shou'd now bring his army to Yezd. Chah Mansour having learnt this circumstance from the courier whom he met, im-

immediately return'd to Abrecouh, the castle of which was delivered him without opposition. He plac'd a good garison in the town as well as in the castle, and took the road to Ispahan, ravaging town and grain to be plundered; and after such mischief done, he return'd to Chiraz. The following year he march'd thither again at the head of an army, and return'd after having committed the like disorders. Zein Elabeddin seeing himself so oppress'd by this powerful prince, sought for protection from the princes his relations. The Sultan Ahmed prince of Kirman, and the Sultan Abou Ishac of Seirjan, came with all their troops to the head of their troops, which were well equip'd. Chah Yahia made some fair promises, which he did not keep; for he came out of the town of Yezd, but did not join the princes. Several other lords of the house of Muzaffer join'd in defence of Zein Elabeddin, march'd towards Chiraz in the beginning of the spring, pillag'd several countrys, especially that of [illegible] where they turn'd towards [illegible] Chah Mansour [illegible] gave us battel in the [illegible] of Pesz, in a village nam'd Jurour. This prince, whose name signifys victorious, was in effect so; for he routed the confederate princes so that every one retreated to his own country.

In the following spring Chah Mansour return'd against Ispahan; as soon as he was encamp'd without the city, he order'd Coja Azaddin [illegible] to him, whom this prince * of [illegible] in all appearance, entertain'd at Ispahan to carry on his intrigues. He came out of

* Chah Mansour.

* A town between Ispahan and Abrecouh.

the

Book III. the city; and, what is most surprizing, the inhabitants, as soon as he was got to the tent of Chah Mansour, deliver'd up the place. The Sultan Zein Elabeddin fled; but he was taken near Rei between Veramin and Cholrian by Mousa Choucar, who sent him to Chah Mansour; who, with unparallel'd cruelty put out this prince's eyes with a hot iron, not thinking of the threatnings of God, which are, *That he will never pity them who shew no pity to others*. Chah Mansour, seeing himself master of Ispahan, march'd twice to the gates of Yezd: the second time his mother, who was also Chah Yahia's, came out of the town, to endeavor to make peace betwixt 'em; and thus exhorted her son: "Behold your eldest brother, who is contented to live with his two children in the town of Yezd, and to leave you [illegible] of Fars and Irac! If [illegible] "[illegible] proach." These speeches made him return from before Yezd to Chiraz.

Besides these there were several motions for the last four or five years between the princes of the family of Muzaffer, who naturally delighted to make war on each other, which put the empire of Iran in great disorder. The kingdom of Persia was but one, and yet ten kings pretended to it, who were, as one may say, so many butchers to destroy the people and country. It being too long to give a detail of their history, we will only mention what belongs to our subject. When Timur encamp'd without the town of Toftar, the towns of Chiraz, Ispahan and Abrecouh, were in the hands of Chah Mansour, who resided at Chiraz; the town of Yezd was possess'd by Chah Yahia, who liv'd there with his two sons; the kingdom of Kir-

man

man was govern'd by Sultan Ahmed; and the Sultan Abou Ishac commanded in Seirjan. All these princes were of the family of Mozaffer.

Chap. XXIV.

CHAP. XXIV.

Timur marches to Chiraz against Chah Mansour.

AFTER the Mirzas Mehemet Sultan and Pir Mehemet were return'd in triumph from Derbend Tachi Cazan, to the imperial camp within Toftar, Timur sent Sevindgic Behader to Havizza to summon the Mirza Omar Chaik to court; and having made himself master of Toftar, he gave the government of it to Coja Masoud Sebzuari, to maintain there the troops of Sebznar which he commanded. At length Timur left the army, and on the 25th of Rabyulakher 795, which answers to the year of the Hegira, march'd with diligence towards Chiraz, and [illegible] also to the Mirzas [illegible] to inform him that the emperor order'd him to follow him to Chiraz at the head of the baggage and main-body. The 27th of Rabyulakher 795, Timur cross'd the river Doudanke [a], and two days after encamp'd on the bank of that of Chouroukan Kende [b]. The 1st of Jumazinulevel he went to encamp at Ram Hermez [c], where Atabec Pir Mehemet, prince of the upper Loreftan, came to kiss the foot of his throne, and offer him presents; to which honor he was admitted by the mediation of the great Emirs, and being well receiv'd by the

April 17. 1393.

April 22.

[a] Rivers in Coureftan, which fall into the Abzal.
[b] A town of Coureftan, long. 86. lat. 31. 25.

Book III. emperor, he follow'd his better. Timur took horse about noon, pass'd the river of Ram Heerhez [a], and encamp'd on the other side. The 22d of Jumaziulevel he encamp'd on the river Fei [b].
April 23. The third, after having march'd all night, he
24. went to encamp in the plain of Zohra. The
25. fourth he pass'd by Kerdestan [c], cross'd the Abargoun [d], and went to encamp at Behbehan [e].
26. The fifth he pass'd the Abchirin [f], and encamp'd
27. in the plain of Lachter [g]. The sixth he march'd to Kedge Havas [h], and encamp'd at the spring
28. of the river Canbidac [i]. The seventh he en-
29. camp'd at the village Joulaha. The eighth he went to Bacht [k], cross'd the Abchola [l], and
30. encamp'd at Malemir Chah. The ninth he pass'd the Cavedan [m], where he gain'd intelligence concerning the fortress of Caisaneh [n], from whence he went to stay at Nisbandan [o]. The
May 1. 10th [illegible]

[illegible] of the strongest citadels of Asia. The governor for Chah Mansour was nam'd Sadet, which signifies good fortune, tho he was an unfortunate wicked fellow. The Persians confided

---

[a] This runs thro the town, and falls into the Abzal [illegible] Ahouaz. [b] A river of Courestan which falls into the Abzal.
[c] A town of Courestan, frontier of Fars.
[d] A river which divides the kingdom of Courestan and Fars, runs by Semirém, and falls into the Abzal.
[e] A town of Fars, long. 86. 25. lat. 30. 20.
[f] A river which comes from the town of Cosuchirin.
[g] A great town of Fars. [h] A village of Fars.
[i] A river which falls into the Persian gulf near Benderic.
[k] A town of Fars dependent on Nisbandan.
[l] A river which comes from Ioudin, accounted by the Arabians one of the seven wonders of the world.
[m] A river which passes by Cazeron, and falls into the Persian gulf. [n] A town of Fars, long. 87. 10. lat. 30. 20.

in

in this place, because it was situate on the top of a very rugged mountain, where there was but one slippery [illegible] path. On the top of this mountain [illegible] beautiful smooth plain, a league long [illegible] broad. There are rivers and fountains, fruit-trees, and cultivated lands, with all sorts of beasts and birds. The princes had built there many pleasure-houses, where they had no reason to fear fires or torrents, and much less mines or assaults by battering-rams, and other machines: so that no king had ever undertaken to besiege it, believing it impregnable and inaccessible, as well because of its height and the impossibility of carrying up battering-rams, as for the hardness of the rock which could not be dug. The way which leads to the top of the mountain is made so, that in any strait three men may oppose a hundred thousand, and hinder their ascending. The inhabitants, not contented with its natural strength, had fortify'd and wall'd all the turnings [illegible] join'd with mortar. As the [illegible] for the maintenance of the inhabitants, and the corn and food had enough to feed on, no one had dreamt of starving 'em out, seeing nothing but death had any power over the inhabitants. Timur coming to the foot of this mountain, ascended in company with his most faithful captains as far as the gate of the fortress, and caus'd the great cry Souroun to be made in the troops who follow'd him. The two wings encamp'd on the top of another mountain which join'd the place. Timur's tent was pitch'd there; and he order'd his soldiers to give a general assault. The cavalry and infantry march'd up the mountain to the fort: the Mirza Mehemet Sultan atack'd it on the right side, as the Mirza Pir Me-

Book III. Mehemet did on his: the Mirza Charoc parted from the left wing, and came to the foot of the place with his men, whom he made to dismount: all the army did the same, and gave a furious assault. After having labour'd all day, these men won'd ascend the highest parts of the mountain, and give a general attack to carry the place: but night being come, every one staid in the place he was in. The next morning the princes, Emirs and soldiers began the assault at the noise of drums, kettle-drums and trumpets. The enemy shot from the place a great number of arrows and stones. Our brave captains sacrific'd their lives in Timur's service: every one took a pick-ax in his hand to break the rock, as formerly Ferhad [1] did. Acbouga, an officer of the Cheik Mehemet Aicourmur, by chance mounted a place unseen; when he was there, he prais'd God and the prophet, crying out, Timur is victorious, and his enemy are confounded. He acted the part of a valiant man upon this steep rock; for covering himself with his buckler, he fell upon the besieg'd, who were so surpriz'd at being attack'd in a place they thought no one dar'd ascend, that they left off fighting. The soldiers of the Mirza Mehemet Sultan went up the way which leads to the gate of the fortress, where displaying their ensigns, and fixing their horse-tails, they cry'd out, *Victory!* The others mounted the rock which Acbouga had shewn, and some went up by other ways: so that the place was taken, and the garison precipitated from the top of the mountain.

---

[1] A famous sculptor in the reign of Cosroes king of Persia.

Me-

Mehemet Azad seiz'd on the governor Sadet, Chapter and brought him to Timur, who order'd that in his blood they shou'd revenge those who had lost their lives in this assault. The sword is the instrument of vengeance to those who forget themselves; and when God chuses any one to command, we must submit to him without resistance. The Sultan Zein Elabeddin, whom Chah Mansour had blinded and kept prisoner in this place, was brought to Timur, who receiv'd him kindly, gave him a vest, and comforted him, promising to revenge him on Chah Mansour, whom he wou'd punish for his injustice and cruelty. The emperor order'd all the women, whom the soldiers had taken, to be releas'd; and leaving Malek Mehemed Aoubehi governor there, he return'd. The 11th of Jumaziulevel, he went to encamp at Neubendgian: He gave Acbouga, who first mounted the rock of Calaasefid, so much silver-mony, stuffs, tents, women-slaves, horses, camels, mules and other things, that this officer, who the day before was master but of one horse, discoursing with this disorder, did not know whether what he saw was a dream or reality. The next morning Timur pass'd by the defile of Bouan, and encamp'd at Tirmerdan *; from whence he departed on the 13th, and encamp'd at Jaragian *; on the 14th he arriv'd at Jouyem *. On the road he inform'd himself concerning Chah Mansour; who, as every one told him, had fled. May 2.

* Towns of Fars between Chiraz and Neubendgian.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXV.

Battel between Timur and Chah Mansour. The death of the latter.

AS Timur was not troubled at the affair of Chah Mansour, he the same day divided his army into two bodys, one of which was led by himself, and the other by Mirza Mehemet Sultan: he gave the vanguard of his own body to Mirza Pir Mehemet Gehanghir, and the rear to Coja Asbouga. The troops of Mehemet Sultan were on the right, whose vanguard was commanded by Cheik Temour Behader. The Mirza Charoc had no troops, for his [illegible] attended on Timur. He left [illegible] Emir Osman Abas, and himself at the head of the army took the road to Chiraz. The Emir Osman had not gone far, before he perceiv'd a body of the scouts of Chah Mansour, who were at the end of the gardens without the town, marching forwards: he hid himself in a hollow ground till they had pass'd him; and then he sally'd out of his ambuscade with Sainte Maure, Acous, Temoue, Mouelli, Cara Mehemet, and Behram Yesouri. The brave Behram overtook 'em first sword in hand, and cut one of the horses bridles: the man fell, and not being able to get away, Behram put him on his own horse behind, and brought him to Timur, who question'd him concerning Chah Mansour, and the number of his soldiers; and then continu'd his road. When he had gone about a league, he perceiv'd in the fields without the town three or four thousand horse,

horse, arm'd with coats of mail, helmets, and breast-plates of leather and with iron; their horses cover'd with a kind of cuirasses made of thick silk, and their [illegible] shining. These men being inur'd to [illegible] and fatigue, and skilful at the bow, Chah Mansour advanc'd at their head like a furious lion, and in opposition to his reason, which should have preserv'd in his mind a suitable idea of the person he had to do with, as one whose arm had cast down all his enemys, on a friday at the hour of prayer he attack'd our main body compos'd of thirty thousand Turks, the most dextrous men of their time, in a place nam'd Pahak; he overthrew their squadrons, broke their ranks, made his way into the midst, and gain'd behind our army posts of the utmost consequence: then he return'd furious as a dragon to the fight, seeming resolv'd to lose his life. Timur stope short with some of his favorites, to consider the extreme vigor, or rather rashness, of this prince, who dar'd attack him in person. Timur then came directly against him, with intent to run him with his lance to oppose him; but he could not find it, because Kamal Tchodra, the keeper of it, had been so briskly attack'd, that he fled and carry'd away the lance. Timur, who had only fourteen or fifteen persons with him, did not stir out of his place till Chah Mansour came up to him. This rash person struck the emperor's helmet twice with his scymitar; but the blows did no harm, for they glanc'd along his arms: he kept firm as a rock and did not change his posture. Adel Aghan held a buckler over Timur's head, and Coliar Tesfool advanc'd before him: he did several great actions, and was wounded in his hand with a sword.

Book III. Then Mamoutcha, Tavakul Beg[illegible]hi, Amancha, and Mehemet Azad, enter'd into the middle of the enemy's army, and gave extraordinary proofs of their courage and strength. Chah Mansour, who had been repuls'd from before the emperor, fell upon the infantry of the main body, while Mirza Mehemet Sultan so briskly attack'd the right wing of the Persian army, that it gave way. Mobacher and the other Emirs closely purs'd them, and made a terrible slaughter. The Mirza Pir Mehemet Cerbanghan bravely defeated their left wing, killing some, and obliging the others to fly. The Mirza Charoc, who fought near Timur like a lion, rally'd a whole batallion of soldiers who fled; and Gerlaghan, Beiram Soufi, sons of Cayafeddin Tercan, and Coja Kassin behav'd themselves courageously in his presence, and with their arrows made the enemy give way. [illegible] call'd the fa[illegible] that of Cheik Noureddin, son of Sarbouga, nam'd Aimulc; and that of Boi, which was the imperial regiment call'd Coutchin, which were in the main-body, having been routed by Mansour, rally'd, and displaying their colors, form'd themselves into a compleat battalion. The three regiments of Cheik Aslam, Aslam Coutchin, and Behramdad, would not stir from their post, where they bravely fought. At length the Mirza Charoc, tho' but seventeen years old, behav'd himself with so much valour and conduct, that he hem'd in Chah Mansour, cut off his head, and cast it at the feet of the emperor his father, congratulating him on the victory: "May the heads, said he, of all your "enemys be thus laid at your feet, as that of "the proud Mansour is." This lucky accident dif-

Charoc cuts off Chah Mansour's head.

discouraging the Persian soldiers, who till that time had fought well. These leopards were turn'd into deers, for they who were not kill'd fled. Timur, elated at this great victory, embrac'd the princes his sons and the Nevians, and fell on his knees with 'em to return thanks to God for the victory. At length the Emirs came to him, and having congratulated him, they also fell on their knees: and as they presented him the gold cup, according to the custom of the Moguls, they saw on a sudden come behind 'em a body of the enemys rang'd in order of battel and well equipp'd, who advanc'd to attack 'em. Timur and the Mirza Charoc, with the lords, march'd against 'em; they made the great cry, and rowly'd the enemy with so much vigor, that they immediately gave way and were routed. The fugitives gain'd the mountain of Calatsurc, that is, the red castle; while some Emirs pursu'd 'em, who cut 'em to pieces. Timur pass'd the night at the village of Dinou Can; and the next day this conqueror, like Menoutcher[1], when he entered victorious into Ecbatan, anciently the capital of Persia, began his successes, make his entry in triumph, and in warlike habit, into the famous city of Chiraz, the present capital of that kingdom. He order'd his standard to be display'd on the gate of Selm[2], where he lodg'd, while the army encamp'd in the out-parts of the town. Eight gates were shut up, while only that of Selm was kept open. Then many chief lords of the court enter'd the city, took down the names of the magistrates and heads of the quarters, according to which they collected the treasures, riches, furniture, stuffs, horses and mules of Ghiak Mansour, his courtiers, and fa-

[1] Son of Feridon, one of the first kings of Persia.
[2] So call'd from one of the sons of Feridon.

Book III. mily; which they convey'd out of the city, and presented to Timur, who liberally distributed em among the Emirs. The inhabitants were pardon'd for having their lives preserv'd, and the tax was regularly paid. Timur sent the Mirza Mehemet Sultan to Ispahan, with orders to fix a garison there, and to receive a tribute for saving the lives of the inhabitants. The Debirs had orders to prepare the letters of conquests, to send to Samarcand and other capitals of the kingdoms of the empire of Timur. The Mirza Omar Cheik, who, according to the orders given him, staid behind with the baggage, pillag'd all the rebels he cou'd meet, as well the remains of Chah Mansour's army, as the robbers of Loristan, the Chouls [3], and the Courdes. When he had pass'd by Neubendgian, and was come to Cazeron [4], he receiv'd orders to stay there, and place garisons in all those countries, and make regulations according [illegible] executed with [illegible] days after he had orders to come to court, at Chiraz, where he had the honor to salute the emperor.

The princes of the family of Muzaffer, having no place to retire to, where Timur cou'd not come at 'em, resolv'd in good earnest to submit. Chah Yahia departed from Yezd with his sons, and the Sultan Ahmed of Kirman, to come to court. They made presents to the emperor of precious stones, horses, mules, tents, pavilions, and all sorts of curiositys. The Sultan Mehdi son of Chahchuja, and Sultan Gadanfer son of Chah Mansour, were in Chiraz. Timur

[3] Inhabitants of the mountains of Malemir Chol and Cazeron.
[4] A town of Fars, long. 87. lat. 39.

with

with the princes his sons, the great Emirs and Nevians, spent a month in feasts and diversions; in which musicians plaid upon organs and harps; and red wine of Siraz was presented in gold cups by the most beautiful virgins in the city. The Sultan Abou Ishac, son of Chahchuja, also came to court from Scirjan, and made presents to Timur, who employ'd himself in regulating the kingdom of Persia, and the affairs of the people; that under the shadow of his laws they might enjoy peace, of which continual wars and tyranny had deprivd 'em: he eas'd their extraordinary taxes, as a prince of moderation and equity ought to do. He appointed governor of the kingdom of Fars, which is the heart of the empire, and the most full of citys, towns, and villages of any place in Asia, his dear son, Mirza Omar Cheik, who made a magnificent feast to thank the emperor, offer'd him presents on his knees, and assur'd him with an oath of his inviolable fidelity, and exactness in executing his orders.

CHAP. XXVI.

Timur seizes the princes of the house of Mazaffer, and disposes of their effects among his lieutenants.

THE children and successors of Mehemet Muzaffer having made themselves masters of the provinces of Persia and Irac, every one set himself up for sovereign, coin'd his own mony, and had public prayers read in his own name. These princes, notwithstanding their affinity, hated one other so much, that every one

Book III. made attempts on the life and estate of his brother, and let no occasion slip whereby he might pillage the country; and when any one gain'd advantage over another, if he gave him his life, he was sure to blind him with a hot iron: the father spar'd not the son, nor the son the father. But what was worst of all, the poor people bore the burden of these disorders, and were in a manner the tennis-ball of misfortune and misery, and groan'd under the weight of tyranny and oppression. Our conqueror applying himself to regulate the affairs of this kingdom, the Cheiks, the doctors, the Imams, and the inhabitants of Persia and Irac, presented to him petitions concerning the state of affairs, the changing of the laws and manners of the country, and the disorders into which the perversity of the Muzafferian princes had brought the [illegible] the conquest of two kingdoms in the hands of those tyrants; that under a milder government the Mussulmans might be freed from their miseries, collect their scatter'd effects, re-settle their families, and render this ruin'd once more a flourishing kingdom. In answer to these requests, Timur order'd that these princes shou'd be seiz'd and loaded with chains, and their subjects pillag'd; which was done on the twenty third of Jumaziülakher 795. The Emir Omar sent men to Kirman to bring away the treasures of the Sultan Ahmed: the Mirza Omar Cheik staid at Chiraz, to govern the kingdom of Persia, and the emperor rewarded for his commission the Emirs Birdibel, Sarbouga, Mirza Omar Muaïd, Zirec Yacou, and Sevindgic Behader, with annual commissions, and assigned some troops to the prince to maintain his authority.

June 14. 1393.

The

The emperor was accompany'd by Beiran Temour, Chah Javakni, Melic Aperdi, Doulet Coja, and other favorites; he gave the government of Kirman to Ataboc, son of Cayafeddin Berlas, the brother of Emir Tacou Berlas; that of Yezd to Tamerlin Coutchin; and that of Abreccouh to Lalam Coutchin. He sent troops to besiege the town of Seirdgian, of which Gouderz was governor for Sultan Abou Ishac, grandson of Chahchuja. The strength of this place, situate on the top of a high mountain, had inspir'd this governor with the thoughts of fortifying it, and living independent.

At this time Timur sent to Samarcand the prince Chebeli, whose eyes had been put out by Chahchuja his father, and Zein Elabeddin, who had been us'd in the same manner by Chah Mansour; and assign'd for their subsistence some of the best ground of that city, that they might spend the remainder of their lives with pleasure under the shadow of his clemency. In these [illegible] which the ambitious never [illegible] the [illegible] of learning, and the artisans of Fars [illegible], abandon'd their country, and went to dwell at Samarcand. Timur gave the government of the little kingdom of Loreftan to the Atabec Pir Ahmed, with letters patent seal'd with the seal of his red hand [1]. Thus Pir Ahmed return'd to his antient residence with near two thousand families, whom Chah Mansour had pillag'd, and constrain'd to retire to Chiraz; and this old Atabec began to govern the country of Malemir [2], as his ancestors had done before.

[1] The Mogul emperors make their hand red, and impress it on their patents as a seal.

[2] The same as Loreftan; and different from Malemir Chol.

CHAP. XXVII.

Timur marches to the kingdom of Irac Agemi, or Hircania.

June 18. 1393. TIMUR departed from Chiraz for Ispahan the twenty-seventh of Jumaziulakher 795, hunting and destroying the game, which abounds in that country, all the way. He encamp'd at Coumcha [a] after twelve days march; at which place he issu'd out that famous order, so much desir'd by the people, and so remarkable in history, that the princes of the house of Muzaffer shou'd be put to death; which was done with rigor, according to the laws of Genghiz Can, to the great satisfaction [illegible] of this kingdom. [illegible] Yezd and Kirman, were put to death by the governors of these countrys, that the people might be deliver'd from the fear of their violence and tyranny.

June 30. 1399. Timur decamp'd from Coumcha, and arriv'd at Ispahan the sixth of Regeb 795. [illegible] Mehemet Sultan went to meet him, gave him a handsom entertainment, and offer'd presents worthy of the greatest emperors; he executed his commissions very faithfully, which prov'd of service to him for the advancement of his fortune. Timur staid five days at Ispahan in the palace of Nacchidgehan, and departed thence on the fifteenth of Regeb. He permitted Miran Charoc to go and meet the queen his mother

[a] A village near Ispahan.

Serai

Serai Mulc Canum, taking the road to the village of Dehi Alavi.

Timur in two days march arriv'd at Gerbadecan, and next night came to the village of Ancouan, the inhabitants of which, being atheists, had lately ty'd themselves in the caverns of rocks: A stratagem was made use of to subdue 'em; all the troops were employ'd in digging rivulets along the mountains where there were rivers or springs, and to break down the banks, that all the waters might flow at once like torrents into the caverns where these miscreants were, and drown 'em presently if they did not make haste out. This design succeeded; the waters fell on a sudden into those cavitys, and cast these miserable people into the fires of a dark eternity: and their goods were pillag'd by the soldiers. Timur passed the night at Ancouan, and departed the thirtieth of Regeb in the morning, and encamp'd in the plain of Perahan, where a general hunting was order'd; all the country was full of game, and abundance of antelopes and wild asses were taken. The princesses, Serai Mulc Canum, and Toumaj Aga, the princess Cazanda, and the other wives of Timur's sons, partook of the diversions of this chace. As they had left their baggage to come the more easily to court, they join'd the emperor at this place, congratulated him on his conquests and return, sprinkled on him precious stones, and made presents to him. July 10.

The third of the moon Schaban, Timur decamp'd and went down to the meadow of Foul Cazara, where he staid three days; he took horse on the sixth, and encamp'd the eighth at Schaban in the agreeable plain of Hamadan. 13.

The Mirza Miranchah left the baggage on the road, to come to the court of the emperor his father.

Book III. [illegible] The Emirs Gehancha Behader, Chamseddin Abbas, Hadgi Mamontcha, and Ouchcara Behader, who staid with the baggage and main-body, took the road to Sultania, with the troops they commanded, and had the honor to salute Timur at Hamadan. Mirza Mehemet Sultan, who was left behind at Ispahan, join'd the court at this place: and the two empresses, Serai Malc Canum and Touman Aga, to divert the court, gave Timur a magnificent feast in this agreeable place.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Timur invests the Mirza Miran Chah in the kingdom of Halacou Can.

THE [illegible] Miran Chah for his services, gave him the sovereignty of the kingdoms of Azerbijana, Rei, Derbend Bacou, Chirvan, and Ghilan, with their dependencys, and the adjacent countrys as far as Roum or Anatolia, subject to the Ottomans. This Mirza gave Timur an entertainment in Hamadan, becoming the greatness of the gift he had receiv'd; he made him considerable presents of raritys which he had got at Tauris, Sultania, and other places where he had staid. They spent several days in pleasures and diversions, and were entertain'd with consorts of music on all sorts of instruments. After the feast the emperor departed from Hamadan on the fourteenth of Schaban 795, sending before him the Mirza Miran cha towards Coulaghi [1]: he order'd

Aug. 3. 1393.

[1] A town of Courdistan, long. 79. 30. lat. 37. 20.

a hunting, and went to encamp in the meadow of Ilma Courouc [illegible]. On the next day the circle was made, and the game hun'd. The court then went to Tauzeur [illegible], and staid there five days; and on the [illegible] having display'd the standard for departure, there was another hunting. The Emirs on both wings form'd the great circle [illegible]ulam, surrounding all the plain of Bech Parmac [illegible]. From thence they went to encamp in the meadow of Ghul Loudja [illegible]; the next day at Dalper [illegible], in the plain of Gonbedec, where they made entertainments. The nineteenth of Schaban they departed, and the court went to encamp four leagues from thence. The Mirza Miranscha being arriv'd at the plain of Coulaghi, sent an express to Timur, to acquaint him that the robber Sarec Mehemet Turcoman had fortify'd himself in the mountains with his family, and getting together a company of seditious people, had set himself up for sovereign.

Aug. 9. 1393.

CHAP. XXIX.

Timur vanquishes the Turcoman Hachin Sarec.

TIMUR had no sooner receiv'd this advice from the Mirza, than passing by the castle of Sagasoun, he came to Coulaghi in two night's march. Being at the plain of Gehanaver, he plac'd a strict guard in all the ways whereby

[illegible] A town near [illegible] in Coubestan.
[illegible] A village of Coubestan.
[illegible] Town of the country of Coudes.
[illegible] Town of Coudistan, long. 80. 45. lat. 35. 30.

the

Book III. the enemy might get away. These robbers had a fortress nam'd Habachi, as well as other defiles of mountains, wherein the ways were extreme rugged and narrow: in these places the Turcomans had retrench'd themselves, placing troops in the narrow passages, whom our army attack'd. Our soldiers got up to the very top of the mountain, from whence they brought away a great many sheep and cattel. Berat Coja Kukeltach on this occasion gave marks of an extraordinary valor; and ascending the mountain by very difficult ways, fought with extreme courage, and made himself admir'd by all the army: but he was at length unfortunately slain by a poison'd arrow, to the great regret of Timur and all the Emirs. The Cheik Hadgi son of Comari, who ascended the mountain with him, was also wounded in the [illegible] strain'd to retire to the [illegible] of his [illegible] The great men willingly sacrific'd their lives to their honor and reputation. The Turcomans observing the resoluteness of our soldiers, fled the same night by the by-ways and woods of the mountain Aourman, leaving their baggage behind 'em: our men pursu'd 'em as far as the other mountains, bringing away a great number of horses, mules, sheep and other cattle. The Cheik Temour Behader at the head of a body of horse, pursu'd the fugitives with so much expedition, that he overtook 'em, and slew a vast number of 'em. Our men made themselves masters of the place they had fortify'd, which was fit for the summer-season.

Death of Berat Coja Kukeltach.

There was another place in these quarters, in which a great number of Guebres * were got

* Adorers of fire, and professing the religion of the ancient Persians. There are to this day a great many of 'em in the east, particularly in India.

together. Timur order'd 'em to make themselves masters of this place, and to ruin it. The siege lasted some time: but being at length taken, it was reduced to a heap of rubbish, and all those who were in the place exterminated. The emperor, with the empress, and the princes his sons, return'd to the plain of Coulaghi: on the tenth of Ramadan he decamp'd to return home, and the next morning join'd the baggage on the banks of the river Acsai. He staid one or two days at every encampment in these quarters, to consult of the means to exterminate the robbers in each place. He sent Mirza Miran-cha to besiege Sarve Courgan [7], and Ouchcara had orders to besiege Carouton [7]: they assaulted these places with so much fury, that they took and ruin'd 'em, after having put to the sword the soldiers who were in 'em; and then return'd victorious to the imperial camp. Timur order'd Mirza Mehemed Sultan to go to the Derbend [8] of Courdistan, to reduce that country, and destroy the robbers of those places, which number a thousand at their pleasure. The Mirza departed in obedience to this order, tho he had made preparations for a magnificent entertainment, which he design'd to give the court. After the court departed for Acboulac [9], where they spent the month of Ramadan in fasting and prayer. The first of Chawal, after the fast was over, Timur gave great alms, and celebrated the Bairam, that is, the passover of the Mussulmans. Two days after, the great Mufti Nour-ed-din Abderrahman Esferaini, famous for

Chap. 30.

Aug. 30.

[7] Castles in Courdistan.

[8] Or Demur Capi, iron-gate, a narrow passage like the Portæ Caspianæ.

[9] A town near Arbelle in Courdistan.

his

Book III. his learning, came from Bagdat as ambassador from the Sultan Ahmed Gelair *; Timur received him handsomly, as he was wont to do learned men, and noted doctors; he gave him audience, the subject of his embassy being, that the Sultan sincerely submitted to the emperor; but being surpriz'd at the approach of the great Timur, he durst not come to cast himself at his feet; that he knew himself not powerful enough to make any resistance; and moreover that his intention was not to oppose him, nor to sustain a siege. The ambassador made his presents, which consisted of nine of each sort; amongst which were Murkens, a kind of large deer, leopards, Arabian horses with saddles of gold; and then he went back. Timur did not receive these presents after his usual manner, because he suspected the sincerity of Sultan Ahmed, feeling the prayers were not so [illegible] [illegible] left he [illegible] the vizier Cheik Noureddin, because of his particular merit, which recommended him more than his embassy; he gave him a very rich vest, a horse of great price, and sum of money, and sent him back to his master without any positive answer.

* Descended from Hulacou.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXX.

Timur marches to Bagdad.

AFTER Timur had dismiss'd the ambassador of Sultan Ahmed Gelair [a], he resolved to besiege Bagdad. He order'd Mirza Pir Mehemet Gehenghir to return to Sultania with the baggage, and the empresses and ladys; and the soldiers to provide themselves with two battles of water apiece. On the thirteenth of Chawal 795, Timur took the road to Bagdad; he marchid day and night to encamp at Yan Boulac [b], and after three days he went before as a scout; he march'd all night, and arriv'd at Coura Cougan [c]; the next morning he met Mehemet, prince of the Turcomans, whom he attack'd at the head of a hundred horse, and routed him; the army which came after [illegible] in Choherzour [d]. At [illegible] a number of brave soldiers, at whose head he march'd in a litter thro narrow passages between

Octob. 3. 1393.

[a] Capital of Irac Arabi, seat of the Califs, on the Tigris, long. 80. lat. 33. 20. fifteen leagues from the antient Babylon; it was built by Aboujafar Almansor, second Calif of the house of the Abassides, A. D. 757.

[b] A Mogul prince; for Bagdad remain'd in the hands of the Mogulists ever since when Hulacou Can, grandson of Genghiz Can, slew Mustasem Billah last of the Abassides Califs, and extirpated the Califate which had continu'd six hundred years.

[c] Village near Arbelle in Courdistan.

[d] A town in Courdistan, near Cherezour.

[e] A city of Couhestan, frontier of Courdistan, long. 82. lat. 34. 30.

steep.

Book III. steep mountains, which were very difficult to get thro. He order'd 'em to light the Machalets, a sort of great torches, by which means he made expedition, stopping no where on the road, so that the army cou'd scarce follow him. When he was at Ibrahim Lie[s], he enquir'd of the inhabitants whether they had sent pigeons[t] to Bagdad to give advice of his arrival. They told him that as soon as they perceiv'd the dust of his army, they had done so. Timur immediately caus'd another pigeon to be brought, and making the same men write a billet, the contents of which were, that the dust they had perceiv'd at a distance was caus'd by the Turcomans, who fled to avoid Timur, they tied this letter under the wing of the pigeon, which they cast into the air. The bird immediately fled to its pigeon-house at Bagdad: it was brought to Sultan Ahmed, who on the [illegible] upon receipt of the first he had caus'd his furniture to be carry'd to the other side of the Tigris.

Timur having at the tomb of the Santon pray'd to God for victory, and distributed many alms to the poor who resided there, he sent before him as a scout Osman Behader, and departed himself at the head of the army: he went twenty seven leagues, each of which were three measur'd miles, without getting off his horses; and on the twenty first of Chawal 795, in the

Octob. 10. 1393.

[s] A place of devotion, twenty seven leagues from Bagdad.

[t] This practice is common in the East. They carry pigeons from their pigeon-houses to the place from whence they wou'd have advice. These birds, when set at liberty, immediately fly to their nests, by which means news is brought to a very distant country in a short time.

morn-

morning, arriv'd at Bagdad. The Sultan had already cross'd the Tigris, and having broken the bridge, and sunk the boats, resolv'd to stay on the other side, till our army arriv'd, and he was perceiv'd by our men. He had no sooner heard the noise of our trumpets, and the cries of our soldiers, than he fled out of the kingdom by the way of Hille[s]. Our troops, who cover'd near two leagues of ground nigh the city, cast themselves into the water with a great cry, and pass'd the Tigris notwithstanding its rapidity. Mehemet Azad, who was one of 'em, having found the royal galley of the Sultan, to which he had given the name of Chams, that is, the sun, brought it to Bagdad, and Timur crossed the river in it. The Mirza Mirancha, at the head of the army, cross'd the Tigris, over against Caryatula Cab[t], below the city. Thus the Tartar troops having pass'd the Tigris, enter'd Irac Arabi; like armys of pismires or grass-hoppers, they cover'd the fields, pillaging on all sides, and endeavoring to find the enemy, that they might block up his way. The inhabitants of Bagdad were as much surpriz'd to see so great a number of Zagataians swim over their river, as their neighbours the Babylonians were formerly at the confusion of languages; and biting their fingers in token of admiration, they were satisfy'd that the progress of Timur, and the courage of his soldiers, were not to be equal'd by those of other potentates of the

Chap. 10.

[s] Otherwise Hillet Benimezid, a town of Irac Arabi, between Bagdad and Coufa, in the land of Babel or Babylon; long. 79. 45. lat. 31. 50. There are three other towns of the same name, one near Ahouez in Courestan, another near Mousel, and the other between Vaset and Basra.

[t] The village of the eagle, the suburbs of Bagdad.

Book III. earth; but that this conqueror was guided by the hand of God, and that his victorys were the immediate work of heaven. Our prince wou'd himself pursue Sultan Ahmed, accompany'd by the princes his sons and the Emirs: he march'd by Serfer [1]; and being arriv'd at Carbatou [2], Aibadge Aglen, the Nevians, the generals and his chief courtiers, besought him to return to Bagdad to repose himself, while they pursu'd the enemy, and endeavor'd to seize the Sultan, and bring him to him with his hands and feet bound. Timur knowing their sincerity, return'd to Bagdad, where he staid in the palace of Sultan Ahmed, whose treasures which he had left fell into the hands of the officers of Timur's houshold. The Emirs at the head of the troops march'd all the day and the following night, and next morning arriv'd at the Euphrates, which Sultan Ahmed had pass'd in the night, having broke the bridge, and sunk the boats [illegible] Damas [illegible] on advice of which Oman Behader told the other Emirs that he thought it proper to swim over the river, and pursue the Sultan. The other Emirs oppos'd it, saying it was better to go along the bank till they shou'd come to a place where the army might pass without any risk. This proposal was follow'd, and they march'd along the banks till they found four empty vessels. Our Emirs em-

[1] A town three leagues from Bagdad, between that and Coufa. The pilgrims of Mecca going from Bagdad, take up their first lodgings here. A little river, call'd the river of Serfer, which falls into the Euphrates, runs by it.

[2] Village in Irac Arabi, seven leagues from Serfer.

[3] A plain, long. 77. lat. 32. 30. on the Euphrates, where Imam Hussein, grandson of the false prophet Mahomet, was slain by Yezide, son of Maavia, first of the Califs of the family of Ommiah.

[illegible]'d,

bark'd, and made their horses cross the water, while they held 'em on the sides of the vessels: the whole army did the same, and march'd with such expedition, that they overtook the Sultan's baggage; they seiz'd on his furniture, tents, money, [illegible] and whatever fear had made him leave behind him; by which means he lost all his goods. The Mirza Miraucha arriv'd at Hilla, where he sent his troops in pursuit of Sultan Ahmed. Aibadge Agiem, prince of the house of Touchi, Gelalhamid, Osman Bahader, Cheik Arslan, Seid Coja son of Cheik Ali Bahader, and other Emirs of Tomans, in all forty five, overtook Sultan Ahmed in the plain of Kerbala on the twenty-second of Chawal. Oct. 11.

These Emirs were oblig'd to pursue him themselves, because the horses of the common soldiers were so fatigu'd, that they were constrain'd to be left behind to rest themselves. The Sultan had with him near two thousand horse, two hundred of whom turn'd upon our Emirs sword in hand. The Emirs got off their horses, and [illegible] the enemy; by which means they repulsed them: then they remounted their horses to pursue 'em; but they face'd about again and attack'd the Emirs, who got off their horses and took to their arrows, on which the enemy fled once more. Ours pursu'd 'em again; but they return'd to the charge a third time with so much fury, that the Emirs had not time to dismount: thus they fought with extreme rigor, and many were kill'd on each side. Osman Bahar did wonders; but he was wounded in the hand with a sword. At length the enemy were repulsed, whereupon our men seiz'd on a great quantity of spoils, and pursu'd 'em no longer.

That day being extreme hot, and the plain of Kerbela affording no water, our men expected to perish by thirst. Aibadge Aglen and Gelalhamid sent men to seek for water, who cou'd get no more than two pots full: Aibadge drank one of 'em without quenching his thirst; wherefore he said to Gelalhamid, "I shall certainly die "with thirst, if you don't give me the pot which "is your portion." The Emir Gelal answer'd, "I have heard it told the emperor, that a cer- "tain Persian travelling with an Arabian, the "like misfortune which we now suffer happen'd "to them in a desart. The Arabian had a little "water left; on which the Persian said, I know "the generosity of the Arabians is so noted, "that it hath pass'd into a proverb: you will "discover a great proof of it, if you will give "me the cup of water you have left. The Ara- "bian answer'd him, If I give you my water, "I must die of thirst. [illegible] "shall not make me transgress the maxims of the "Arabians; for I prefer a good name to life. "I had rather run the hazard of dying than let "my action put a stop to the celebrating of the "virtue of my countrymen. Then the Arabian "gave his water to the Persian, who by this "means pass'd the desart, and gave occasion to "every one to praise the extraordinary charity "of the Arabians." The Emir Gelal after having related this story, said to Aibadge, "I "will imitate the Arabian in giving you my "portion of water; but on condition that you "mention this charity to the princes of the "house of Touchi, and to their subjects, so "that the fame of my action may bring credit "to the descendents of Zagatai Can, one of "whom I have the honor to be: moreover, that "when you arrive at the imperial camp, you

shall

" shall inform the emperor of what I have done, Chap. 30.
" that this action may have a place in history,
" and be a monument of my virtue to all our
" descendents."

Aibadge having consented to these conditions, Gelal resolv'd to die; wherefore he gave his water to Aibadge, who quench'd his thirst. Yet Gelal did not die, God permitting him to escape for this good action. They then departed with the rest of the Emirs, and arriv'd at Mackhad near the Euphrates, where Husein son of Ali was slain. Every one kiss'd the gate of the holy place, and paid his devotions, according to the custom of the Mahometan pilgrims. The brave Emirs gain'd great advantages over the enemys, and took prisoner Aladdole son of Sultan Ahmed, and some others of his children, as likewise his wives and domestics, of whom the Sultan rather chose to be depriv'd, than expose himself to the fury of our Emirs. Thus the Sultan escap'd with a few of his men, and the Emirs returned home enrich'd with slaves and spoils.

Aibadge Agha and the Emir Gelal related what had pass'd about the water; which extremely pleas'd Timur, who was naturally generous. This monarch extoll'd the great wisdom of the Emir Hamid father of Gelal, and pray'd for the repose of his soul: he then applauded Gelal, telling him that he must acknowledge he had many times offer'd to sacrifice his life to his service, but that this action of exposing himself to a certain death by giving the water to Aibadge to preserve his life, and by this means to gain renown to the Zagataians, more sensibly touch'd him than all his former actions. Timur therefore made great presents to Gelal, who answer'd 'em with an unlimited obedience.

CHAP. XXXI.

Return of Mirza Mehemet Sultan after the defeat of the Courdes robbers.

THE Mirza Mehemet Sultan, who before the expedition to Bagdad was gone against the Courdes, enter'd their mountains, and destroy'd a great number of these robbers; some of whom he had reduc'd to obedience, and precipitated from the tops of the mountains others who were most rebellious, and had fortify'd themselves on the ridge of a high mountain. This severity was not useless, for since that time one or two men may travel safely in their great roads, whereas before [illegible] were obliged [illegible] days, as I my-self * can witness, having gone thro 'em several times. The young prince having successfully finish'd this expedition, return'd to court by Derbend Tachi Catun [4], and had the honor to salute the emperor at Bagdad. Some days after he was sent to Vasset [5], as governor of that town, and the province dependent on it. Then Timur sent express to Mirza Mirancha who was at Hille, to depart for Basra [6]. At length orders were given that the wives of Sultan Ahmed and his son Ab-

* Cherefeddin Ali, author of this book. M. Petis, the translator, has also gone this way twice.

[4] A defile of mountains, where one must pass under an arch cut in the rock, more than six hundred paces.

[5] A town of Irac Arabi on the Tigris, long. 81. 30. lat. 32. 10.

[6] A town near the place where the Tigris and Euphrates fall into the Persian gulf, long. 84. lat. 30. call'd also Basra.

Saddole

saddole shou'd be transported to Samarcand, with all the learned men of Bagdad, and the masters of arts and sciences; as also the famous Coja Abdelcader, author of the book of Edouars, that is, the several tunes in musick. Letters of conquest were sent to Samarcand, Cachgar, Cotan, Carezem, Azerbijana, Persia, Irac, Corassana, Zabulestan, Mazendran, Tabarestan, and other kingdoms and citys, that on this good news rejoicings might be made every where for the emperor's victorys.

Timur spent two months at Bagdad in diversions, in stately palaces, and pleasure houses on the bank of the Tigris; being intirely satisfied with the progress of his campain, and the other conquests his subjects continu'd to make with so much glory. The officers of justice by his orders seiz'd on all the wines they found in Bagdad, and cast 'em into the Tigris: and the inhabitants of Bagdad paid to the commissarys the accustom'd tribute for the preservation of their lives.

CHAP. XXXII.

Timur sends an ambassador to the Sultan Barcoc in Egypt.

AS Timur's chief study and ambition was to secure the roads from robbers, to regulate the affairs of kingdoms, and give peace to the people, he thought proper to send the Cheik Saye, one of the most skilful and famous doctors of his time, in embassy to Malek Ezzaher Barcoc, Sultan of Egypt and Syria. He order'd several noble Moguls to accompany him, and he gave him a magnificent equipage and a royal

Book III. garment. The letter which he carry'd was as follows: "The potent emperors of the house "of Genghiz Can having been at war with the "kings your predecessors, who oppress'd the peo-"ple of Syria; and these wars having ended in "a peace by the intervention of ambassadors, "security and union have been establish'd be-"tween the two nations. And forasmuch as "since the death of the invincible Abousaid "Behader Can [1], there has not reign'd in the "empire of Iran any sovereign prince of the "race of Genghiz Can, who has regulated the "affairs of the people; but on the contrary there "have been governors in all the provinces of "this great empire, who have set themselves "up for kings, and caus'd infinite misfortunes to "the people: the King of kings hath made "choice of us, by a peculiar favor, to remedy "these disorders, and permitted our victorious "sword to conquer all the kingdoms of Iran, "as far as Irac Arab, which borders on your do-"minions. We imagine that the love we owe our "people requires that, because of the proximity "of our two empires, a correspondence should "be settled between us by letters, and that am-"bassadors should go and come mutually from "one empire to the other, so that the mer-"chants of both nations might travel with se-"curity: which will render the countrys flou-"rishing, produce plenty in the towns, and "maintain the people in peace. 'Tis for this "reason we have sent an ambassador to you; "beseeching God to load you with his favors, "if you act as becomes you. Now thanks be

[1] Son of Codabende, son of Argouncha, inter'd at Sultania.

"to him, who is the sole lord and master of Chap. 33.
"kings, and of all the people in the universe."

CHAP. XXXIII.

The taking of the town of Tecrit [1].

AFTER the reduction of Bagdad, the merchants and travellers presented petitions to Timur, importing that in the neighbourhood of Bagdad there was a place call'd Tecrit, which for its strength was esteem'd impregnable, and had drawn thither a great number of robbers, who had fortify'd themselves in that rock, and when caravans pass'd by that place, pillag'd 'em, and especially those of Egypt and Syria, which were the richest of any: they likewise assur'd him that battering-rams and other machines cou'd do no harm to this place; that the inhabitants were not satisfy'd with robbing, but that they murder'd the passengers; and that till this time no prince, how powerful soever, has been able to put a stop to these disorders. For these reasons Timur conceiv'd that the reduction of this place, and the ruin of these villains, wou'd gain him a treasure of merit in the other world, and great honor even in this. He therefore order'd Burhan Aglen, Yaic Soufi, Gelalhamid, Chamelic, and Seid Coja, to march to Tecrit, and block up the place; which they accordingly did. Timur distributed among the Emirs and soldiers the mony which had been collected from the inhabitants of Bagdad for

[1] Long. 79. lat. 34. 30.

pre-

Book III. preserving their lives; and left at that place the Emir Otman Abbas, who had been wounded in a skirmish at Kerbela, giving him for a pension a thousand Dinars Copeghi a day, which he generously said was to pay the surgeon. After this he departed from Bagdad the twenty fourth
Nov. 11. of Zilhadge 795, to encamp at the tomb of Cheic
1393. Behloul, where he pray'd this Saint to intercede with God for the victory. Timur having sent Mirza Charoc with the scouts, march'd all the following day, cross'd the Tigris, and lay on the bank of the river: the next day he arriv'd at a great lake, where he encamp'd. On the morrow he went to Anna [1], and the day
Nov. 17. after to Lejarma. The first of Muharrem 796, he came to the town of Harbi; the following night he encamp'd at Bendafar; and the next morning he went for Ghez Betaili. In his way thither a lion being perceiv'd [illegible] which abounded in this country; for which reason the wood was surrounded, and there came out five lions, which furiously prepar'd their claws and teeth to kill the hunters, whom they fiercely attack'd; but they were receiv'd with so much dexterity and vigor, that all the five were slain at the same time, and made the prey of other beasts.

After this chace Timur departed, and the 4th
Nov. 20. of Muharrem arriv'd at Teerit. He rang'd his army in order, commanded the drum to be beat, and the great cry made. The men surrounded the place, and sapp'd the out-parts, which they overthrew. Timur order'd his tent to be fix'd near the works, to animate the soldiers. Then

[1] A town on the Euphrates, long. 76. 30. lat. 34.

Yarali

Yarali prince of Mousul, and the Cheik Ali Oirat [1], prince of Arbella, came to cast themselves at the feet of Timur, with many presents. Timur order'd his soldiers to enter the place notwithstanding the difficulty. This town was built on a rock near the Tigris [2] in the reign of the Sassanians [3]. The passages were clos'd up with mortar and stones, and it was so well fortify'd, that it cou'd never be taken by force; the rock on which it was built being very high. The Emi Hassan, the governor, robb'd on the highways, not obeying any prince: but when he knew of Timur's arrival, he was afraid, and sent his younger brother to assure him of his obedience and service. Timur receiv'd him handsomely, and having made him a present of a beautiful horse and a vest, he dismiss'd him, ordering him to tell his brother Hassan, that if he came chearfully before him, he shou'd be well receiv'd. Hassan's brother gave him an account of all this: but this unfortunate prince resolv'd to defend himself. Three soldiers immediately be[illegible] the battering rams and machines to throw stones, with which they ruin'd the houses of these robbers. The third day of the siege, the Emir Hassan sent his mother to Timur to intercede for him, with presents of horses and rarities. She humbly represented that Hassan well knew that he was not powerful enough to defend himself against the imperial army; but that the fear of appearing before

[1] A family of the ancient Moguls.

[2] The Tigris is call'd Dedgele by the Arabians. Tir, in Persian, signifying an arrow, because the Tigris is rapid, some pretend that the name of Tigris is from that etymology.

[3] The kings of Persia of the fourth race, the last of whom, Yezdegerd, was kill'd by Moslem, the Dom. 645.

the

Book III. the majesty of Timur, hinder'd his coming out; that if he wou'd pardon him, he wou'd send his brother and sons as hostages to the court. Timur was very civil to Hassan's mother, and told her, that for her sake he wou'd pardon her son; but that he must come out of the place, or be responsible for the death of so many persons who were in the town. These words disquieted the lady, who return'd to the town, the siege of which was continually going forward; the soldiers having already advanc'd under covert to the foot of the walls, and Seid Coja with his regiment having made the enemy abandon a tower in the night, and oblig'd the guards to retreat into the town. The taking of this tower facilitated the taking of all the out-works, for they were presently abandon'd. Timur's answer to Hassan troubled him so very much, that he resolv'd upon fighting to the [illegible] might have [illegible] in [illegible] Timur order'd the soldiers to assault the walls together: whereupon the Tavatchis divided the space the walls took up among the troops, and mark'd with a red furrow what each regiment shou'd sap, and gave it 'em in writing. This distribution began with the regiments of the left wing, which was the most honorable of the two; which regiments compos'd the Toman of Kepek Can, which had for their leader Arslan. This Toman work'd in files, and was follow'd by the regiments of the Toman of prince Charoc, who labor'd with so much earnestness, that in a short time they pierc'd the rock thirty five cubits. The regiments of the other Tomans[4] imploy'd themselves in the same

[4] The names of the Tomans and Hezares, as well as of their generals, are given in the original; but the French translator thought proper to omit 'em, as too tedious for the reader.

manner

manner in the places allotted 'em. By this may be known the strength of the town of Tecrit, since they were obliged to employ at once seventy two thousand, the number of soldiers in Timur's army, to undermine the place. Chap. xxi.

The Emir Hassan seeing the work so far advanc'd, was greatly troubled; wherefore he sent to Timur, to confess his fault and demand quarter. Timur answer'd, that to obtain his request, Hassan must come out of the place. The next day he sent another man to Mirza Charoc to beg his protection, and to intercede for him. Hassan afterwards sent his brother to the same prince, to represent his despair and misery, telling him that every one in the place, and Hassan himself were firmly resolv'd to obey Timur for the future; but that the fear of appearing before him hinder'd Hassan's coming out. Charoc conducted him to Timur, who declar'd, that if Hassan did not come before him to give assurances of his repentance for his crimes, and the robberys he had committed on the high ways, with promise to abstain for the future, he wou'd hear no more excuses; but if he did what he desir'd, he wou'd not only pardon his crimes, but treat him according to his quality. Timur gave Hassan's brother a vest, and sent him back to the town, telling him, that if Hassan wou'd not come, yet he might stay with him. When the two brothers came to a conference, one of 'em argu'd in this manner: "It is "a long time since from one generation to ano-"ther we have been sovereigns in this place, and "done what we pleas'd, having no one to con-"troul us. If we shou'd now surrender, those "whom we have wrongfully plunder'd, will "demand justice against us: then we must not "only restore what we have taken away; but

"shall

Book III. "shall be punish'd, and perhaps put to death in a "shameful manner. Wherefore I approve of "fighting to the last drop of our blood". The soldiers in the place willingly consented to this resolution, and began hostilitys. This inraged Timur, who order'd the drums and kettle-drums to be beat, the trumpets to be sounded, and the great cry to be made. Part of the walls fell down, having been prop by large pieces of timber, which were now set on fire. The besieg'd repair'd this great breach, and fought like desperate men resolv'd to die. Timur order'd all the soldiers to advance together, and enter the places they had undermin'd, and where they had fix'd props, to fill 'em with small pieces of dry wood and pitch, which they accordingly did: and on the 20th of Moharrem 796, at night, they set fire to the wood and pitch. The air was darken'd by the smoke, and most part of the walls fell on a sudden, like unto the tower which had been taken by Yaic Soufi; and twenty of the enemys fell with the walls. The besieg'd, notwithstanding the ruin of the walls, arm'd themselves with planks and great bucklers, and continu'd to make a defence against our men, who advanc'd to the very middle of the place, where there was a furious and bloody battel; the besiegers fighting for glory, and the besieged for their liberty and lives.

Decemb. 6. 1393.

Further orders were given, that the walls which were yet standing shou'd be undermin'd: the bastion where the Tomans of Allahdad and Amancha were working, was destroy'd to the very foundations by Bedreddin. Whereupon the Emir Hassan being terrify'd, retir'd with his soldiers to the edge of the mountain, of which they were yet masters. The brave Emir begg'd

beg'd leave upon their knees to ascend that mountain, to finish the destruction of these rash people: but Timur answer'd 'em, that it was better to wait the razing of the place. Some of the besieg'd on the [illegible], to beseech the Emirs to intercede only for their lives: but Timur warmly answer'd, Let him come or not, no quarter shall be given; for I know that by God's assistance I shall gain the victory: I will seize the chief of the robbers, and hinder the retreat of these villains. The soldiers were animated by these words of the emperor, and at length getting up to the top of the mountain, finish'd the assault of the place. They bound the Emir Hassan and those who accompany'd him, neck and heels, and brought 'em to Timur, who order'd the inhabitants to be separated from the soldiers, and prohibited any one to insult 'em; but that the soldiers shou'd be shar'd among the Tomans, and put to death. Thus they made these robbers suffer the punishment due for their crimes, in plundering and killing passengers. The Tavatchis [illegible] with their heads for an example to others, and fix'd the following writing on them, *Thus the unbelievers are punish'd.* This conquest was on the 25th of Muharrem 796, which answers to the year of the Hen. Timur order'd that one of the walls of the place shou'd be left entire, that posterity might wonder how it cou'd be taken by assault and the strength of men; and that they might remember with fear the punishment of these robbers, and acknowledge with admiration the valor of the soldiers of so powerful a conqueror.

Chap. [illegible]

Dec. 11.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXIV.

Timur continues his journy, and sends his princes and Emirs to make inroads in several kingdoms.

Decemb. 17. 1393. THE first of Sefer 796, Timur return'd to Harbi, which was the rendezvous of all the troops, which were sent to make inroads both before and during the siege of Tecrit; and order'd a general hunting to divert the court and army, wherein they kill'd a great many wild asses and antilopes. The Mirazes and Emirs, who went with troops to make irruptions in the provinces of Irac Arabi, and [illegible] to put an end to the disorders produced by the Arabian robbers, came here to wait on the emperor: of which number was the Mirza Mehemet Sultan, who went to Vaset along the banks of the Tigris; as likewise Mobacher and Argouncha, who march'd another way with their troops; and the Mirza Mirancha, who went from Hille to Basra at the head of his; Emir Yadghiar Berlas and Gehancha Yakou, who set out together; Mehemet Dervich Berlas, Cheik Ali Margoub, and Ismael Berlas, who had taken another road. All these Emirs establish'd the laws of Genhiz Can, slew a great number of Arabians, and pillag'd their goods and horses, because they robb'd on the high roads, and hinder'd the passage of the caravans going in pilgrimage to Mecca.

They who had brought into subjection and made tributary the princes of the tribes of the

farthest

further parts of the desart, came also to Harbi to give an account of their progress. The prince Mirancha, having confign'd the government of Basra to [illegible], crossd the great river of [illegible]*, and join'd the Mirza Mehemet Sultan: and these two princes, having gloriously accomplish'd their designs, destroy'd the common enemys of the empire, and executed Timur's intentions, come also to court, where they had the honor to salute his majesty. Bagdad and all Irac Arabi being brought into subjection to Timur, this conqueror sent the following mandate to all the princes, governors, lords of provinces and towns, and even to the generals of forces, the Cheiks of the tribes and familys of the Turcomans and Ogours.

Chap. II.

"You found these countrys without a sovereign; and like players at mell, who finding the ground empty, sling their ball from one side to t'other at their pleasure, you have carry'd your sword wherefoever your ambition [illegible] you, and acted in an arbitrary [illegible] for you [illegible] of what is past, cease to rob on the high ways, and no longer insult passengers, if you expect that our mercy and justice shou'd extend as far as your estates: but if you obey not this command, know that whatever happens to you for the future in consequence of this refusal, will be thro your own fault, and you will have none to accuse but your selves." Some who receiv'd this order, on serious consideration, came to cast themselves at Timur's feet,

* A river into which the Tigris and Euphrates fall; that is, from Corna as far as Basra or Bassora.

Book III. whom he regarded favorably, and gave 'em employments in their own countrys according to their merit and birth: but the others who continu'd in rebellion, by their disobedience brought on themselves the wrath of God, and consequently all the disasters which happen to the most wretched; and these men were at last exterminated, as we shall see hereafter. In the mean while Emir Osmân Abbas came from Bagdad with the baggage, and join'd the imperial camp at Harbi.

CHAP. XXXV.

Timur marches to Diarbekir.

WHEN Timur had reduced Amed, he reduc'd [illegible] country of Diarbekir, having first committed the government of Bagdad to Coja Masaoud Sebzuari, and order'd him to maintain peace among the inhabitants; to inform himself of the condition of the poor and infirm; and to shew respect to the Cherifs, the descendents of Mahomet, as well as to the doctors and men of letters; and even to feed the poor as far as he was able. Then he departed for Diarbekir, sending the Mirza Miran-cha with many Emirs and troops to conquer other places situate on the Tigris. Timur caus'd a bridge of boats to be built over this river, which he pass'd, and order'd a rumor to be given out, that he was on his return home, that

* The same as Amed: only that Diarbekir takes in both the town and country; whereas Amed is only the town: it is situate on the Tigris, long. 74. lat. 38.

the

the enemys might be less on their guard. He Chap. 25.
chose two men out of every ten in all his army, leaving the rest and the baggage with Osman Behader, and [illegible] march slowly: he also gave [illegible] the lieutenancy-general [illegible] troops [illegible] the care of his own horse, as well as of proper places and fit ground to encamp in. The Mirza Mehemet Sultan, Emir Cayasoddin Tercan, and Ouchcara Behader, had orders to stay with the baggage, and to take care of it, in conjunction with the commander. Timur embark'd with the greatest diligence; and when he had pass'd by Toouc [1], and was got to Carcouc [2], the inhabitants came out to meet him with great ceremony, and sincere marks of respect and obedience: and he gave this place, as a lordship for ever, to Emir Ali Mousesi. Then Czal Mirali Oirat, Pirali, and Gehanghir, ran to cast themselves at the emperor's feet, to assure him of their submission; as did the princes of all these quarters, the governors of towns, especially the prince of Altoun Cupri, who [illegible] a handsom reception, and made them presents of belts of gold, magnificent vests, gold, precious stones, and stuffs for their wives and daughters.

Timur departed on the 4th of Sefer 796, for Arbelle [3], the prince of which, Cheik Ali, paid his devoirs to him, and treated him magnificently, with all his court. The next day Timur went to encamp on the bank of the river Cuma- Decemb. 20. 1393.

[1] A town in Mesopotamia near Harran.
[2] A town of Mesopotamia, long. 76. 35. lat. 35. 25.
[3] A town of Mesopotamia between Moussel and Teerit; dependent of Chekrecour, famous for the battel between Alexander and Darius, long. 77. 10. lat. 35. 50.

Book III. zab[6]: two days after he swam over, and arriv'd at Moussel[7], where he devoutly visited the tombs of the prophets Jonas and Georges[8], recommending himself to their prayers; he gave ten thousand Dinars Kerghi to each tomb, for the building of magnificent domes over these illustrious bodys: he also distributed much alms among the poor.

In the mean time Mirza Mirancha arriv'd, after having conquer'd the countrys and towns situate on the Tigris, and reduc'd many people to the obedience of Timur, whom he had the honor to salute at Moussel. Yarali, prince of this place, gave a sumptuous banquet to Timur and all the court; at which some one heard this poor prince say, when the victuals was serv'd up to Timur, "Is not this the history of Solo-"mon[9] and the pismire?" He then offer'd his presents on his knees.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Timur marches to Edessa[1].

TIMUR departed from Moussel for Rha or Edessa, taking Yarali prince of that place for his guide. The Emirs of Tomans rang'd the army in order, advancing by squa-

[6] It falls into the Tigris below Moussel.

[7] A city W. of the Tigris, long. 77. lat. 36. 30.

[8] The Mahometans admit of many prophets unknown to us, as the prophet Georges.

[9] This is a fable of the Mahometans, who believe that Solomon was entertain'd by a pismire.

[1] A town of Mesopotamia, long. 76. lat. 36.

THE DIRECTOR GENERAL OF ARCHAEOLOGY
Library Reg. No

HISTORY OF TIMUR-BEC,

Known by the Name of

Tamerlain the Great,

Emperor of the

MOGULS and TARTARS.

BEING

An historical JOURNAL of his Conquests in *Asia* and *Europe*.

Written in Arabic by CHERIFEDDIN ALI, Native of Yezd, his Contemporary.

Translated into *French* by the late M. Vattier, *Pavet de la Croix*, Arabic Professor in the Royal College, and Secretary and Interpreter to the King in the Oriental Languages.

With historical Notes and Maps.

Now faithfully Tender'd into ENGLISH.

In Two Volumes.

LONDON: Printed for J. DARBY in *Bartholomew-Close*, B. BELL in *Cornhill*, W. TAYLOR in *Ivy-lane*, W. and J. INNYS at the West End of St. *Paul's* Churchyard, J. OSBORN in *Lombard-street*, and T. PAYNE in *Stationers-Court*. MDCCXXIII.

drons. While they were on their march, Sultan Aisa, prince of Merdin [s], sent an express to meet Timur, to offer him his services. Whereupon, at the end of Sefer 796, Timur being near Merdin, sent to this prince to come with expedition to join his army, because he had a design to enter Syria and attack Egypt. Timur having pass'd this place, encamp'd at Raselain [t], from whence he sent all the army to pillage the enemy's country. The right wing plunder'd the lands subject to Hussein, call'd the black sheep; and the left wing the neighbouring places, from whence they brought away a great many horses, camels, oxen and sheep. When they were return'd loaded with spoils, they decamp'd and march'd to Edessa; the prince of which place, nam'd Ghuzel, had abandon'd that city on the approach of our army, with some of the inhabitants, who took shelter with him on a high mountain. Timur sent Emirs and soldiers in search of 'em, who pillag'd 'em, and took 'em prisoners. Then Timur, accompany'd by the princes his sons, the Navians, and principal Emirs, made his entry into the city of Edessa, all the houses of which were built with stone. This place is said to have been built by Nembroth *: and the Mahometans believe that Abraham was cast into the furnace here, the fountain which sprung up in the midst of the fire to quench it, being now to be seen; and round about the fountain the place is black with smoke. Timur and all his court were overjoy'd to see the remains of this miracle, tho they already believ'd it true, by the light of faith. They bath'd in this foun-

Chap. 36.

Beginning of A. D. 1394.

* Nimrod.

[s] A town of Mesopotamia, long. 74. lat. 37. 15.

[t] A town of Mesopotamia, where are several springs, from whence the Cabour rises.

Book III. tain, and drank of its water with great devotion.

Timur spent nineteen days in this city in plays and entertainments, giving largesses to the warriors who had expos'd themselves to the greatest dangers for his service. Juneid, a Turcoman prince, had the honor to pay his respects to the emperor in this place, whereby he obtain'd the lives of himself, his family, children, and subjects. The prince of Hasni Keifa[4] had the same honor; for he submitted to Timur, and brought him the keys of his town; he therefore met with a kind reception. The Sultan Aisa prince of Merdin, refus'd to come to court notwithstanding his promise: upon which Timur thinking it not prudent that a rebel shou'd be left in the midst of his dominions, return'd to Merdin the twenty sixth of Rabiuleyel, 796. He met the Sultan Ali prince of [illegible], cast himself at his feet, and offer'd his service, with magnificent presents. The prince of Batman[5] did the same, and was receiv'd into the number of Timur's subjects. The empresses Tchelpan Mulc Aga, and Dilchadaga, who had been thirty-five days absent from court, and had follow'd the baggage, join'd Timur on the top of a hill. The baggage also arriv'd, having pass'd by Merdin. Timur rang'd his army for battel, and continu'd his march: he encamp'd at Tchumlic, seven leagues from Merdin, where Malek Azzeddin prince of Gezire[7] had the ho-

Feb. 10. 1394.

[4] Town on the Tigris, in Mesopotamia, long. 74. 20. lat. 37. 20.

[5] Town of Courdistan.

[6] Town and river which falls into the Tigris, in Courdistan.

[7] A town in Mesopotamia on the Tigris, long. 74. 30. lat. 37. also call'd Gezirat Ber Omar.

nor

nor to salute him, making great presents, and submitting to pay tribute. Timur receiv'd him courteously, and permitted him to return home. The Sultan Ali had no sooner learnt that the emperor was on his march to Merdin, than he came out of that place, to cast himself at his feet, with presents of fine horses, mules, and other curiositys, nine of each sort. He was presented to Timur on the twenty-eighth of Rabiulevel, by the great Emirs: the emperor demanded the cause of his unwillingness to come before him; on which he beg'd pardon for his fault. Timur was willing to pardon him; and to comfort him, gave him a vest. Then he departed from that place, and went to encamp at the foot of the mountain Merdin. Chap. 37.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Death of Mirza Omar Cheik, Timur's son.

THE Mirza Omar Cheik, who among all his royal virtues possess'd a supreme degree of valor and intrepidity, being the head-general of the army under Timur, during the year that he was in the country of Fars, had made himself master of all the provinces and places, which were not subjected to Timur while he march'd thro that country; of which number were the fortresses of Estacar Feree, and Chehriari Ghermeir. He then went into the out-parts of Seirjan, which was besieg'd by many Emirs, who had not yet taken it. But when Timur took up a resolution to make war in Syria and Egypt, and had march'd to Diarbekir, he sent orders to Mirza Omar Cheik to return to court; which

Book III. which orders the Mirza receiv'd, while he was besieging Seirjan: yet he did not wait till the reduction of the place, but immediately departed, leaving Aidecou Berlas, with Chah Chahan governor of Siſtan, and Pirali Selduz, to continue the ſiege. The Mirza being on his return to Chiraz, equip'd himſelf for his journy, leaving Sevindgic to govern the kingdom of Perſia in his abſence. This Emir rebuilt the fortreſs of Carhender, ruin'd by Chahchuja, while the Mirza with his guards took the road to Choulestan. He paſs'd by the country of the Courdes, and arriv'd at a little fort nam'd Cormatou, inhabited by a ſmall number of men. The Mirza got upon an eminence to view the place, where he was ſhot with an arrow in the Vena Cava, which kill'd him on the ſpot. This unforeſeen accident had almoſt made the Mirza Pir Mehemet, and thoſe who accompany'd him deſpair, ſo that they even wiſh'd their own deaths: but who can eſcape when fate calls? This misfortune happen'd in the midſt of winter in the month of Rabiulevel, 796, which anſwers to the year of the Hen; the Mirza being but forty years old. After the ſoldiers had bitterly lamented the death of their prince, they deſtroy'd with fire and ſword all the living creatures they cou'd find in the place, which they raz'd.

Feb. 1394.

When the news of this misfortune came to the imperial camp, which was without the town of Merdin, every one was in ſo great a conſternation, that no one dar'd reveal it: yet as it was improper to keep it ſecret, after different reſolutions they agreed to tell it to the emperor; which they did in his cloſet, with many ſighs and tears. Timur heard all this without being mov'd, only anſwering in the words of the Alcoran, *We belong to God, and muſt return to him.*

Then

Then he gave the kingdom of Fars to Mirza Pir Chah Mehemet son of the deceas'd, who he was but sixteen years old; and order'd Ouchcara Behader to take care that the corps of the deceas'd Mirza should be carry'd to Chiraz by the Emirs, and that he should accompany 'em. Ouchcara Behader, at his arrival at Cormatou signify'd these orders to the Emirs Birdi Bei, and Zirec Yacbu, who with their regiments return'd to the camp. And the Mirza Pir Mehemet, with the Emirs of the court of the deceas'd, as also the Emir Ouchara and others, march'd in ceremony from Cormatou to Chiraz with the corps, which was there laid under a dome. Some time after the princesses Sevindgic Cotluc Aga, Bei Mulc Aga, and Melket Aga, the wives of the deceas'd, with his little son the Mirza Eskender, carry'd the body to Kech, where he was inter'd in a mausoleum built by the emperor his father. The cause of this translation was, that Timur had erected at Kech an edifice with several domes, which he design'd for the burying-place of the princes of his household. This fine piece of building was on the south of the tombs of Sainton Chamseddin Kelar, and the Emir Tragai, Timur's father; and had on the right and left sepulchres, which the prince had erected, as well for the Mirza Gehanghir, for whom this was principally design'd, as for his other children. God, being willing to honor Timur not only in his life, but also after his death, inspir'd so sincere a love for him in the great Emirs, who seconded him in all his enterprizes, that they all caus'd their burying-places to be erected near this sumptuous monument, according to their quality and birth; and wherever they died, they were, according to their last wills, transported to this place, to testify to posterity the great

Book III. great love they had for their prince. The Emir Acbouga bore so great a reverence to him, that wherever he sat or lay, he never turn'd his back towards the place where Timur was, and his feet were always stretch'd out that way. All these demonstrations of respect and love in Timur's officers, were not only proofs of his merit, but also mark'd out something divine, which was granted to him above other men.

When the Sultan Aisa, prince of Merdin, came to cast himself at Timur's feet, he submitted to pay the tribute usually impos'd on towns which are taken: upon which the commissarys went to the place to receive these taxes, as did the soldiers to buy what they had occasion for. But a company of young men, who were got together, insulted the soldiers, of which Timur being inform'd, he order'd the Sultan Aisa to come before him, of whom he [illegible] the cause of that tumult, and by several questions put to him, they found, that at his coming out of the town he had charg'd his brother and subjects not to deliver up their arms, or surrender the place; and what was found most criminal in his conduct was, that he had order'd 'em not to obey the commands sent to 'em in any [illegible] about receiving a governor; for he had [illegible] to sacrifice his life for their safety. Sultan Aisa being convicted of what was alledg'd against him, orders were given to seize him, and bind him in chains: yet Timur did not think proper to besiege Merdin at that time, because there was not grass enough for the great number of horses, and winter was almost at an end.

Feb. 27. 1394. Timur decamp'd from before Merdin the eighth of Rabyulakher 796, and march'd towards the mountains, where he encamp'd; and the next day he departed for Espendge. On the third

third day the Emirs being every one in their posts at the head of their regiments, there happen'd a terrible tempest; it lightn'd and thunder'd every where, and such great rains fell, that all the ditches were full of water, and our men were in the utmost confusion; they cou'd not stay in the camp for fear of being drown'd; the camels as well as the mules were stuck fast, and in a short time nothing cou'd be seen but the horses ears, because the soil was very soft, and caus'd much mud: they suffer'd thus many days, whereby a great many beasts were lost. The greatest part of the cavalry were oblig'd to dismount to put their tents in order; but the storm still encreasing, they were forc'd to leave all their effects, and march on foot. At length Timur with his guards, after great fatigues, got out of the sloughs, and on the tenth of Jumazi-ul-evel 796, encamp'd on ground which was firm and full of grass. He immediately sent men to inform himself of the condition of the princes his sons, and their Mirzas, as well as their Emirs, with fifes before them, and umbrellas on their heads, pass'd the sloughs with their Romans: then they departed from this place for old Moussel. March 25. 1394.

Timur had before this time sent to Sukania many presents for the princes his sons; and an Emir, who had saluted Timur at Thumlie with Malec Azzeddin prince of Gezire, was so rash and daring as to steal these curiositys, and carry them to Gezire. Malec Azzeddin, notwithstanding his promises to be obedient to the emperor's orders, entertain'd this robber, promis'd to protect him, and by this action declar'd himself Timur's enemy.

Timur resolving to revenge himself on this bold fellow, sent two couriers to Malec, with orders

Book III. orders requiring him to seize the Cheik, and to send him to court in fetters, if he was desirous to obtain pardon for the fault he had committed, in protecting him; but if he refus'd to do this, he wou'd bring his cavalry to Gezire, and destroy his country, fortresses, subjects, and domestics, not excepting one. Malec Azzeddin was so blinded by his adverse fortune, that trusting in the strength of his castle, and the Tigris which surrounded it, he refus'd to obey these orders.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Timur marches to Gezire.

March 8. ON the refusal of Malec Azzeddin, Timur departed on the [illegible] of Jumazin-level, leaving the baggage behind, and crossing the Tigris on floats: he march'd all night, at break of day, while the enemy were asleep, fell upon 'em with his troops, who pillaged the country, took two or three fortresses, enrich'd themselves with a great quantity of goods and horses.

During this confusion, Malec Azzeddin fell into the hands of one of our soldiers, who took from him many valuable pieces; and not knowing who he was, let him escape.

After Timur had ravag'd the town and country of Gezire, and oblig'd Malec to wander about the desart as a vagabond, he return'd home, repass'd the Tigris, and order'd that all the booty, nay even the sheep, shou'd be conducted to Moussel. Upon which the booty was convey'd over the Tigris in forty barks, and arriv'd

arriv'd at the imperial camp in ten days and ten nights. Chap. 39.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Timur's second enterprize upon Merdin.

WHEN Timur had taken Gezire, and the fortresses of that province, he held a council with the Emirs, and took care himself of the regulation of the army, providing the infantry with horses. So on the first of Jumaziu-lakher 795, he began his march towards Merdin, sending the Mirza Miranchа at the head of the vanguard. Timur in his march pillag'd the inhabitants of the plains and mountains, and on the twelfth came in view of Merdin with all his army. Then tents were erected for the soldiers to lie in, and the troops enter'd into the gardens, where they posted themselves so advantageously. April 15. 1394.

The next day the prince, with a multitude of his Tomans, Hezares and Sedes, gave an assault upon the place on the noise of drums, trumpets, kettledrums, the great trumpet Kerrenai, and the terrible cry of Souroun. The main-body placing their bucklers on their heads, fix'd the ladders; and then taking their war-clubs in their hands, and their sabres in their mouths, they scal'd the walls with such fury, that they made the enemy give way. They soon made themselves masters of the town, while the besieged fled into the fortress Couh [1], which was

[1] The Couh signifys in Persian a mountain, yet it is the name of the fortress of Merdin in particular.

situate

Book III. situate on the ridge of a mountain, thinking to escape the fury of the conquerors: but our warriors closely pursu'd 'em, taking many girls and boys, besides a great many horses, mules, and camels. Then they posted themselves at the foot of the walls, with design to force the besieg'd, after they had repos'd themselves. There was but one way to get up to the fortress, on the top of which was a fountain sufficient to turn a mill, which falls down the rock. Many poets have describ'd the strength and advantageous situation of this fortress, and among others, Ebni Ferala, who gives it the firname of Cala Chahba, that is, the white castle. We attack'd it in the evening, while the enemy cast down abundance of stones; and desisted during night, but the next day our soldiers got upon the mountain level with the walls of the place; there they seiz'd on several of the enemy [illegible] hid themselves in [illegible] The [illegible] for our soldiers, and with what vigor they advanc'd, were so dismay'd, that they came with tears and groans to beg quarter; which being told Timur, he retir'd from the foot of the walls, and recepa'd his camp. Then the besieg'd came out of the place with several presents, nine of a [illegible] among which were Turcoman horses, [illegible] inestimable value, with large sums of money; they swore to become faithful and obedient, submitting to pay a tribute every year. The present conjunctures were very favorable to the people of Merdin, and appeas'd Timur's fury: for next day an express arriv'd from Sultania from the empress Serai Mulc Canum, mother of Mirza Charoc, with advice of the birth of a son to this heir of the crown.

CHAP.

*

CHAP. XI.

Birth of the Mirza Olug Beg.

THE first of Jumazinlevel 796, which answers to the year of the Dog in the Mogul calendar, God was pleas'd to bless the Mirza Charoc with the birth of a son in the castle of Sultania, on whose countenance the splendor of the royal majesty seem'd already to appear. The astrologers took all necessary precautions to assure themselves of the moment of his nativity; and to find the point of his horoscope, that they might observe the centers of all the houses, and fix the situation of the planets and their aspects, they erected the figure of his horoscope. The house of his nativity was Leo, which has the sun for its lord, and which prognosticated the accomplishment of his [illegible] and his coming to the crown: the sun acqu[illegible] of Aries in which it was at that time, which signify'd that this prince wou'd be learned, and put the sciences in practice. When this news was brought to Timur, he was so overjoy'd, that his fury was abated, and he pardon'd the rashness which the inhabitants of Merdin had been guilty of, and even remitted the taxes they had submitted to pay. Then he gave the principality of the country [illegible] Sale, brother of Sultan Aisa. The next day the drums were beat for their departure, and Timur began his march. The roads were mark'd out for the regiments, and they march'd towards Bosri: the Mirza Mehemet Sultan took the road to Meidan; Timur march'd to Saour, being accompany'd by Mirza Charoc;

April 3. 1394.

Book III. Charoc; and the Mirza Mirancha went to Jaouec; the Emirs of Tomans, according to their ranks, took also different ways. Timur, at his arrival at the Tigris near Saour, sent by water the Mirza Mirancha to give necessary orders, as to the regulation of the garisons, and the receiving the revenues from the places conquer'd on the river. Timur crossed the Tigris, and encamp'd in a delightful meadow, where he staid three days with a design to return to Alatac. But he receiv'd advice from Mirza Mehemet Sultan, and Mirza Mirancha, that the inhabitants of the town of Caratche Coja, which is commonly call'd Hamed, priding themselves in the strength of their walls, refus'd to come before him to testify their obedience.

CHAP. XIII.

Timur marches to Amed or Hamed[3], *capital of the country of Diarbekir.*

TIMUR on information of the insolence of the men of Hamed, sent thither the Emir Gehancha; and on the 23d of January, 796, march'd in person against this city, where he arriv'd in two days and one night. The Tigris was so shallow, that the troops pass'd it on foot: then they encamp'd round the walls of the town, and besieg'd it. The strength of this place consists in the height of its walls,

[3] Amed or Hamed, Coratche Coja, Diarbekir, and Caramit, are the same place, situate on the Tigris in Mesopotamia, long. 74. lat. 38.

which

which are built of [illegible] and in their thick[illegible] Chap. xv.
ness, which is [illegible] chariots may pass a-
breast on [illegible] wall there is
built a[illegible] and the
hei[illegible] there is a terrace;
on [illegible] of which there is another lower
[illegible] barrelments. Due in this great wall
are two lofts, so that when it rains, or
[illegible] heat or cold, the soldiers may fight
[illegible] the lowest loft. Besides all this, there are
high towers distant from each other fifteen cubits. In the middle of the town there are two
[illegible] with many fine gardens, all which have been seen by the author [illegible]. It is reported the walls have been built four thousand [illegible] hundred years, and that the place was never been taken by force of arms. Indeed the Calif Caled, son of Velid, with a detachment of Mahometans during the first progress of religion *, after having besieg'd it a [illegible] enter'd it by the common-shore, [illegible]

* Mahometanism.

[illegible] Timur on [illegible]
[illegible] the soldier[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible] made a considerable breach.
[illegible] withstanding [illegible] de-
[illegible] besieg'd, made a second breach.
[illegible] force, and first enter'd the
[illegible] top of a tower, where he

[illegible]

Book III. gave marks of a singular valor. The other Emirs of Tomans also behav'd themselves [illegible] every one scaling the walls by different ways. Thus this place, which no conqueror had been able to take in four thousand years before, was carry'd in less than three days by the valor of Timur's soldiers, whose whole life was a continu'd scene of victorys, and prodigious events. They enter'd into this great city, and pillag'd it, setting fire to the houses; while most part of the garrison were kill'd in the breaches. The officers began to beat down the walls with axes and other instruments; but as they were built very strong, they work'd a long time with [illegible] able to demolish any considerable part; wherefore thinking it wou'd require an age to ruin our intirely, they only pull'd down the tops.

May 9. The last day of [illegible] d Yaic Souf with intending a rebellion, and designing to fly during night. Yaic was arrested, and being question'd by Timur, he confess'd his crime and discover'd his accomplices. But as he had several times before been convicted of the [illegible] crimes, which the emperor had pardon[illegible] had receiv'd favors from Timur, who [illegible] him a Toman, and made him the great[illegible] in the left wing of the army, next to the princes of the blood; his judges order'd him and his [illegible] to be laid in irons, and all his accomplices to [illegible] put to death; which was accordingly [illegible]

CHA[illegible]

Chap. [illegible]

[illegible] XIII.

[illegible] returns to Mawer.

TIMUR took the road to Alatze, and being in the meadow of Mehroum, the Princes and governors of the neighboring places, the chiefs of tribes, and the generals of troops, came from all parts to pay their respects to him, and submit to the taxes imposed upon them. After Timur had passed by Miafarekin, Bazman and Achma, he mark'd out the roads to the Emirs of Tomans, assigning guides to each. The Mirza Mehemet Sultan took the road to Tchepatchour, with the Emirs of the left-wing. Timur march'd by Sivasser, and continuing his road towards Sahra [1] Mouchi, where he encamp'd the [illegible] with Mirza Charoc, he came to [illegible] where, tho it was spring time, [illegible] horses, mules and camels [illegible] with the Emirs of the right wing, [illegible] the camp at Borlis [2], which the Mirza Mehemet Sultan did also with the left wing; and the princes of those parts submitted to Timur. [illegible] Mirza Charoc, prince of Borlis, who was the most sincere and courteous of all the princes of Caramania, and who had always shewed himself [illegible] Timur's interest, came to salute him; [illegible] presents to him of horses, which were

May 25.

[1] A little town [illegible] meadow, two days journy in length, at the same distance from Miafarekin, and three from Alatz, long. 74. 30. lat. 39. 30.

[2] A town near the [illegible] long. 75. 30. lat. 38. 30.

Book III. not only strong, but even swifter than stags [illegible] and [illegible] quick in action, [illegible] [illegible] as lambs: among the rest was a bay-horse, which outrun all Timur's swiftest horses. Timur was pleas'd with Hadgi Cheref, and treated him with the utmost civility, not only confirming him in his former possessions, but even joining other lands to his dominions; and to distinguish this prince above the other princes of Courdistan, he gave him a vest embroider'd with gold, as likewise a belt, and a sword with a gold handle. He then put Yaie Sour into his hands to be kept prisoner in his castle, and afterwards order'd that the roads should be cleared in writing.

CHAP. [illegible]

[illegible] prudent conduct [illegible] to enlarge his conquests.

TIMUR order'd Mehemet Dervish Bahadur to besiege the castle of Alengie, at whose approach Cara Yousef with his Turcomans fled: whereupon Timur, in council with the princes and Emirs, resolv'd that the troops should march in pursuit of 'em. He [illegible] Barhan Aglen general of the horse, ordering him, with Aibadge Aglen, Gehanchir [illegible], and other Emirs, to decamp from Sebzeh Kouch, and pursue these Turcomans to the very utmost, and so deliver the public from the disorders they committed by their robberys.

Then Timur resolv'd to exterminate all the Courdes princes, who refus'd to come before him, according to the orders sent [illegible]

Mirza

Mirza Miranscha [illegible] give quarter [illegible] to all who [illegible] their submissions to him [illegible] of them who [illegible] Indsiage Al[illegible] province to [illegible] country [illegible] to Alanks from which place the [illegible] and other inferior ones, to pay the [illegible] passing by Tauris [illegible] of Bedlisch [illegible] June 16.
the Mirza [illegible] to meet him, who [illegible] days journey between Maraud and Cai[illegible]
When [illegible] in the neighbourhood of Eclat, a [illegible] prince of Adelinous, one of his adherents, came to pay him his respects, [illegible] presents, which Timur received with pleasure, being persuaded of his sincerity, and zeal to his service. He then gave this prince the lordship of Eclat, with its dependencies, to be enjoy'd by him and his heirs [illegible]

[illegible] white [illegible] having [illegible] the ground [illegible] the [illegible] with the [illegible] hospitable [illegible] rode post [illegible] ment 'em, passing by Alichghend [illegible] that evening at Outch Kilisa, that is,

[illegible] of the antient Medes [illegible] 32, lat. 38. [illegible] Armenia or Chaldea, near the lake of Vanchaine [illegible]

[illegible] A town on the [illegible] of the lake of Van, between Aidgicher and Eclat.

[illegible] Gamidan.

Book III. the three churches of Alatac[1]. The morning the princesses and ladys arriv'd with the Mirza Pir Mehemet Gehanghir; and had the honor to salute Timur, and testify their joy at seeing him. But this their pleasure was mixt with bitterness, because of their complements of condolence for the death of the Mirza Omar Cheik; which no sooner the emperor's grief, who only said to [illegible] *God gave him to me, and God has taken him away.* Then Timur sent Timour Coja Bin of Arbelgai with a body of soldiers to assist Mehemet Dervich Berlas in the siege of the fortress of Alatac.

June 24. The 8th of Chaban Timur decamp'd for Kaiba, the inhabitants of which place came to [illegible] him of their submission, bringing with them all their treasures, horses and cattle, stuffs and provisions; and with tears in their eyes they besought him to grant them [illegible] which he did, and hearkn'd [illegible] [illegible] on all the [illegible] Then he departed for Gutch Kilissa, where he arriv'd in one night. Here Taharten, governor of Arzendgian, came to pay his respects to him, and on his knees made him large presents, after having given him assurances of his obedience. Timur being pleas'd with his conduct, accepted of his presents, and treated him with all imaginable honor and civility.

---

[1] A town of Courdistan, where are the three churches of Archmiadzin; the seat of the patriarch of Armenia, near Nachiwan, long. 77. lat. [illegible]

XIV.

The [illegible] town and fortress of Avenic.

MESSER, lord of Cara Mehemet and prince of Avenic, persisting in his design not to come to court, tho he had been summon'd by a circular letter; Timur resolv'd to make himself master of that town: he therefore sent before some [illegible] under the Mirza Mehemet Sultan, and on the 16th of Chaban march'd thither himself in person, still encamping in the meadow [illegible] from whence, passing by Kiotahia, [illegible] days he arriv'd at Avenic, before the Mirza. The soldiers immediately attack'd the town, and soon made themselves masters of the walls, which they raz'd. Upon this Messer [illegible] his men into the fortress, situate [illegible] mountain, all the pal- July 2.

[illegible] being also [illegible] side of the mountain, [illegible] fortify'd, that Messer and his Turcomans retiring'd [illegible] it to the hill, [illegible] he [illegible] of Tomans, and the bravest men of the army, dismounted, and march'd up as far as the gate, which they attacked, after having closely invested the castle. At the sound of [illegible] kettle-drums, the wandering [illegible] were [illegible] while the horsemen were mounted as high as the [illegible], to discharge arrows on those who [illegible] on the breast-work.

On the 19th of Chaban, Messer sent his son and his [illegible], with considerable presents, to Timur; to whom they said, That Messer, being satis- July 5.

Book II. satisfy'd of his inability to defend himself against the [illegible] officers of the imperial army, had resolv'd entirely to submit to the emperor's orders, but had not boldness enough to come out of the place; that if Timur wou'd grant him quarter, he wou'd not fail for the future of behaving himself like a faithful servant, in whom he might confide. Timur gave these envoys a handsome reception, presenting each with a vest and a gilt belt; telling them that he freely pardon'd Meller, and that he might come out of the place without any fear, since he had promis'd him quarter. The envoys carry'd back this answer to Meller, who had done what [illegible] had [illegible] but he was [illegible] the [illegible] given him [illegible] self, discharging on a [illegible] of arrows on our men [illegible] [illegible] to speak to Meller [illegible] where he cou'd suspect no danger; he demanded of him what unruly passion made him persist in his stubbornness, [illegible] commit hostilities against a prince, who [illegible] oblig'd the kings of the seven climates of [illegible] to lay down their arms, being satisfy'd of [illegible] inability to defend themselves against him. [illegible] told him he wou'd be a self-murderer [illegible] did not submit to Timur. "Consider, says he, "that all the kings of Asia have laid their "crowns and sceptres at this conqueror's feet; "that he has under him two [illegible] generals, "each of 'em equal in rank to the great [illegible] "kings, and that their lords bear so much respect "to him, that they are always ready to [illegible] "their lives in his service. The magnificence "and grandeur of this monarch [illegible]

"that of Feridon [illegible] Genchi [illegible], and the em-
"perors of China [illegible] to consider the
"danger you [illegible] in the
"strength [illegible] on your
"weak[illegible] these
"[illegible] to [illegible]
"[illegible] speedily out of the fortress. Cease
"[illegible] of my [illegible] in adviling you to
"escape the danger you are in.

On this advice Meller was in greater perplexity than before; he sent his son, and some his nearest relations named Sectimich, to the emperor with [illegible] very beautiful horses. With [illegible] they begg'd pardon, [illegible] they did [illegible]. But Timur perceiving [illegible] design to quit the place, caus'd [illegible] his attendants to be seiz'd.

[illegible] Chabah, the Mirza Mehemet Sultan rejoin'd the camp with his troops: during this night the soldiers scal'd the mountain as far [illegible] against which they made a vigor- [illegible] During this [illegible]

July 7.

[illegible]

[illegible] the end of [illegible]

[illegible] they c[illegible]

"[illegible] wise you are one of [illegible] relations [illegible] of all com-
"mands [illegible] if you [illegible] in danger,
"the men within this place, being deprived of
"their general, will lose all courage. This
"advice was not disregarded, tho it had been al-
"[illegible] in execution. Next morning Timur
"[illegible] son, who was but six years old,
"[illegible] before him [illegible] young prince
"[illegible] ground, [illegible] the emperor's
"[illegible]

[illegible] the third King of Persia.

feet,

Book II. feet, and in submissive terms begg'd pardon for his crime, promising that if his highness wou'd grant his father his life, he won'd go himself and fetch him to appear before the throne, with a sword and handkerchief in his hand. Timur being sensibly touch'd with these supplications, said, "Go, my child, I will give your father "his life, on condition that he makes his ap- "pearance before me." Then he gave the child a belt, and fix'd a collar of gold about his neck, sending him back to Mesler with a very obliging letter. When the young prince was introduc'd into the castle in this condition, the besieg'd murmur'd against their prince, and [illegible] Timur; they [illegible] at their departure gave [illegible] Yet Mesler won'd not [illegible] that he had been [illegible] to keep fix'd in their respective posts, and make ready the machines for casting stones, and other [illegible] arms. The assault began, our [illegible] ing the walls, where they were [illegible] with the stones cast by the besiegers, than [illegible] were by our arrows: but at length [illegible] from our machines ruin'd several [illegible] on the top of the mountain. [illegible] mother of Mesler came down from the fortress, and throwing her self at Timur's feet, besought him to pardon her son: she [illegible] that there was no probability that a handful of Tincmans should [illegible] to hold out against the emperor's army; and begg'd of him to consider that this dispute proceeded only from the fear her son was in, which would not let him know his own interest. Next day Timur [illegible]

a magnificent vest [illegible] mother, and told her that if her [illegible] he must immediately [illegible] The emperess [illegible] also [illegible] Timur had [illegible] imprudently [illegible] his stubbornness, order'd a hill of earth to be rais'd over against the wall of the place; whereupon the soldiers went to all places within three days journey of the town to cut down trees, which when they had conv'd to the fortress, Timur order'd [illegible] to assist the workmen in the Mejjour, for so they call this sort of work, [illegible] building. When the trees were [illegible] another, the spaces were fill'd up [illegible] and rais'd together; and thus the Mejjour was finish'd in a short time, and rais'd higher than the fortress. A regiment mounted it, and having prepar'd the machines, [illegible] so great a quantity of stones, that it [illegible] on their heads.

The 15th of [illegible] July 30.

[illegible] only the officers and garrison of [illegible] resolv'd to defend themselves to the last. Nevertheless, as the machines, which were continually discharging great stones, ruin'd the bulwarks, and beat down the [illegible] upon the soldiers heads, Messer being [illegible] that his endeavour to improve the affliance [illegible] Mirza Mahomet Sultan, who [illegible] to the emperor, to whom he made known [illegible] disquiet Messer underwent. [illegible] promis'd him quarter if he would [illegible] the lieutenant a vest at his departure. Notwithstanding all this, Messer con-

Book III. continu'd in his stubborn [illegible] resolv'd to defend himself. A company of [illegible] soldiers remain'd all night in the [illegible] of the mountain, and in the narrow and [illegible] accessible passages. Coja Chabin, one of the number, advanc'd with seven others, and mounting one of the arches, got to the foot of the wall of the place, where he lighted [illegible] the army. Upon this [illegible] Kodgi, and Amancha Cazundo, [illegible] the mountain in the same place, and came [illegible] very narrow arch; where the beat'd [illegible] em notwithstanding the darkness of the [illegible] Amancha being dangerously wounded, [illegible] to return to the camp [illegible] which is above three hundred [illegible] ray'd at the foot of the [illegible] with their hatchets, [illegible]

[illegible] thus put to [illegible] no longer stand their ground, but abandon'd Messer: some flung themselves [illegible] mountains, while the others exclaim'd [illegible] Messer, and in token of submission [illegible] arms on the ground, and begg'd leave [illegible] out of the place. Messer, to appease [illegible] his mother and son to Timur [illegible] was the day of their feast. [illegible] herself at the emperor's feet, [illegible] in her eyes begg'd her [illegible] Timur touch'd with her affliction, [illegible] her, that [illegible] her sake he won'd grant [illegible] life, [illegible] condition that he came himself to beg [illegible] otherwise, that after the reduction [illegible] place, he would give order, that [illegible] shou'd be slain, whose blood was [illegible] for vengeance against Messer. The mother of [illegible]

returned to the calif [illegible] much distracted, and [illegible] gave her son an [illegible] ; but he did not go [illegible] have consented to [illegible] had not [illegible] then [illegible] to extremity, [illegible] about his [illegible] and [illegible] his hands, still which on the second [illegible] the sixth he departed out of the fortress of Avenic : he had immediate recourse to the Mirza Mehemet Sultan, [illegible] intercede for him, promising for the future an [illegible] and [illegible] his dependants [illegible] so many signs of grief in their discourse, that the Mirza [illegible] and having comforted [illegible] to Timur. After obtaining favor of the emperor, tho' his proceedings had merited another kind of treatment. The arms were taken from the garison, and orders were given [illegible] Mosling and the Sultan Aisa prince of [illegible] and [illegible] [illegible] and [illegible] [illegible] the siege of Avenic, and distributed the [illegible]

CHAP. XLV.

[illegible] after the taking of Avenic.

[illegible] five days at Avenic, to feast [illegible] with plays and banqueting [illegible] the hands of the Emir [illegible] some good soldiers

Book III. dices with him; he decamp'd the seventh of Chawal. Next day his grand [illegible] being come from Samarcand, made him rich presents. Timur having inquir'd of him how publick affairs were in grand Tartary, Capchac, Gete, and Turkestan; the Emir told him, there was an entire tranquillity in those parts, where his majesty was lov'd and admir'd by all: and that the name of his conquests having spread as far as Gete, the inhabitants of Cara Cojah had abandon'd that kingdom. Timur entertain'd himself in his march with the rivers, till they came to the delicious meadow, where they went to encamp that night: the variety of flowers in this place charm'd the emperor; and as there was good grazing here for the horses, he [illegible] consented to stay some days. On the fourteenth of Chawal he entertain'd his court with a sumptuous banquet, and the [illegible] celebrated his [illegible] of Arzendgian on Taharten, to whom he gave advice in relation to the government of that place: then having presented him with a crown, and a belt of [illegible] rich'd with precious stones, he sent him into his own country.

Aug. 21.

Aug. 31.

Taharten made prince of Arzendgian.

During these transactions the Emir Zirec-kou, who was gone to besiege Aidin with a body of the army, according to Timur's orders, had given such considerable assaults upon that town, that the Emir Bayazid, in presence of it, found he cou'd not hold out against this general: upon which he demanded a [illegible], promising that as soon as the army shou'd decamp from before the walls, he wou'd go out of the town: Timur willingly consented to his proposal. Bayazid accordingly went out during the night without Zirec's knowledge, and came straightways to Timur's

mur's camp; he cast himself at the emperor's feet, and presented him with a horse of great price, whose [illegible] surpass'd those of Rocnie, [illegible] Rocnie. Timur received [illegible] with h[illegible] [illegible] the principality of his mare and his dependencys, and call'd home the troops, which had block'd it up, whom he prohibited from committing any acts of hostility. He sign'd patents to impower Bayazid to establish a governor in the town of Aidin, whom he sent thither, after having given him a vest, and a belt of gold.

CHAP. XLVI.

Timur sends an army into Georgia.

[illegible] advices of Mahomet [illegible] war on those who [illegible] from themselves; and sacrifice their [illegible] the increase of the faith. This caus'd Timur, who was a [illegible] Mussulman, to send Burhan Agha, Hadgi Seifeddin Gehanscha, and Osman Bahader, into Georgia, against Aesica prince of that country; while he himself shou'd march thither by the forests of Alatac with a very numerous [illegible] The Emirs [illegible] Georgia, divided [illegible] into several bodys, and wasted the country of those infidels. Timur before his [illegible] a hunting; in the evening [illegible] country was surrounded, and [illegible] growing less and less, the meadows [illegible] Timur began the

[illegible] the [illegible], and the [illegible] w'd in [illegible]; so that there was [illegible] officer [illegible] had not for his share at least [illegible]

After this hunting Timur continu'd [illegible] bad to Georgia in long marches, seldom dis[illegible]ing to repose himself; while his troops plun[illegible]der'd all who were of a different religion, and would not submit to the emperor. As Timur [illegible] intention in this war was God's glory, had every day some considerable blessing shower'd on him from heaven. Among oth[illegible] delights, when he arriv'd at Cars[1], he had pleasure of encamping in a very agreeable pl[illegible] where the green meadows, the infinite nu[illegible] of springs and rivulets of water clear as chry[illegible] the shady groves, delicious fruit-trees, the riety of balsams, and flowers, and the refreshi[illegible] zephyrs were so charming, that [illegible] d [illegible] more together in [illegible] the [illegible] [illegible] a prince, at whose birth all the court was transported with jo and the whole army made public rejoicings.

CHAP. XLVII.

The birth of Ibrahim Sultan, [illegible]

OF all the blessings that [illegible] being [illegible] certainly bestows [illegible] most learned doctors believe there is [illegible] ter than that of the consummation of [illegible]

[1] A town of Georgia, long. 40. 30. lat. 41. 25.

[illegible] tho

then it must be confess'd that the favor which [illegible] God grants to [illegible] their children [illegible] in virtue, [illegible] knowledge [illegible] his gr[illegible] [illegible] infinite [illegible] [illegible] [illegible]

Book III. [illegible] of any present; they [illegible] his [illegible]; which were, that he [illegible] endowed with all the virtues of a great [illegible] that from the cradle he shou'd wear [illegible] and become the greatest monarch; and that [illegible] crown shou'd remain for ever in his family, because the sun was at this time in the tenth house of [illegible]. Then [illegible] order'd him to be call'd Ibrahim * Sultan, that he might have for his patron that prophet who was God's chief favorite.

* Abraham.

CHAP. XLVIII.

Solemn repentance for the death of Ibrahim Sultan, son of Cheiran.

[illegible] for the plain of [illegible]meegheul, where he had information [illegible] the Emirs, who had been sent into Georgia after having gain'd several battels, conquer'd great part of the country, and taken many places from the Christians, were upon their return. Shortly after these Emirs had [illegible] to salute Timur; and having presented the spoils they had taken in Georgia, congratulated him on the birth of his prince grandson. After this, orders being given for preparations to be made for the banquet, provided tents and canopies, which they adorn'd with the most magnificent furniture of [illegible]. These tents took up two leagues of ground [illegible]

* Georgia.

* A village near the mountain Joudi in Georgia.

emperor's was under [illegible] sustain'd by forty [illegible] pillars, and an [illegible] in the midde [illegible] die of it [illegible] which was fill'd [illegible] all [illegible] doubted [illegible] placed on each side [illegible] of gold [illegible] which [illegible] gh the emperor sitting and sat upon the [illegible] with the sceptre in his hand, and the crown on his head. The music was placed in two rows; the vocal on the right, and the instrumental on the left. [illegible] Chaoux of a handsome mien, well equipt, and mounted on Arabian horses, [illegible] there in quality of stewards of the feast, who having dismounted, took golden [illegible] in their hands, and march'd in procession [illegible] dishes which were serv'd up. They were follow'd by cup-bearers, having in their hands chrystal bottles, and golden cups; with red wine of Chiraz, white of Mazendran, grey-[illegible] of Cafrouan, and water as clear as that [illegible] * Fountain in Mahomet's paradise.

[illegible] of charming [illegible] drown'd to the very ground [illegible] tribute to this illustrious [illegible] of [illegible] and [illegible] of [illegible] favour and [illegible] joy, they joined with the [illegible] in vows for the prosperity of the [illegible] the new-born prince. [illegible] Tounman Aga, who with his wife [illegible] Tounman Aga, who with his wife [illegible] illustrious Candafa, to be [illegible]

* Queen of the Amazons [illegible] famous Europe.

[illegible] young Mirza, which [illegible] made a magnificent [illegible] which lasted eight days, to return thanks [illegible] for the honor he did her. The Emir [illegible] Mubas was appointed his governor, and [illegible] Sadekin Aga, a relation of Timur, his [illegible]. When those entertainments, which lasted three months, were finished, Timur decamped from [illegible] the eighteenth of Zacade [illegible] ment to encamp on the top of a mountain [illegible]

Octob. 5. 1394.

CHAP. XLIX.

[illegible] the Mirza [illegible] of Samarcand.

Octob. 8. THE [illegible] to him [illegible] to apply himself to the doing acts [illegible] justice, and treating his people as his children; in which paternal advices Timur [illegible] great prudence. Then he embrac'd his [illegible] having kiss'd his eyes and head, took [illegible] of him. After Charoc's departure, [illegible] presses Serai Mulc Canum his mother [illegible] Aga, and other princesses and ladys of the court also departed with the baggage for Samarcand, which place they had orders to [illegible] having cross'd the Oxus * [illegible] Transoxiana came as far as [illegible] rise to receive him, with all the [illegible] to so illustrious a viceroy: and the [illegible] lin'd with people from the Gihon [illegible] Kech. The Emir Solimancha, [illegible] the Mirza was near Kech, came to [illegible]

* Gihon.

with great ceremony [illegible] city of Samarcand. Chap. ye. was adorn'd [illegible] the artisans, brought th[illegible] [illegible] to travel g[illegible] [illegible] fo[illegible] [illegible] with [illegible] [illegible] been taken from [illegible] the [illegible] the emperor had won; and the ground [illegible] tin and scarlet cloth. Cosroes made his entry amidst the people's acclamations; and as soon as he was [illegible] the throne, he order'd [illegible] according to the example of the just Anoschirvan, [illegible] heralds to proclaim that the inhabitants [illegible] repair to him for justice against [illegible] oppressors. Thus he began to exercise the function of vicerov, exactly following his father's advices; so that the contented happy people had cause to thank God for giving 'em so equitable [illegible] whom the weak cou'd live in as

* Cosroes.

CHAP. I.

Timur goes in person to the Georgian war.

TIMUR's zeal for religion made him undertake the war himself in Georgia: [illegible] decamp'd; and entered the [illegible] Christians, routing in pieces all [illegible] ravaging their country. Their [illegible] lands of certain Georgians, [illegible] Caratag, that is, the black buckler, who [illegible] in rastles situate on very steep mountains by the assistance of heaven.

Book III. [illegible] he vanquish'd these enemies, burnt their habitations, and plunder'd their goods; [illegible] cut 'em all to the sword. [illegible] in their plains to repose [illegible] and from thence march'd before Teflis [illegible] conquering his way down to the plain of Cheki [illegible] where he encamp'd several days. From thence [illegible] Seif Eddin, the Tartarian [illegible] were sent to pillage the [illegible] the prince David [illegible] this prince's country, made a [illegible] with the inhabitants prisoners, which they brought to the camp. Timur also sent [illegible] of Darbend, with a [illegible] of Georgia; the [illegible] for fetching in their parts, [illegible] of Cheki, prince of [illegible]

[illegible] his country, and pillag'd his goods, return'd to the imperial camp. At this time advice was brought by the way of Chirouan, that the troops of Tocatmish Can having for their generals Ali Aglen, Elias Aglen, Aisa Bei, Yagli Bei, and other great [illegible] of Capchac, had pass'd by Derbend [illegible] vagid some countrys dependent on [illegible]. Timur having learnt this news by the Uzbecs, said, It was better that the prey should run into the nets, than that the hunters should go in search of it; and that there was not the least fear from the army of Capchac. Upon this he immediately departed from Cheki, to

* Capital of Georgia, long. 83. lat. 43.
* A town between Teflis and the river Cyrus.

meet

[illegible] their rash inhabit[illegible] Capchac, with [illegible] their regiments [illegible] Chap. II.

all his Emirs, [illegible] shamefully The enemy [illegible] fled. [illegible] of the Abec [illegible] * Cyrus. [illegible] † In Georgia. [illegible] of Mal[illegible] on the plain of Calis [illegible] near the [illegible] of Bagdad. Timur, who extremely lov'd the princes his children, [illegible] Tartania for them, the empresses and the [illegible] to come to the imperial camp; which they accordingly did, [illegible] passage crossing the Caspian Mire, [illegible] the siege of Alengic, [illegible] being at Babi, he was informed that he had a son born to him, whom the [illegible] Aigel. Mirza Pir Mehemet, [illegible] ing the [illegible] Sevindgis, Hassan Jagadseul, and Ali Bei son of Aisa, at Chiraz, departed thence, and join'd the imperial camp in the winter-[illegible] where they pass'd the season agreeably [illegible] furnishing new diversions.

CHAP. II.

Timur marches a second time into Capchac against Tokatemish Can.

[illegible] winter was [illegible] on the decline, [illegible] Timur departed for Capchac, at the [illegible] powerful army, to make war on Tokatemish Can, who had not only re-establish'd [illegible] in his kingdom, but was daily making irrup-

* A town in Georgia, [illegible]

Book III. [illegible] Timur's dominions to repair the loss of his last defeat. Timur distributed among his soldiers several sums out of his treasury; and sent the ladys with the baggage to Sultania, to which place also came Tamerlane's Mulc Aga, while the emperessa Sarai Malec Khanum and Touman Aga, with the young princess departed for Samarcand. Timur then dismissed the envoys, Moulla Pehlavan, to whom he gave the government of Sulemjia, in conjunction with the Iranchi governor of the fortress. The fourteenth

March 10. 1395. of Jemazi-ul-ewel 797, the army began their march in order of battel; with their wings displayed, and as their facys were turn'd towards the [illegible] armys marching. While they were [illegible] winter quarters, the [illegible]

[illegible] the world; I demand of you, whom the devil of pride hath turn'd from the right way, what is your design in passing beyond your bounds? [illegible] put you upon such vain undertakings? [illegible] you forgot how in the last war your [illegible] and effects were reduc'd to nothing [illegible] certainly behave yourself with great [illegible] since you oppose your own benefit. Is it possible you can be so ignorant that they who have testify'd their friendship to me, have been receiv'd with respect, and drawn great advantages from the [illegible] have made [illegible] and which I have inviolably [illegible]

[illegible]

[1] Among the Tartars, the left wing is more honorable than the right.

[illegible]

[illegible] my [illegible] only been under [illegible] but also been [illegible] to in the [illegible] with [illegible] or [illegible] to me. [illegible] tenc'd both my [illegible] and [illegible] [illegible] you have read this letter, don't delay [illegible] sending me an answer; but let me know your resolution, either for war or peace. This letter was [illegible] by Chamaldine [illegible] a man of great wisdom, experience, and address, [illegible] in contriving [illegible] executing it with vigor; he [illegible] with the maxims of [illegible] and with the merits [illegible] of that country, and in all ways succeeded in the negotiations by his eloquence, and forcible ways of arguing*. Because of these qualifications he was sent into Capchac, [illegible] was admitted into the [illegible]

* He was afterwards Timur's prime minister.

ted in [illegible]

He afterwards [illegible] fortune [illegible] nature, that [illegible] the [illegible] and being persuaded of the necessity of peace, he was [illegible] consenting to it, and [illegible] passion of Timur. He had without doubt concluded a treaty, if his courtiers and [illegible] whose interest it was to make war, [illegible] persuaded him against it, and by that [illegible] the ruin upon the state. Tocatmich, [illegible] evil sentiments of his courtiers, [illegible] imperious answer to Timur, by the hands of Chamseddin, to whom he made a present of a [illegible] mule. This ambassador, at his arrival [illegible] the river of Samnour,

[illegible] the emperor a [illegible] his embassy, and presented to him [illegible] letter. Timur was enrag'd at the [illegible] reasons which he alledg'd in his answer, and at the same time gave orders for the review of his army, which he commanded to get ready with expedition.

CHAP. [illegible]

Timur reviews his army.

[illegible] permitted his soldiers to repose [illegible] all to be [illegible] next day in order of [illegible] the place of the review, [illegible] of the emperor [illegible]

[illegible] the great cry: the Caboul of the left wing was at the foot of mount Alburz, and that of the right wing on the banks of the sea; and from one to the [illegible] were posted a great number of soldiers [illegible] line. It is reported that from Genghiz [illegible] time so numerous and well equip'd an army [illegible] not been seen in those parts; nor do [illegible] of any such in the histories of the [illegible] While Timur review'd this formidable army, all the Emirs and principal officers of [illegible] Tomans on their knees admir'd [illegible] of their fidelity, and resolution to sacrifice their lives in his service, for which he encourag'd them with the [illegible] affecting speeches. After the review, he return'd

* Van-guard.

* Different from the river of the same name, which is a branch of the Tic in Capchac.

[illegible] the main body [illegible] the drums and [illegible] and the [illegible] drew [illegible] place [illegible] the [illegible] the Tomanis, the [illegible] pieces of thousands, and [illegible] their respective posts, and march'd in order of battel with the utmost display'd. When the army had gain'd by Derbend, advice was brought that the rest of Tocatmish's party, with Gelaleh, was at the foot of mount Alburz. Tar[illegible] fortune, according to the [illegible] end of a battel usually succeeds [illegible] order'd that that hord shou'd [illegible] march'd thither immediately, [illegible] upon them [illegible] unarm'd purpose. They intrenched [illegible] so that of the thousand who were there, scarce one e[illegible]'d; and after they had pillag'd their houses, [illegible] fire. At the same time advice [illegible] Tocatmish [illegible] the sight of [illegible] Tocatmish, [illegible] had [illegible] great body of foots, [illegible] to oppose against the head of a very formidable [illegible] Timur, on his arrival at Terki, [illegible] were encamp'd on the banks of the [illegible] thereupon he charged with some cho[illegible] and having march'd all night, he [illegible] upon the foots in the morn-

[illegible] 85. lat. 43. 30.

[illegible] Terki, which falls into the Caspian.

ing,

[illegible] neither time to [illegible] for battle, nor [illegible] to fly; so that our men [illegible] slaughter of 'em. Timur [illegible] his [illegible], and encamp'd on the banks of [illegible] vendge[4], till the remainder of his troops [illegible] up to him. In the mean time Tocatmich, at the head of a formidable army, encamp'd on the banks of the Terk[5]. His camp was [illegible] on all sides, and the regiments were [illegible] with great bucklers and [illegible] which served for walls. Timur drew up his army for battle, and [illegible] to attack Tocatmich, who [illegible] thro fear, [illegible] to gain a more advantageous [illegible] and retur'd back [illegible] having found a passage [illegible] ie with [illegible] the Country [illegible] [illegible], march'd along the sides of the river Terk, towards the country of Coulat[6], where there were provisions in abundance, that our soldiers might not [illegible] pursue the enemys without any obstacle. Our scouts having brought advice that Tocatmich had rally'd his troops, and [illegible] by the lower part of the river, [illegible] resolv'd to give him battle, [illegible] order, and always preferring the [illegible]

[4] A river between the Terk and the [illegible] which falls into the Caspian.

[5] The same as the Tanais: [illegible] in mount [illegible] and falls into the Caspian.

[6] A river in Caspiac between the Caiser and the Terk, [illegible] arises in mount Albuza, and falls into the [illegible]

[6] A fortress in Georgia, near Tiaus, [illegible]

wheel'd about towards the part where the ene- Chap. 53.
my advance'd [illegible] encamp'd in [illegible]

[illegible] 797, April. 21. 1395.
[illegible] Ta-
[illegible] d by a direct [illegible] Then orders were given that every one should remain that night in their re-
spective posts, and be [illegible] [illegible] Moreover were also given that no [illegible] should [illegible] [illegible] no [illegible] [illegible] Tokta-
Aliaf [illegible] who till that time had faithfully [illegible] went over to the enemy: But the [illegible] of such men is of small im-
portance, seeing no one is more but thoughtlessly

[illegible]

Battel between [illegible]

[illegible] April. 22. 1395.
[illegible] which
[illegible] two armies bearing against each o-
[illegible] by the [illegible] wings.
[illegible] commanders display'd their standards, and
[illegible] the em-
[illegible] Tamur-lenk's army in-
[illegible] placing at the head those who
[illegible] Schader: the infantry being
[illegible] were plac'd before
[illegible] Mehemet-Soltan com-
[illegible] strengthen'd
with

[illegible] with the bravest men of the [illegible] our again[illegible] rode before the soldiers, to [illegible] had all their arms, which were [illegible] clubs, maces, and nets to catch men. [illegible] mounted on the head of twenty-seven [illegible] company of the body of re[illegible] Tim[illegible] rang'd his army over-against [illegible] enemies. The light be[illegible] on each side, [illegible] and fill'd with the cries of [illegible] [illegible] wing, which rode [illegible] from [illegible] upon [illegible] with his [illegible] [illegible] Timur had with him [illegible] enemy, who being arriv'd at their main body, rally'd, and attack'd ours so briskly, that they flew several, and [illegible] give ground, and retreat fighting as far as [illegible] Timur [illegible] by this means the company [illegible] together, and broke their ranks [illegible] away, by his example and [illegible] The enemy were willing to make [illegible] tage of this disorder; for [illegible] they [illegible] upon our [illegible] Timur was posted. They boldly [illegible] sun [illegible] and now withstanding his [illegible] resistance [illegible] courage'd with a thousand marks of [illegible] dity, wherein his arrows were all [illegible] his half-pike broke to shatters, [illegible] always in action, they had [illegible] the Emir Cheik Noureddin, retire'd to [illegible] his

his life. For his mas[illegible] did not dismount: [illegible] by him [illegible] who kept off [illegible] Azad, his bro[illegible] made [illegible] Ali Bed came [illegible] Timur's [illegible] horse, and posted himself [illegible] Noyan [illegible] Timur [illegible] with his [illegible] Zizar [illegible] with his [illegible] and the Noyan all encouraged, and made the great cry; and Ulzain, who advanced with his company, posted himself behind [illegible] their troops [illegible] stood their ground against the enemy, whose soldiers made continual attacks upon ours, and [illegible] actions of the utmost vigor: nevertheless [illegible] did not make our infantry give [illegible] of arrows. [illegible] Azad, who [illegible] Meduing [illegible] the rear of the emperor's [illegible] upon the enemy, and with their [illegible] and lances received their [illegible] and [illegible] to [illegible] Seldus [illegible] commanded the vanguard of our [illegible] himself more [illegible] for the [illegible] vanguard was commanded [illegible] Bacchi Coja, [illegible] behind him [illegible] his life, he

[illegible] with his Tomans, and holding [illegible] before him [illegible] life, they put them[illegible] charge their arrows, and defended [illegible] with an unshaken resol[illegible] against the [illegible] whose number [illegible] d. But [illegible] they fell upon our [illegible] g, some [illegible] tars and [illegible] And n[illegible] [illegible] the troop for [illegible] came from another [illegible] said, [illegible] was to [illegible] the enemy, who [illegible] Chinese men, [illegible] on the other [illegible]

[illegible] Emir's [illegible]

[illegible] with his Toman upon the main body, which he put to flight, after having [illegible] several, and signaliz'd his valor, [illegible] young, to the honor of the emperor [illegible] Yaghibi Behadir, a favorite and [illegible] of Toratmich Cas, being [illegible] himself by some great action [illegible] troop of brave men, and [illegible] that he day'd to the chamber [illegible] pair's army: he even call'd [illegible] voice [illegible] Eleum Behadir, and [illegible] place [illegible] in the field of [illegible] that [illegible] there [illegible] of [illegible] retreat, that [illegible] waiting [illegible] he march'd [illegible] at the head [illegible] man: [illegible] to blows, and having [illegible] their sabres, they fell upon the [illegible]

and poignards, and grappled with one another like two enrag'd [illegible]. The soldiers of their Tomans imitated their chiefs, and fought hand to hand; [illegible] blood flow'd in this place like a torrent, and never were such furious blows given before. At length Osman Behader had the advantage; he overthrew his enemy, and fell upon his troops with so much fury, that he entirely defeated 'em. All our generals in their respective posts perform'd their duty so well, that after a long obstinate battel, they made the enemy give ground, and put 'em into disorder. Yet we were not certain of the defeat till the flight of Tocatmick Can, who shamefully turn'd his back, with the princes of his blood, that is, of the race of Touchi, the Nevians, or foreign princes dwelling in the kingdom of Capchac, and the Emirs and generals of his troops. Then all our men rally'd, and joining together, fell upon the enemy, loudly crying out, *Victory!* They slew a vast number of 'em, and afterwards [illegible] a great many of those whom they took alive.

Timur finding himself sure of the victory, got off his horse, and humbly knelt down before God, to return thanks for the assistance he had given him, acknowledging that he had gain'd the victory entirely thro his goodness. The princes the emperor's sons, and the other princes and Emirs, also on their knees congratulated Timur, and cast gold and precious stones upon him. This monarch embrac'd 'em all one after another, kissing 'em with praises and thanks. They departed from this place; and when they were come to the bank of the Corai[1], Timur

[1] A river in Comelkan in Georgia, which falls into the Caspian, near the city of Yeki.

Book II. got an exact information of all who had bravely serv'd the public on this important occasion. He granted great favors to the Emir Cheik Nourreddin, who had with so much zeal exposed his life, to save his prince: he gave him a more honorable and advantageous post than any he had possess'd before, presented him with a horse of great price, a vest of gold brocade, a belt set with precious stones, and besides all this, a hundred thousand Dinars Copeghi. Timur distributed his treasures among the Emirs and captains, who had perform'd extraordinary actions in this battel; and that every one might be contented, he made a general promotion of all the officers of the army.

CHAP. LIV.

[illegible] Can, and [illegible] a new Can of Capchac.

TIMUR left with the baggage the great booty taken after this victory; and as the Mirza Miranchа had been wounded in his head by a fall of his horse before the battel, he [illegible] this prince to remain behind to be cured of his wound; and he left with him, the [illegible] Adghiar Berlas, and Hadgi Seifeddin. Then he march'd at the head of his best troops in pursuit of Tocatmich: but when he was arriv'd at the Volga, this Can having already passed it, he staid some time on the bank of the river at a passage call'd Touratou. Then he order'd Coiritchac Aglen, son of Ourous Can, who was an officer of his court, to come before him; he gave him for his houshold-troops the squadrons of [illegible]

brave Uzbecs, who were enroll'd in his service; he order'd an equipage worthy of a great emperor to be prepared for him; he gave him a vest of gold brocade and a belt of gold: and after having [illegible] him emperor of Capchac, and all the empire of Touchi, he made him cross the Volga. This new Can us'd all his endeavors to get together the troops of his nation, which were dispers'd every where, and to govern his new subjects. In the mean while our men closely pursu'd the fugitives as far as Oukec [1]; they slew a great number of those who were in the rear. And as the enemy had our Zagataians behind 'em, and the Volga before 'em, several were made captives, while the others cross'd the river upon floats. Tocatmich seeing himself thus closely pursu'd, abandon'd his effects, houses, and all his possessions, preferring his life before his kingdom; he fled with his most faithful servants, into the unknown and impenetrable forests of Boular [2]. Our army march'd by the west [illegible] to the place where it had been in the [illegible] side, and where it had [illegible] every place, which is near the dark ocean, or [illegible] sea. At their return the soldiers pillag'd a great part of Capchac, and brought an immense booty to Timur; as gold, silver, furs of Condoz, rubies and pearls, young boys and girls of great beauty, spotted furs of Vachacz, and even live Vachacz, whose pace is extremely grave tho swift; besides several sorts of animals unknown among the Zagataians.

[1] The last town of the dependences of Serai, long. 84. lat. 47. in Capchac upon the Volga; between Bulgar and Cas[illegible] [illegible] each.

[2] [illegible] Bulgaria, at the [illegible] Siberia, along the river Ca[illegible], [illegible] sea.

The Mirza Mirancha, and the Emirs who staid behind with the baggage, join'd Timur in a place nam'd Youlueluc Azucluc *. And as in this expedition most part of the Emirs of the empire accompany'd Timur, and this prince had a design to advance into the remotest parts of Capchac, that his name might be known in the western kingdoms; he us'd his precautions with regard to the kingdoms he left behind, where there were not Emirs sufficient to guard 'em, on whom he con'd entirely rely: whereupon he sent to Chiraz the Mirza Pir Mehemet, son of Omar Cheik, with six thousand horse; and to Samarcand the Emir Chamseddin Abbas, with three thousand men, accompany'd by Cayas Eddin Tercan; because he belong'd to his Tumman. These Emirs immediately set out; and when they had pass'd Derbend, and were come to Ardebil, they receiv'd news from Tauris, that Cara Yousef had again assembled [illegible] and encamp'd in the neighborhood of Alatac, designing to march to Coi. The Emirs Chamseddin and Cayaseddin continu'd their road towards Samarcand; but the Mirza Pir Mehemet, with the Emirs Abousaid Berlas, Bekich, Dolet Goja, and Toukel Behader, being come to Tauris, assembled the troops of the neighborhood, and were join'd by the Emirs of the Mirza Miran Cheik, who had remain'd at Tauris.

Pir Mehemet receiv'd all the troops he con'd assemble together, and set out with a resolution to attack the Turcomans. Being arriv'd at Coi, he there join'd Tezic and Jalic, who with their soldiers follow'd the army. All

* A village in the desart of Astracan.

place was brought [illegible] of Cara Yousef Chiqua were in the [illegible] The Mirza made half- [illegible] being arriv'd at this d[illegible] [illegible] Cara Yousef, whe[illegible] [illegible] Bend Mahi*, to amuse [illegible] Mirza's approach; which alarm'd this robber-lyr. The Mirza purs'd him, and was join'd at Bend Mahi by Malek Azeddin, [illegible] Courde, whom we have before mention'd. They purs'd him together three days, and encamp'd; they likewise sent Emirs after him, who went as far as Avonic, without being able to join him. Then the Mirza Pir Mehomet departed to return home; he pass'd by Tauris to Sultania, where the princess Canzade gave him a magnificent entertainment and a vest: and he afterwards set out for Chiraz, according to the emperor's orders.

CHAPTER IV.

Timur marches into Europe; [illegible] the western Cipchac, as also Muscovy and Russia.

AS Timur's courage would not permit him [illegible] to be satisfy'd with an enterprize, till he had carry'd it to the utmost perfection; so he was not contented with having chas'd Tocatamisch out of his empire, and having exterminated his army: but the same courage made

* A [illegible] of mountains, at present the frontiers between [illegible] and Turky. The French translator has pass'd over.

* A little river, where they shut up the fish of the lake of Van, by a contrivance in the nature of a sluice. The French translator has cross'd it.

[illegible] him taken a resolution to [illegible] the rest of Asia on that side, and reduce to [illegible] the nations of these western frontiers. According to this generous sentiment, he enter'd the great desart which leads into Europe, at the river Ouzi, or the Boristhenes. He gave the command of the scouts to the Emir Osman, who being furnishd with good men for that purpose, march'd before. He found Bikyaroc Aglen at a town nam'd Mankirmen on the Boristhenes, with some other Uzbec Tartars who resided there; he cut almost all of 'em in pieces, and pillag'd their houses, as well as the goods of Bikyaroc, who with a great deal of difficulty sav'd himself with some of his Uzbecs. Bach Temour Aglen and Aktan, cross'd the Boristhenes, and fled into the country of Hermedai[1], the inhabitants of which were their enemys; and did [illegible] mage than our men cou'd [illegible] d [illegible] pillag'd [illegible] oman of [illegible] that country, and fled towards the kingdom of Roum in Anatolia, and fix'd it self there in the plains of Isra Yaca. Temur quitting the country on the Boristhenes, march'd towards Muscovy and grand Russia, he arriv'd at the river Tanais[2]: and the army again overtook Bickyaroc, who had the river before him, and our army behind him. Our soldiers pursu'd him as far as Carasou[3], a town of grand Russia, which they entirely pillag'd. Bikyaroc finding himself so closely press'd, was constrain'd to abandon his wives and children to the con-

[1] A country between the Boristhenes and the Danube.

[2] Or Don, a river which falls into the Palus Mæotis, near the town of Azac.

[3] A town of Muscovy, otherwise call'd Coresch, on the frontiers of Poland.

queror, and fly with his eldest son: he was o-
bliged to retreat [illegible] our troops in
the night-time [illegible] without being
known. [illegible] brought to Timur his
wives, children, and domestics. The emperor
ordered tents to be erected for 'em to lodge in;
and after having treated 'em very civilly, he
made 'em presents of cattel, horses, stuffs, fur-
niture, and other rarities, and sent 'em back to
Bikyaroc. The Mirza Miranchá, Cohancha
Behader, and the other Emirs, also went with
their Tomans and Hezares to ravage the western
countrys. They exterminated Bic Coja, and
other Emirs dependent on Capchac, as also the
subjects of Ourcoul, whom they pillag'd and
sacked. They over-run all the great kingdom of
Bulgary, and of Ourousdgic, or little Russia,
where they took prodigious droves of cattel, and
abundance of women and girls, of all ages, and
of an extraordinary beauty and shape. Then
[illegible] in person to the city of Moscou,
capital [illegible] which his soldiers pil-
lag'd, as they [illegible] places dependent on it, defeating [illegible]
pieces the governors and princes of these parts.

Timur marches to Moscou, and pillages it.

The Russians and Muscovites ne'er beheld their
kingdom in so bad a condition, their plains be-
ing cover'd with dead bodys. The army en-
rich'd themselves with whatever precious things
they cou'd find in this vast country: as ingots of
gold, silver blades; great quantitys of flax of An-
tioch very much esteem'd; cloth wove in Russia
with a great deal of skill and nicety; skins of
Condoz full of points, of which each soldier
had whole mule-loads; vast numbers of sables
[illegible] jet, and ermins, with which every
person in the army was sufficiently furnish'd, both
for his own and his childrens lives; as likewise
skins

Book III. skins of Yarcach, grey, and white spotted like tygers skins. They also brought many, many furs of grey, and skins of red foxes; and an infinite number of young colts, which had not yet been shod. It would be tedious to give a detail of all the booty they obtain'd in this great country.

The Mirza Mehemet Sultan pillag'd all the province subject to Cabendgi Caracul: he got together all the hordes and nations who had serv'd in the enemy's army during the last campain, as those of Courbonca, Pirlan, Yurkun, and Kerlangi, who for fear of falling into the hands of our men wander'd up and down in the desart; he pillag'd their effects, carrying away their wives and children captives.

Timur, having got some guides, departed from those quarters towards Batchimkin[illegible] wards. When he was arriv'd at [illegible] the Tanais, he sent [illegible] Mirza [illegible] who had been out to make inroads in the enemy's countrys along the bank of the Tanais. Timur order'd that the Mahometans of Azac shou'd be separated from the others, and left at liberty; but that the other inhabitants of the town shou'd be put to the sword, and their houses pillag'd and burnt.

Batchimkin is the Palus Mæotis.

A town at the mouth of the Tanais, long. 74. lat. 52. 30.

CHAP. LVI.

Timur makes war in Circassia.

TIMUR departed from Aaae for Couban, and as the Circassians had destroy'd their meadows and pasture-grounds between those two towns, a great number of the horses of the army perish'd. They suffer'd this want of forage between seven and eight days; but at length, having pass'd many waters and marshes, they arriv'd at Couban, where they staid some time. Timur sent the Mirza Mehemet Sultan [illegible] Miranchá, the Emir Gehancha and other Emirs, to make inroads in Circassia, with orders to return as soon as they had made themselves masters of that kingdom. These princes [illegible] thither with expedition, pillag'd all the [illegible] brought away an infinite [illegible] to Timur's camp, to whom they [illegible] of their expedition.

[illegible] Capital of Circassia, long. 74. lat. 47.

CHAP.

CHAP. LVII.

Timur marches to Alburz Coub, or mount Caucasus.

TIMUR being satisfy'd with the conquests of Muscovy and Circassia, return'd with his whole army towards mount Alburz. Then some sorry fellows, who are never wanting in the courts of princes, accus'd the Emir Ostan Abbas before Timur, of crimes which had no foundation of truth. These slanders were believ'd by the emperor, who had before suspected the worth and credit of Ostan. He ordered that this illustrious Emir shou'd be put to death, who on so many occasions had giv[illegible] marks of his courage [illegible]

[illegible] enough to destroy the infidels, march'd towards Bouraberdi, to attack Buraken, prince of the nation of As: and as there were forests on this road, he order'd 'em to be cut down, in order to make a free passage. There he left the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin with the baggage, and march'd himself to mount Alburz, where he several times attack'd the Georgians, took their castles, and made himself master of their fortify'd defiles, which they imagin'd inaccessible: he put a great number of these Georgians to the sword, after having ruin'd their fortresses, and enrich'd his soldiers with their spoils.

Timur came down from the mountain, very much pleas'd with the advantages he had gain'd. He return'd to his camp, and order'd a feast in joy of his victorys: whereupon the pavilion of [illegible]cere-

ceremony was erected, the cords of which were of silk, the pillars of gold, and the pins of silver; the throne on which he sat with his crown on his head, was of gold enrich'd with precious stones. The princes and great lords were rang'd before him ready to receive his orders. The inside of the tent was sprinkled with an odoriferous rose-water; and then the tables were plac'd, and the meats serv'd up in dishes of gold. After they had done eating, the bottles were unstop'd, and the cups open'd; and every one drank wine of Georgia, while they were entertain'd both with vocal and instrumental music. A whole week pass'd in these pleasures, and every one repos'd himself from the fatigues of the campain. At length Timur chose the time of the moment to decamp, which the astrologers found to be most fortunate; which was done at the sound of kettledrums and trumpets.

Chap. 18.

CHAP. LVIII.

Timur attacks the fortresses of Coula, Tanis, and others.

TIMUR again left the body of the army, and went to march to the fortresses of Coula and Tanis in Georgia, which are inhabited by the same people as those in mount Alburz, and who had retreated into strong places situate on steep mountains, the passages to which are almost inaccessible. They are so very steep that one is

* The Oriental Sophs drink all the end of their meals.

daz-

[illegible] dexaled in looking upon 'em, and especially that of Tiona, which is on the ridge of a high mountain, and is so very high, that the most skilful archer can't hit it with his arrow; which was the reason that no one had ever before attempted the taking of it. Timur order'd the Toman of the Meerits who were in his army to come before him: these men are so dexterous in climbing up mountains, that they will go wherever the antilopes or roebucks do. He order'd 'em to look out for the most difficult ways to ascend the place. They went all round the mountain; but were not able to find out a single passage to the castle. This very much disquieted Timur; he thought sometimes upon this enterprize; and at length resolv'd to make a great many high ladders, which should be join'd to one another [illegible] against the first [illegible] some brave men [illegible] a troop of desperate-lost-hope, who were resolv'd to sacrifice their lives for the success of the action, being upon the top of this ridge, bound themselves with cords; and having fasten'd the ends of the cords to the ridge of the mountain, they came down even with the place, where the besieg'd overwhelm'd 'em with stones. Several on this occasion had the honor of martyrdom; but the others, encourag'd as much by a motive of religion as by the glory of dying in the service of the great Timur, took the place of the slain, and advanc'd with an extraordinary resolution. And as the whole army were continually mounting the ladders, and descending before the place, the besieg'd lost courage, and cou'd not hinder our men from getting to the castle, and making themselves masters of it. They put to the sword all the men of the nation of Ircaoua, who had rebell'd

[illegible] hither.

thither. The governors of Coula and Thous were also taken and put to death.

From thence he [illegible] towards the fortress of [illegible], whither Ourarcou, one of the great [illegible] of Caprisse, was retired. Timur in his way halted at a place nam'd Balaam[a], where there was so great a quantity of honey, that all the soldiers were provided with some. The emperor being willing to make the governor of this place, whose name was also Poulad, own his fault, wrote a letter to him, in which he declar'd, that if he did not send Ourarcou to him, who had fled for refuge into his place, he wou'd make him repent of it. Poulad, confiding in the strength of his citadel, slighted the menace, and sent Timur word, that he was in a good fortress, and ready to defend himself if attacked; that the lord Ourarcou having fled for refuge to him, he wou'd not deliver him up, but as long as he had one drop of blood left, he wou'd defend him to the utmost of his power. Timur having receiv'd this answer, was more incensed, [illegible] the [illegible] at any rate. There was in the way [illegible] wood, the trees of which grew so very close together, that the wind cou'd scarce find a passage thro it: whereupon he order'd the soldiers to fall down this forest, and make a way thro it; which they accordingly did for the space of three leagues. Then the standards being display'd, they began their march, and arriv'd at the place. The fortress is situate in a very steep [illegible] of mountains; and the inhabitants had kept up the way which leads to it, and plac'd a

[a] A town of Georgia, different from the town of Balaican, also in Georgia.

good

[illegible] good guard there, having resolv'd to sacrifice [illegible] their lives to their master's service, at the incitation of the assassins we have already mention'd. They rashly attack'd our soldiers first; but were soon defeated: our men enter'd the place, and having made themselves masters of it, put to the sword all who were capable of bearing arms. Outarcou fled, and escap'd by the defiles of mount Alburz. Our soldiers pillag'd the goods, and set fire to the houses of these miserable people, making the inhabitants slaves, and carrying away much booty.

Advice being brought that three companies of Georgians, who had fled, were posted on the top of a mountain, Timur march'd immediately against 'em, attack'd 'em, and after their defeat, caus'd 'em all to be cast into the fire. Then the Mirza Mirancha, who commanded the troops of the right wing, at [illegible] emperor that he had pursu'd O[illegible] gus to the very middle of mount Alburz, where he defended himself in a place nam'd Abasa. Timur hereupon immediately departed, enter'd the mount Alburz, and being encamp'd at Abasa they at length seiz'd on Outarcou, whom they brought before the emperor, who order'd him to be bound, and loaded with chains. The soldiers pillag'd all the habitations of this [illegible] and famous mountain, of which they [illegible] made themselves masters.

CHAP.

CHAP. LIX.

Timur marches to Semsem.

TIMUR march'd against the country of Semsem, where he no sooner appear'd than he became master of all this tract of ground. Mehemet son of Gaiour Can, to whom it belong'd, came to offer it at his feet, and beg the honor for himself and all his subjects to be of the number of his servants: and he was enrol'd among the officers of Timur's court. Several of the inhabitants of these places had fled into the mountain, and maintain'd their ground in steep places, where the foot soldiers were scarce able to stand upon their legs. Timur went himself in search of 'em, and mounted these difficult places, where his soldiers met with some resistance from the enemys, who were at length overcome [illegible] Timur, who order'd 'em to be bound, and [illegible] of the mountain. There were several places in Georgia, out of which neither horse nor foot cou'd get, without gently sliding down the steep hills. Timur's zeal for the honor of religion, and desire to obtain the rewards promis'd to those who make war for the faith, excited him to hazard his person in all these difficultys, and expose himself to the greatest fatigues. But at length he clear'd this country of the infidels who inhabited it, setting fire to their houses, and destroying their statues and churches. From

[illegible] and country in mount Albarz in Georgia.

thence

thence he march'd to mount [illegible] bar, which he gave [illegible]tage to his soldiers; and afterwards to Bichkunt [illegible], where he gave great largesses to the inhabitants, because they had long since offer'd him their services: he assign'd 'em lordships, with assurances that they need not fear any harm; for he prohibited his soldiers from wronging 'em in the least manner; that every one might see, that what he did was either a recompence for their merits, or a punishment for their crimes. He then march'd on farther, and ravag'd the countrys of the Cossacks of Jutour *, putting to the sword all these robbers: our soldiers brought from thence great quantitys of goods, and especially of hony, with which this country abounds. From thence they went to Alogaz Com [illegible], where the inhabitants of Mahacou and Cazicomouc came to make their submissions: he gave 'em a handsom [illegible] largesses, and promis'd [illegible] the [illegible] of his [illegible]. Then there remain'd unconquer'd in Georgia only the isles, the inhabitants of which confiding in the water which surrounded 'em, had fortify'd themselves, and neglected to come and pay their devoirs to Timur: they were call'd Balecchian, that is to say, the fishermen. Timur sent troops to reduce 'em: and as it was winter, and the waters were froze above two cubits in thickness, the soldiers pass'd over, and fell upon the houses of these islanders, pillag'd their effects, and carry'd 'em away captive to the imperial camp.

* In Georgia.

[illegible] A town of Georgia, long. 78. lat. 43.

* A defile of mountains in Georgia.

CHAP. IX.

Timur marches into Capchac, and pillages the town of Hadgi Tercan[1], *or Astracan.*

OMAR Taban, Timur's lieutenant in Hadgi Tercan, having observ'd something treasonable in the conduct of Mahmoudi, who was the Kelanter[2], caus'd a memorial to be writ of it, which he sent to the emperor, who on that advice took up a resolution to raze the town. He began his march during winter, which was very violent this year, leaving with the baggage the Mirzas Mehemet Sultan and Miranchа, and the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin. He went at the head of his troops thro the snows, and bad ways, caus'd by the severity of the season. Hadgi Tercan is situate on the bank of the Volga; the walls of this town are close to the river, which runs [illegible] the ditches of the town, and so serves for a fort part to cut. And as the river is frozen in winter, they usually build a wall of ice as strong as one of brick, upon which they bring water in the night, that the whole may congeal, and become one piece: to which wall they make a gate. The mention of this wall we believe will not displease the reader, because it is so extraordinary. Timur being come near Hadgi Tercan, march'd before the army, and in the morning advanc'd before the town but with few men.

[1] A town of Capchac upon the Volga, long. 87. lat. 47.
[2] Governor of the town.

Mahmoudi was oblig'd to go out to meet the emperor, but Timur caus'd him to be arrested, and sent towards Serai under the conduct of the Mirza Pir Mehemet, and the Emirs Gehancha, Cheik Noureddin, and Coja Acbouga. He then enter'd the place, the inhabitants of which he treated very courteously; but at length he made 'em go out, and after having brought out the men and beasts, and all that was within, he caus'd it to be raz'd. The Mirza Pir Mehemet having cross'd the Volga which was frozen, thrust Mahmoudi under the ice, according to the orders they had receiv'd. Afterwards they went to Serai [a], capital of Capchac, which they set on fire, and reduc'd to ashes, after having made the inhabitants go out. This destruction of Serai was to revenge the insolence of the men of Capchac, who had ruin'd Zendgi [illegible] the palace of Sultan Cazan Can, [illegible] without a governor. [illegible] employ'd in the conquest of the kingdoms of Fars and Irac. After Timur had reveng'd himself of these traitors, he return'd to the winter-quarters; and tho' much as the violence of the cold had extremely weaken'd his army, so that most part of the horses perish'd, and the dearth was so great in the camp, that a pound of millet was sold for seventy Dinars Copeghi, an ox's head for a hundred, and a sheep's head for two hundred and fifty; the emperor order'd that the spoils taken at Hadgi Tercan and Serai should be divided among the soldiers. The Tarantchis had the

[a] Capital of Capchac, where the Tartar kings of Deche Barca, which is the Arabian name of Capchac, reside; it is situate on the Volga, long. 81. lat. 52.

[b] Two leagues from Carchi in Transoxiana.

care of this: they gave liberally to all those who had none; for [illegible] was very much eas'd. Chapter.

CHAP. LXI.

Timur returns to Capchac.

AS all the countrys of Capchac, Kefer[1], and the west and north of the Caspian sea, were reduc'd under Timurs dominion, and his troops had pillag'd and sack'd the towns and provinces of all these climates, as Oukec[2], Madsar, Little Russia, Circassia, Bachgoroi[3], [illegible] of Moscow, Azac, Couban, and Alan[4]; and as all the princes of these countrys had given assurances of their obedience, and the enemy who had escap'd with their lives were dispers'd [illegible] without either fire or houses: [illegible] of the year 798 of the Hegira [illegible] the Moufe, Timur decamp'd from his winter quarters in the desile of Bougar Cou, march'd into Derbend and Azerbijana; and at the sound of drums, and the acclamations of the soldiers, with the ensigns display'd, he cross'd the river of Tark upon the ice. As soon as he was come to Tarki, he left the baggage, rang'd his army in order of battel, and march'd towards Ucchagan, to attack the Christians there; he be- An. Dom. 1396.

*Hungary.

1. The country between Circassia and the Caspian sea.
2. A town of Capchac on the Volga, near Bulgar and Sa[illegible] long. 80. lat. 70.
3. [illegible] of Capchac, long. 80. 34. lat. 58.
4. [illegible] country between Circassia and the Black sea.
5. [illegible] of Georgia, [illegible] of Tarki.

[illegible] every thing they found in [illegible] return'd [illegible] spoils to the camp. [illegible] the place, and lordships, situate on the [illegible] of mount Alburz, were reduc'd to Timur's obedience, he decamp'd, and march'd with all his army, enrich'd with the spoils of Georgia and the northern countrys. Every soldier brought away five or six of the most beautiful young women of the country; and their waggons were fill'd with riches. The inhabitants of Zereghe-ran, the most skilful workmen in coats of mail, came to meet the emperor, and offer him their services, and presented him with several of the master-pieces of their art: his highness receiv'd 'em with all manner of civility, and was liberal to 'em. Those of the mountain Qiatagh also submitted, and came to beg quarter; which Timur granted, and dismiss'd 'em. Then he march'd to Derbend Bacou, where [illegible] gates, and caus'd the walls of [illegible] to be built in a [illegible]

The news of the emperor's return being spread every where, all the nations came to meet him; and he was receiv'd in triumph, with ensigns display'd. The citys sent to congratulate him upon his conquests with great pomp and ceremony, and made solemn plays and feasts to return thanks to God. The Cheik Ibrahim, prince of Chirouan, who had follow'd the court in this expedition, beg'd leave to set out before the rest. He enter'd into Chabran [1], and us'd all his care to prepare a great banquet, to receive the emperor in a magnificent manner: in effect, his regale was splendid, and worthy of the court: and he acquitted himself like a good

[1] A town of Chirouan between Derbend and Chamahi.

servant, and a complete courtier. From thence Timur march'd [illegible], and encamp'd on the bank of the river of Cyrus. The same Cheik Ibrahim, who was also prince of this town, a second time entertain'd the emperor and the company, making presents, showing to Timur, and assuring him of a perfect obedience to his orders. This monarch gave him a vest, and a belt of gold enrich'd with precious stones: he also distributed vests among the relations of this Cheik, and the principal officers of his houshold. He confirm'd him in the principality of Chirouan and Chamakhi, recommended to him the care of the town of Derbend, as a place of importance, and to inform himself of whatever shou'd happen near the frontiers of his principality. Timur spent some days in this fine country in plays and pleasures, cross'd the river of Cyrus, and went to encamp at Acam.

Chap. 64.

CHAPTER LXV.

Timur gives the government of Azerbijana to the Mirza Miranscha, who besieges Alenger.

TIMUR having given to the Mirza Miranscha the government of Azerbijana, and all the country situate between Derbend Bacou and [illegible], and from Hamadan to the country of the Ottomans; orders were sent by an express to all the officers of this Mirza, who had remain'd in Curassana, to march to Azerbijana with the Emirs and troops of his houshold. The

[1] Capital of Chirouan, long. 83. lat. 40.

Book III. emperor order'd him to govern this kingdom by himself, and to besiege Alengic. The Mirza, when he came to take his leave of the emperor, was tenderly embrac'd by him, who order'd the Mirza Roustem and Gehancha Behadur to accompany him with some good troops, and conduct him as far as Alengic. The Emirs and troops, who were order'd from Corassana, being arriv'd, he fix'd the countrys of Carabagh and Nacchivan, as far as Avenic, for the hords and habitations of the troops of his right wing; and the hords of his left wing were quarter'd in the countrys from Saouc Boulac [a] and Derguzin [b] as far as Hamadan [c].

CHAP. LXIII.

Taking of the town of Seirjan, [illegible] treat of Behlouel to [illegible].

WHILE Timur was busy'd in the campain of Capchac in the most northern countrys, the town of Seirjan suffer'd a siege of three years, wherein Chahchahan with the troops of Siستan were employ'd. This place was so press'd by the besiegers, that all the inhabitants and garison were slain in the assault, except Gouderz the governor and six other persons. At length, the place being deliver'd up, Gouderz was put to death for his obstinacy. Temouke Coutchin, governor of Yzed for Timur, left one of his domestic officers to govern this

[a] A town between Tauris and Sultania.
[b] A town near Sultania.
[c] A town of Irac Agemi, long. 83. lat. 35. 30.

town,

town, whilst himself went to the imperial camp. The Sultan Mehemet, son of Abousaid Tebesi, with some troops of Coraïsans, which had formerly been in the service of the princes of Mugaffer, and had fled at Yezd, were so ambitious as to form a design to revolt, tho they had been witnesses of the examples we have mention'd: he slew Temouke's lieutenant, and several of the great officers of Yezd, while others escap'd their hands by flight.

As the lieutenant had amass'd a considerable sum of mony, being the revenue of this province for two years, which he had put into the hands of the receiver-general of the finances of Timur's Divan, and besides had bought several loads of stuffs for the empress Serai Mulc Canum, which he had not yet sent to her; this insolent fellow seiz'd upon both the mony and stuffs, and made the taylors of the town come to him, whom he oblig'd to make him several vests of these stuffs, that he might clothe all the rebels who had listed themselves into his service, among whom he [illegible] the army. By this means he assembled an infinite number of robbers and villains, who were come here from all parts, hoping to make their fortune on this occasion. This sedition oblig'd the Mirza Pir Mehemet, son of Omar Cheik, to depart from Chiraz with the Persian army, to put a stop to these disorders, and disperse the rebels. The governors of the neighboring provinces, as Ispahan, Couhestan, and Corassana, also march'd towards Yezd at the head of their troops; and being all assembled without the city, they form'd the siege.

Timur being inform'd of what had happen'd, order'd the Mirza Pir Mehemet, son of Gehanghir, to march thither, with Temour Coja son of Acbouga,

Begli Iouga, and other Emirs, at the head of his troops. When they were arriv'd there, they receiv'd a second order, that, there not being a sufficient quantity of pasture in the meadows of Yezd to feed all their horses, they shou'd be left in the fresh countrys of Kiochec, and the province of Ispahan, and that the cavalry shou'd march on foot to Yezd, to besiege it. The Mirzas and the Emirs departed according to this order; and when they had pass'd by Ispahan, and were come to Yezd, they encamp'd about it and besieg'd it, giving two assaults each day, one in the morning, and the other in the evening.

When Timur was in Capeliac, the Emir Mehemed Berlas, a courteous, experienc'd, courageous prince, and of irreproachable conduct, was his governor in Nehavend. This lord had an officer nam'd Behloul, a man of a wicked and perverse inclination, and desirous [illegible] His natural [illegible] [illegible] the troops of the [illegible], and treacherously to put him to death: by which means this villain got to be governor of Nehavend, and made preparations for an army, that he might maintain his revolt. Timur being arriv'd at Ardebil, sent the Emir Cheik Noureddin to China, to receive the revenues of Persia. When this Emir was arriv'd there, the Emir Sevindeg set out thence for the court, according to Timur's orders. Timur departed for Ardebil, and encamp'd at Sultania, where having compassion on the poor Sultan Aila prince of Merdin, who had then lain in prison for three years, he order'd his chains to be taken off; and after having comforted him, and given him a vest, he pardon'd him, and by letters-patent restor'd him to the principality of Merdin, which he had before enjoy'd; yet not till this prince had solemnly

lemnly sworn before the Emirs who protected him, that he would never fail in his obedience to the emperor, and accompany him in all his wars, and on every occasion give marks of his respect and fidelity; and then he departed to return to Merdin.

Timur after this order'd the Mirza Sultan Hussein, and Codadad Husseini, to march with expedition to Nehavend, with the other Emirs and their troops, to take this place, and destroy the impious Behloul, as a punishment for what he had done. They immediately set out, and Timur went from Sultania to Hamadan. When the Emirs were come to Nehavend, they caus'd the drums to be beat, and the trumpets sounded; then they besieg'd the town, which they took with abundance of toil and fatigue, and cut in pieces all the rebels who defended it: the traitor Behloul was seiz'd, and burnt alive.

Timur then order'd the Emirs to march against Tokta, to exterminate the robbers of the highways of Lorestan, for fear of the disorders they had committed; he ordered a fine march along the shores of the Persian gulf, to bring under his obedience all the maritim places as far as the frontiers of Ormus, and return to the court after they had gain'd all these conquests. The Emirs departed from Nehavend according to these orders; and Timur went to encamp in the great plain of Hamadan, with the usual magnificence in his tents and pavilions. This monarch staid there during the whole month of Ramadan, which he spent in prayer, fasting, and the other exercises of piety which good Mussulmans observe: and he was not contented with practising all those things he was oblig'd to, but he perform'd also such acts of devotion as the prophet only advises.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXIV.

Timur sends the Mirza Mehemet Sultan to conquer the kingdom of Ormus. The reduction of Yezd.

WHEN the feast of Bairam was over, the emperor order'd the Mirza Mehemet Sultan to march to Ormus, and make himself master of all the towns near the Persian gulf: and he accordingly departed at the head of the army. Then advice was brought of the reduction of Yezd, which after a long siege was starv'd out, thirty thousand persons dying of famine. Timur pardon'd the inhabitants, because he knew they were not concern'd in the sedition; but the rebels, who had carry'd on the war, were reduc'd to such extremity, that they were constrain'd to dig a way under the ditch of the town, by which to escape: which our soldiers perceiving, they pursu'd 'em, and near Mehridgerd[7] slew the son of Abousaid Tebesi, the leader of these seditious persons, some of whom were cut in pieces, and others burnt alive. Timur prohibited every one from hurting or pillaging the inhabitants; he was also willing they shou'd pay no tax: and Temenke Coutchin, who had been governor there for Timur before the rebellion, had orders to go into the town with his men, and hinder the soldiers entrance, lest they shou'd insult the inhabitants.

[7] A town of Corassana, otherwise call'd Esterain and Mehredjan, long. 91. 30. lat. 36. 30.

Timur did not demand of them even the revenues of the two last years; and as thro the tyranny of the rebels the city of Yezd had been so far ruin'd that there remain'd no shops in it, and most of the houses were empty by the death of the inhabitants, it was now re-establish'd, and in a short time became as flourishing as before the revolt, thro the good conduct of Timur's officers. After the reduction of Yezd, the Mirzas had orders to return to court, and let their troops repair to their quarters. So the Mirza Pir Mehemet Gehanghir return'd by Corassana to Condoz and Bacalan; the Mirza Pir Mehemet, son of Omar Cheik, came to court; and the troops of the victorious army march'd to their own habitations. Chap. 65.

CHAP. LXV.

Timur returns to the seat of his empire.

THE 2d of Chawal 798, which answers to the year of the Mouse, Timur departed from Hamadan, in order to return to Samarcand. He went to encamp in a delightful meadow, from whence he sent to the Emir Gehancha, with orders to leave the siege of Alengic to the Sultan Sendger, Hadgi Seifeddin, and the troops of the Mirza Miraucha, that he might follow the Mirza Mehemet Sultan to Fars. The same day he gave orders for a hunting: the principal officers of his court and houshold form'd the great circle, surrounding the plain; and Timur took the diversion of killing the beasts. After the hunting was over, he sent Abdel Malec Caracan, who came from Alengic, July 30. 1396.

to

Rouftem to the Mirza Rouftem, to fummon him to court. Abdel Malec met the Mirza at Tabarcan, and they came back with expedition. Timur difbanded the whole army, and set out before the baggage, marching in one day as far as others wou'd in three or four. At his arrival at Veramin [8], the Mirza Rouftem paid his respects to him, and was soon after sent to Chiraz to join the Mirza Mehemet Sultan.

Timur at his return from Capchac, had sent the Tavachi Sekiaec to the Mirza Chiroc at Samarcand, with orders to send the Mirza Aboubecre, the Emir Rouftem son of Tagi Bourgai Berlas, Pir Ali son of Mamut Chah Yousouri, and other sons of Emirs to the imperial camp, with the five thousand horse which remain'd with him. This Mirza join'd the emperor at Beftan, and was receiv'd with all imaginable caresses. Timur gave him a [illegible] sand Dinars Cassidi [illegible] call'd Tamgha, [illegible] generosity and swiftness: he also made presents to all the officers of this prince's houshold; and then he sent him to his father the Mirza Mirancha at Tautis.

Our conqueror continu'd his road towards Samarcand; and in all the places he pass'd through, the Emirs, captains and other officers, came to testify their obedience to him, and brought him presents of all sorts of rarityes. When he arriv'd at Corassana, the Emir Aghoulgh immediately departed from Herat, to pay his devoirs to him; and when he had that honor granted him, he offer'd his presents, and sprinkled upon him gold and precious stones. Timur informed

[8] A town of Corassan in the territory of Rey, long. 80. 30. lat. 35. 25.

him

himself wherever he pass'd of the condition of the people: he [illegible] those who were oppress'd by tyrants, and [illegible] punish'd extortioners as an example to others, putting some of 'em to death, [illegible] the better to establish justice, and hinder the great lords from wronging the people, he made the Emir Allahdad inspector-general of Gagatana.

Timur having cross'd the Oxus in boats before Amonye, he enter'd the country of Cuzar, where he found the empresses Sultan Bacht Begum, Serai Mulc Canum, Tolman Aga, and the other ladys and princesses who came to meet him with prince Charec; they sprinkled great quantitys of gold and precious stones upon his head, and made their presents to him, which consisted of a thousand horses richly caparison'd, adorn'd with precious stones, and harnesses and bridles of gold; besides a thousand mules all of one colour. They gave thanks to God for the emperor's happy return, who departed from [illegible] to Kech, where he lodg'd in the palace of [illegible] which Timur had built. He then went to visit the tomb of the Cheik Chamseddin Kelar, and other great Santons of the country, where after his devotions, he gave largesses and alms to the Santons, who at that time dwelt there; he enter'd into the tomb of the Emir Tragai his father, that of his dear son the Mirza Gehanghir, and those of his other children and relations, where the whole Alcoran was recited by the readers, to whom he was exceeding liberal. The principal men of the city of Kech, and all the great lords of divers provinces, citys and towns of Transoxiana, came forthwith to court, where they kiss'd the earth before the emperor, congratulated him on his conquests, and wish'd him a long and prosperous

Book III. perous reign. Timur order'd a solemn feast with banquets and plays in Acferah, to entertain 'em, with all the ceremonys usual on such occasions.

At length Timur departed; and having passed the mountain of Kech, made his entry into Samarcand, which the inhabitants had adorn'd, to receive this great emperor in triumph: on all sides were to be seen garlands of flowers with crowns, amphitheaters, and musicians performing the newest pieces of music to the honor of his majesty. The walls of the houses were hung with carpets, the roofs cover'd with stuffs, and the shops set off with curious pieces. There was a vast multitude of people, and the streets were cover'd with velvet, sattin, silk, and carpets, which the horses trampled under feet. Timur had no sooner made his entry, but he went to visit the sepulchers of the saints, and of learned and illustrious persons: he gave great largesses to the santons who took care of 'em, and alms to the poor; and at length he came to his palace, and sat upon the imperial throne. He order'd that for joy at his happy return, a magnificent feast shou'd be made with all manner of diversions, in his own palace of Gheuc Serai, where the greatest splendor and sumptuousness appear'd. All the poets compos'd verses in his praise, and nothing was to be heard but *Long live the emperor*.

After this feast was over, Timur entirely employ'd his time in the government of the state, and regulating the public affairs: he order'd the Cherifs, or descendents of Mahomet, the doctors, the men of letters, and the chief persons belonging to the mosques of his empire, who were then at court, to come before him; and he gave to every one of 'em, according to his rank

and dignity, some of the [illegible] he had taken in Persia, Media, [illegible] Caschar, Georgia, Mul[illegible] countrys he had conquer'd [illegible] from Samarcand. Then [illegible] himself of the affairs of the peo[illegible] [illegible] who made [illegible] pla[illegible] He order'd the tyrants to be put in [illegible], and the fork'd branch hung round their [illegible]: and afterwards he put some of 'em to death. He exempted all the subjects of his empire from taxes for three years; and made choice of several men of merit, probity and piety, whom he dispers'd into all his kingdoms, to make an exact information into the public concerns, and render justice to the oppress'd. He also gave great alms to the poor both within and without Samarcand. Thus all his people, either near or at a distance, were so pleas'd with having such an equitable, generous, and valiant emperor, that they justly styl'd his reign the golden age.

[illegible] the winter at Samarcand in the [illegible] with abundance of magnificence, [illegible] liberality. He sent [illegible] Mehemet, son of [illegible] Cheik, who was come express to Samarcand to pay his duty to him. In the mean while a son was born to the Mirza Mehemet Sultan, who was nam'd Mehemet Gehangir. Timur order'd feasts, banquets, processions, and the usual compliments to be made in all places; and he chose Toura Melec Couchin [illegible] the agreeable news to the Mirza, the father of the new-born prince, who was then in Persia.

CHAP. LXVI.

The building of the palace of Baghi Chemal.

An. Dom. 1397.

AT the beginning of the [illegible] of 799, Timur went to a pleasure-house he had built north of Samarcand, and which for that reason he had nam'd Baghi Chemal, the garden of the north; where his concubines and royal [illegible] were [illegible]. He [illegible] a palace [illegible] built in this delightful garden, which beaten [illegible] magnificence [illegible] the elevation of [illegible] and which shew'd how proper [illegible] plays and banquets on days of rejoicing. He dedicated this palace to the princess [illegible] Sultan, daughter of the [illegible] architects [illegible] each o- [illegible], according to the nicest rules of architecture. His highness having made choice of one of these plans, gave orders that the palace should be built according to that model; he commanded the astrologers to come before him, whom he enjoin'd to observe the happy moment for beginning this [illegible]. According to their directions, the foundations were laid in the month of Jumazi [illegible] 799, which answers to the year of the crocodile, under a fortunate horoscope. [illegible] four pillars of the corners were distributed among the Emirs, who were to inspect the workmen. The most skilful masters in each art were employ'd: and as they were carefully observ'd, the work was soon in its desir'd condition: and Timur was so intent upon his buildings, that the

April 1397.

he staid here a month and a half, that it might [illegible] the former [illegible] was taken that [illegible] the angles [illegible] be extremely strong. [illegible] a piece of [illegible] brought from Tauris [illegible] Winter. There were [illegible] by the most skilful painters [illegible] Persia, and Bagdad, with so much and [illegible] that the [illegible] of it [illegible] of whole pieces. Timur [illegible] extolled of curiosity [illegible] the beautiful [illegible] painting; [illegible] the [illegible] of the palace [illegible] Bagdad [illegible] in transportation of Baghi [illegible] of it was pav'd with marble [illegible] of the walls, as well within as [illegible] were cover'd with porcelain: and to crown the work, after the building was finish'd, Timur order'd a royal feast, where, with sumptuous banquets, plays and diversions, this charming [illegible] consecrated to the plea-

CHAP. LXVII.

Timur gives the principality of Chiffaut to [illegible] his third [illegible].

[illegible] having several children, whose [illegible] wealth and authority appeared to [illegible] who should find in their [illegible] of reigning in their [illegible]

[illegible] Persia.

and leaving [illegible] to their [illegible], reflected upon the disorders which would [illegible] if any thing discord shou'd creep in among [illegible] as he foresaw that his royal posterity would be perpetuated in the Mirza Charoc his eldest son, he resolv'd to give him during his life the priority of the kingdom of Corassana, being that of all his kingdoms which by its situation seem'd fittest for the seat of his empire, as it lay in the fourth climate, and was a temperate country in the middle of Asia, between the two empires of Iran and Touran. His death of the consecration of the palace of Bagdi Chaoch was a favorable conjuncture for the execution of the Mirza. This was invited thither by this happy occasion: and while most part of the lords of the empire were assembled, he proclaimed the Mirza Charoc Beheader forever, and the sole prince of the kingdom [illegible] Bilian, and [illegible] Then he nam'd Emirs and generals of the first rank for the principal posts in the court of this new foreign, of whom the Emir Soliman Chah was the most considerable, tho the others were lords of great figure. Each of 'em was plac'd at the head of a company selected out of a [illegible] and all the other Emirs had the honor to send their sons or brothers to accompany this [illegible]. As soon as our conqueror had [illegible] out his letters-patent to establish Charoc king of Corassana, he tenderly embrac'd [illegible] kiss'd his eyes and forehead, and dismiss'd him, after having testify'd the sorrow he felt at his absence. The new king took leave of his father and set out at the head of his army, being accompany'd by the princes his brothers for two days journy, as also by the Emirs and great lords of

of the emperor's c[illegible] no sooner on Chaban [illegible] their return ho[illegible] continu'd his [illegible] roads, and [illegible] Chaban near Amouye, where he [illegible] the month of Chaban 799, which [illegible] the year of the Christile: June 1399.
he [illegible]
r[illegible]
[illegible] with hunting, plays and dances, which were prepar'd for his honor. When he was at Telutschechan, the Emir Acheneg, with the Chorasin, the greatest lords, [illegible] and nations [illegible] came to meet him; [illegible] him, that [illegible] and abandon'd him the remainder of his [illegible] The 28th day of Chaban he happily [illegible] the meadow of Kehdestan, [illegible] the town of Herat, where he chose for his residence the palace of Bagh Zaghan, which signifys the garden of crows; and there he immediately betook himself to render [illegible] The governors of Corassana, Mazen[illegible] [illegible] to pay their homages and [illegible] [illegible] governors of the city [illegible] brought him the keys of their respective places [illegible] all the lords of Corassana, after having [illegible] their presents, congratulated him on his coming to the throne. The night of the 21st of Chaban 799, which answers to the year of the Christile, he had a dream to him, who had [illegible] for his ascendent; advice of which [illegible] sent to the emperor, who gam'd [illegible] Sept. 25.

CHAP. LXVIII.

Timur sings some time at Kyah. Return of the Mirza Mohender Gulam from the campaign of Fars.

IN the month of Chabaan of the same year Timur departed from Bagh Shemal, [illegible] Bulbaryah, and pitched at the town of [illegible] where he sat down into the charming [illegible] of Kyah, [illegible] the [illegible] and the fine gravel which appears [illegible] and rocks [illegible]

[illegible] Ramadan, and the [illegible] Bairam, after which he departed thence, and ascended a delightful place, name [illegible] Arrondge, to spend the summer in. [illegible] mean while the Mirza Mohender [illegible] by order of the emperor [illegible] from Chiraz to Ordah [illegible] good army, returned to court, after [illegible] of many countrys either by [illegible] or [illegible]. He took the road of Darabgerd[1], and Faroni[2], accompanied by the [illegible] Gehan Shah, and having left [illegible] at Kethah

[1] A town of Fars, where they find salt of [illegible] in the middle of the town is a mountain of free-stone, which stands single, not joining any other mountain; it lies in long. 80. 4. lat. 31. 40.

[2] A town of Fars near Seydgan.

so he went to [illegible] exterminating all the [illegible] who [illegible] Roushen [illegible] ther by the way of [illegible] aid and oth[illegible] Gehron and Lar. The [illegible]

which he [illegible] the [illegible] AH. When they were arriv'd in Gerum, they took [illegible] which are [illegible] of that kingdom, the [illegible] Gerum, [illegible] thousand Dinars, which he found [illegible] left Eldizen and his hen[illegible] when he was on his return to Ghirzi, he march'd towards the country of Gnumsfan, while the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin return'd [illegible] the way of Yezd. The day that [illegible] Ibrahim [illegible]

[illegible] of Fars, long. [illegible] 30. lat. 27. 30.

[illegible] of Fars, long. [illegible] 30. lat. 27. 30.

[illegible] which Gerum, Sulpar, Gheb, Bem, &c.

[illegible] of Persia.

[illegible] between Kirman and India.

[illegible] long. 93. lat. 27. 30. four days journey from Gerum, and one from Sulpar.

[illegible] and falling into a precipice, was killed. Some of [illegible] the prince's domestics having purchased to the top of the mountain, perceiv'd the dead body; they cut off his head, and cast it at the Sultan's feet.

This prince, having successfully finish'd his campaign, resolv'd to return to Samarcand. He departed by the ways of Ouroudgerd, passed by Hamadan, and took the road to Samarcand. Having gone thro' Corassan, he crossed the Gihon, and had the honor to salute Timur at the famous palace of Sultan Hussein. Timur tenderly embraced him, talk'd with him in secret to entertain him, passed in the company he was now [illegible] and discover'd a great deal of [illegible] in Mirza, full of kindness and offer his protection. [illegible] were banished [illegible] objections. [illegible] dear son, the Mirza Mohamed Sultan, went to meet her; she had the pleasure of embracing him, whom she so tenderly lov'd, and had so long desir'd to see, with the greatest impatience. As soon as the princess was arriv'd at Samarcand, he went to pay her respects to the emperor in his palace. Bagh Houseind, first presented him with [illegible] embroider'd with gold, and Arabian horses with saddles of gold; and to compleat this agreeable present, she gave to each of Timur's [illegible] vests embroider'd with gold.

CHAP. LXIX.

Timur is married to the Princess Tuman, daughter of Kizir Cojah Aglen. He celebrates the nuptials of the Mirza Eskender with the princess Begijah Sultan.

AS Timur thought fit often to tie the sacred knot of marriage, he gave several riches, and many presents to Chamaghchan son of Kizir Cojah Aglen, and sent him to his father accompanied by sixteen in marriage; and then [illegible] he found concluded, he prefer'd Cayaudam Tercan to accompany him, whom he loaded with presents and riches. He afterwards went to encamp in the plain of Gani[illegible] near Samarcand, the beauty of which [illegible] [illegible] to the [illegible]

Mollah Aga [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] well and [illegible] [illegible] order'd that preparations should be made [illegible] magnificent nuptials, [illegible] the princes [illegible] [illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] Cassis, author of the book of Edouards, [illegible] the clergy of the [illegible] for his skill in music, was there in person, and [illegible] over the rest. The feast lasted three months; and the princess Boghiji Sultan * was there married to the Prince Sekandar, according to the laws of the Alcoran, and the manner of Mahomet. Then the princess and the rest took leave of the emperor, to return to Tauris by the way of Bocara.

* Timur's grand-daughter.

[illegible]

An. Dom. 1397. [illegible] of 799, I.-

[illegible] that at the end of the delightful meadow of Canigheul, a garden should be laid out, whose beauty should surpass all the gardens which had ever yet been in the world. The astrologers made choice of the hour [illegible] then were on hand, and the [illegible] daughter of Tamerlane the [illegible] passages of the [illegible] the new palace, which was to be built [illegible] and the [illegible] laid the foundations of a square [illegible] and in the middle of each was a [illegible] The cisterns of the palace were [illegible] with flowers of all sorts, and the walls were covered with porcelain of Cathay, [illegible] each

[illegible] garden [illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible] of fruit-trees, and others which only bore flowers. When the garden was compleat'd, Timur [illegible] the foundations of the palace, which [illegible] high, were laid; the roofs were [illegible] it was adorn'd with all the [illegible] which can'd charm the eyes of man: and it was built exceeding strong. It was surrounded with a colonade of marble, which gave it a majestic aspect. As it was customary [illegible] palaces to some lady, Timur dedi-

[illegible] daughter of [illegible] marriage. The emperor then [illegible] pleasure to hear this princess, [illegible] pon, and encamp'd at Dere [illegible] the village of Pehnas, where he [illegible] the winter, after having built posts, or [illegible] of reeds to realize of the weather, which [illegible] bodies the Tartars call Cherik. Timur [illegible] the village of Ili, to visit the tomb [illegible] Cheik Ahmed Yasvi, chief of the sons of [illegible] Mehemet Hanefi: he caused [illegible] illustrious sepulcher to be rebuilt, it being [illegible] ruin'd; and he augmented it with a su[illegible] edifice, containing a lofty roof, two Minarets, and a dome with four fronts, the fourth side

[illegible] thirty [illegible] near the [illegible] was another of twelve [illegible] with an apartment of four bed-chambers, [illegible] the [illegible] of the Cheikhs; and on the [illegible] and left of the dome are two other apartments of four bed-chambers each. Each apartment is thirteen cubits and a half in length, and fifteen in breadth; being design'd to lodge the pro[illegible] and their attendants, with some chambers for strangers, who repair thither out of devotion. The walls and the dome were adorn'd with porphyry columns, and the stone of the sepulcher was of white marble, embellish'd with rich sculpture; and the care of this building was committed to the [illegible] Obaidalla Sedre, who [illegible] it [illegible]

[illegible] Tamer having performed his ordinary devotions at this place, distinguished some alms among the [illegible] of the [illegible] [illegible] return to his camp, advice was brought that the princess Toukel Canum was on her march. All the ladys and Emirs of the court took horse to meet her, according to the orders they had received; they advanc'd sixteen days journey, and having met her, sprinkled gold and precious stones upon her head. They presented horses to her, and did her all the honor which is due to a queen; and at each bord they [illegible] they made feasts of the [illegible] magnificence. At length, on the third of [illegible] of the year of the Hegira [illegible] they delivered the Caliphs into the hands of Sir Alexander.

* Thalestris, queen of the Amazons, who came to find Alexander, that he might have child of him. *Curtius.*

The

The emperor gave orders for a feast to be prepar'd, to celebrate [illegible] be commanded the grand [illegible] Cadis, and doctors of the law, to [illegible] and they marry'd him to th[illegible] incess Tendel Canum according to the mahometan religion. He was at the same time congratulated by the emperor, [illegible] princes his sons, the Emirs and Nevians, who sprinkled upon him precious stones and pearls: and the feast lasted several days. Timur gave vests and considerable gratifications to the Nevians and Mogul ladys, who accompany'd the new Sultaness.

About this time ambassadors arriv'd from Tokatouz Can, emperor of Catai[1], with abundance of curious presents. They were introduc'd to their audience by the great Emirs: they offer'd their presents, and after having declar'd the subject of their embassy, and deliver'd their credentials, they had their audience of leave, and return'd home. China.

[illegible] Mohamed Sultan governor of [illegible] desiring him to build a fortress [illegible] use all his care to augment the houses [illegible] the lands about it town and cultivated better than they had ever been, and to [illegible] the city flourishing. He nam'd for the Mogul's officers, the Emirs Birdi Bei son of Sarbouga, Chaigi Seifeddin, Codadad Hussein, Chamsedin Abbas, and others, with forty thousand horse: accordingly they departed, and having passed the mountain Coulan[2], they went

[1] A town of Mogolistan on the frontiers of China.
[2] A mountain on the frontiers of Mogolistan towards China.

to

[illegible] spring [illegible] Kchinas, [illegible] to Samar[illegible] and hap[illegible] —hence [illegible] this [illegible]

[illegible] out of [illegible] spring [illegible] river, [illegible] considering that [illegible] would be [illegible] place to live in, and that the [illegible] cultivation, order'd a great garden [illegible] a pleasure-house built [illegible] [illegible] pulling the [illegible]

[illegible] a handsom reception, and was well pleas'd to see him. The [illegible] made his presents, and sprinkled gold [illegible] precious stones upon him. Timur then [illegible] [illegible] and crown'd as Eltchi Balaq [illegible] [illegible] seven days in the meanwhile [illegible] were in much the same [illegible] him, in such they put him in [illegible] [illegible] and the infanta [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible]

A [illegible]

The end of the [illegible]

N.C. 114176 15